

# A FIRST LATIN BOOK

---

W.T. ST. CLAIR

Boston University  
College of Liberal Arts  
Library

THE GIFT OF C.C. Dodge Class of '78

December 1919

NO.

478.2  
5a 2f





# A FIRST LATIN BOOK

BOSTON UNIVERSITY  
COLLEGE OF LIBERAL ARTS  
LIBRARY



A  
FIRST LATIN BOOK  
(CAESAR FOR BEGINNERS)

*A COMPLETE BEGINNER'S BOOK IN LATIN, INTRODUCTORY TO  
CAESAR, AND CONTAINING THE ENTIRE TEXT OF THE  
SECOND BOOK OF THE GALlic WAR, WITH  
COPIOUS NOTES, AND A VOCABULARY*

BY

WILLIAM T. ST. CLAIR, A.M.

*Professor of the Latin Language and Literature in the Louisville (Kentucky)  
Male High School; Author of 'Medical Latin,' 'Summary of Latin  
Syntax,' and 'Notes to the Third Book of Caesar's Gallic War'*

BOSTON UNIVERSITY  
COLLEGE OF LIBERAL ARTS  
LIBRARY

NEW YORK  
LONGMANS, GREEN AND CO.  
LONDON AND BOMBAY  
1905

Copyright, 1899, by  
LONGMANS, GREEN & CO.

*All rights reserved.*

First Edition, August, 1899.

Reprinted, January and October, 1900 ; October, 1902 ; August, 1904.  
Revised, March, 1905.

ROBERT DRUMMOND, PRINTER, NEW YORK.

Affectionately Enscribed

to

My Son



## PREFACE.

---

LATIN is an excellent mental training for teaching accuracy, conciseness and exactness. How can this discipline be best secured in schools where the Latin course is confined within three or four years? Those preparatory schools in which Latin is taken up early—say at the age of ten or twelve—may with great profit use ‘New Gradatim,’ ‘Viri Romae,’ or ‘Nepos’ before ‘Caesar’s Gallic War.’ The material for schools of limited time, however, clearly must be taken from the Latin author to be studied first. This book is designed to fit the beginner to take up Caesar as his first Latin. Caesar is not claimed as indispensable to the preparatory course, to the exclusion of other pertinent authors; but the choice of Caesar is the best solution of the problem under the limitations and restrictions given. Besides the fact that Caesar’s Latin is hard to master, we have two difficulties to contend with. *First*, in many schools preparatory work is in the hands of young teachers of very narrow or very short experience; the chief result of their pains is wearisome and, to a great degree, unrewarded labor certainly to themselves and perhaps to their pupils. Indeed even the best teachers would welcome a good *teaching book* introductory to Caesar. *Second*, the change from the ordinary beginner’s book is so great and so radical that the pupil is lost when he faces Caesar’s

Latin. The aim of this book is to meet and, if it may be, lessen these hindrances, not to explain all the difficulties of the Latin language.

The points of practical value are:

1. A working vocabulary of five hundred words taken from the second book of Caesar.
2. Lessons of uniform length throughout, adapted to the average ability of pupils.
3. Lessons graded with a view towards reaching and mastering the complex constructions of Caesar. The subordinate clauses, such as *ut*, *qui*, *cum*, etc., are brought in early in carefully graded lessons, showing the combination of these clauses and illustrating their order and dependence.
4. Steady and uniform progression in the building of the complex sentence and stress laid upon the proper adjustment of words and clauses. Illustrative clauses and phrases from the second book of Caesar, often copied verbatim, oftener with the order and style of the text closely imitated.
5. Alphabetically and by conjugations all of the verbs in the second book of Caesar; principal parts and meanings to be learned as part of the vocabulary, beginning with paragraph (91).
6. The first fourteen chapters of the second book of Caesar simplified and adapted in twenty lessons. Prose composition in each of these lessons based upon the text. Principles and constructions met with in these particular chapters are explained in the *same terms and examples* used in the foregoing lessons which are prepared with a view to application in these chapters.
7. The second book of Caesar complete, with notes. The notes invariably use the terms and examples which

the pupil has been applying from the first lesson. There are no grammatical references and new or offhand expressions, but explanations in terms with which the pupil is already familiar.

There is no wide chasm between the lessons in the main part of the work and the text of Caesar. Between these come the simplified chapters of Caesar and the notes in which, when like points occur in Caesar's text, are repeated the illustrative sentences and explanations used in the former part of the work. Much Latin construction has been purposely omitted and left for the remaining books of Caesar. The lessons have been abridged and constructions made plain, so as to place them within the grasp of the average pupil; since it is not the *quantity* of material crowded into a lesson or a child's head, but the *quality* of the work done, which brings the best results and is therefore most needed. The author gratefully acknowledges his indebtedness to Professor Abraham Flexner, head master of "The Flexner School," Louisville, for valuable assistance in arranging the plan and order of the lessons and especially in the treatment of the relative pronoun; and to Professor Garland Bruce Overton of the Male High School, Louisville, for patient and exhaustive reviews of the proof-pages throughout that have added much to the value of the work. The author feels grateful to the publishers, also, for uniform courtesy and consideration, and for suggestions and help that have added strength to the book.

W. T. S.

LOUISVILLE, June, 1899.



## CONTENTS.

---

PREFACE.....	Pages vii-ix
INTRODUCTION.....	" xiii-xv
LESSONS I—X. First-declension and second-declension nouns and adjectives declined; first-conjugation verb, <i>portō</i> , in the present, imperfect, and future indicative; sentence-building and order of words; ablative of place, means, attendance.....	Pages 1-16
LESSONS XI—XVIII. Present system of <i>portō</i> completed; purpose clauses; apposition; relation of words and clauses; relative pronoun; principal parts of verbs.....	Pages 16-35
LESSONS XIX—XXVII. First conjugation completed in the active voice; <i>sum</i> completed; third-declension nouns; <i>quod</i> and <i>cum</i> clauses; dative with adjectives; dative with <i>imperō</i> and <i>mandō</i> ; rule of sequence.....	Pages 35-54
LESSONS XXVIII—XXXVII. Second and third conjugations in the active; <i>iubeō</i> with accusative + infinitive; sentence-analysis; order and dependence of words and clauses; varying order of words; fourth declension; adjectives of the third declension; use of <i>sunt</i> .....	Pages 54-76
LESSONS XXXVIII—XLVIII. Complex sentence analyzed; <i>cum</i> and <i>ubi</i> clauses; personal and demonstrative pronouns declined; fifth declension; more vivid future condition; <i>nē</i> in negative purpose and commands; fourth conjugation; first conjugation passive; personal agent; gerundive construction..	Pages 76-103
LESSONS XLIX—LVI. Passive voice of the second, third, and fourth conjugations; <i>cum</i> clauses continued; intermediate clauses; subjunctive mood in indirect discourse and by attraction; ablative absolute; adjectives with genitive in <i>ius</i> ; comparison of adjectives.....	Pages 103-123
LESSONS LVII—LXVI. <i>Orātiō Oblīqua</i> ; infinitive tenses in O. O.; subordinate clauses in O. O.; relative clause of purpose; indirect	

question ; perfect passive participle ; purpose and result clauses ; deponent verbs ; less vivid future condition ; dative with compound and with special verbs ; causal and concessive <i>cum</i> ; accusative of extent in space ; verbs of commanding ; verbs of fearing.....	Pages 124-151
<b>LESSONS LXVII-LXX.</b> Double dative ; deponents governing the ablative ; four ways of expressing (1) purpose, (2) the ablative absolute, and (3) the <i>cum</i> clause ; dative of possession ; temporal clauses ; dative of agency with the periphrastic ; impersonal verbs ; uses of the relative ; verbs of hindering ; ablative with the comparative.....	Pages 152-161
<b>LESSONS LXXI-LXXV.</b> Substitutes for the perfect active participle ; adverbial accusative ; ablative of quality ; partitive genitive ; <i>persuādeō</i> in the passive ; periphrasis for supineless verbs, etc. ; how 'ought' and 'must' are expressed ; relative clause of result ; commands and exhortations, same in O. O. ; hortatory subjunctive, same in O. O. ; conditionals in O. O. ; table and rule for <i>mood</i> and <i>tense</i> in O. O. ....	Pages 161-172
<b>SPECIMENS OF 'INDIRECT DISCOURSE'</b> .....	" 175-177
<b>ADAPTED AND SIMPLIFIED CAESAR</b> .....	" 178-198
<b>TEXT OF CAESAR</b> , Book Two complete.....	" 201-219
<b>NOTES TO THE SECOND BOOK</b> .....	" 222-255
<b>VERBS IN BOOK TWO, WITH MEANINGS</b> .....	" 256-260
<b>PARADIGMS OF NOUNS, PRONOUNS, AND ADJECTIVES</b> .....	" 261-270
<b>COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS</b> .....	" 271-273
<b>PARADIGMS OF REGULAR VERBS</b> .....	" 274-291
<b>PARADIGMS OF VERBS, IRREGULAR AND DEONENT</b> ....	" 292-309
<b>PARADIGMS OF THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION</b> ...	" 310-311
<b>RULES OF QUANTITY</b> .....	" 312-314
<b>LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY</b> .....	" 315-341
<b>ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY</b> .....	" 342-350
<b>INDEX</b> .....	" 351-357

## INTRODUCTION.

---

**Alphabet.**—The Latin alphabet has twenty-four letters: **a**, **b**, **c**, **d**, **e**, **f**, **g**, **h**, **i**, **k**, **l**, **m**, **n**, **o**, **p**, **q**, **r**, **s**, **t**, **u**, **v**, **x**, **y**, **z**. **i** serves for both *i* and *j*; as the former it is called *vowel i*, as the latter *consonant i*. There is no **w**: properly **v** represented also the vowel **u**, but in this book **v** is used for the consonant and **u** for the vowel sound of **v** (*u*).

**Vowels.**—The vowels are **a**, **e**, **i**, **o**, **u**, and **y**, sounded thus:

ā as in *father*.      ā as in the first syllable in *aha*.

ē “ “ *prey*.      ē “ “ *net*.

ī “ “ *unique*.      ī “ “ *him*.

ō “ “ *hope*.      ō “ “ *harmony*.

ū “ “ *rude*.      ū “ “ *put*.

**y** is sounded like the French *u*, German *ü*.

**Diphthongs.**—Some diphthongs are here omitted as being unimportant.

**ae** is sounded *eye*.

**au** as *ow* in *how*.

**eu** as *ew* in *new*.

**oe** as *oi* in *soil*.

**Consonants.**—The consonants **b**, **d**, **f**, **h**, **k**, **l**, **m**, **n**, **p**, **qu** are pronounced as in English. **c**, **g**, **t** have the hard sound, as *cold*, *get*, *take*; **ti** never like the English *sh* in *nation*. **s** has a sharp hissing sound, as *send*, *this*; never

sound **s** like *z*. **i** consonant (for *j*) has the sound of *y*, as *million*, *yet*. **r** was probably slightly trilled. **v** has the sound of *w*, as *vīnum*, *wine*.

**Syllables.**—In a Latin word there is a syllable for each vowel or diphthong. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*; the syllable before the last, the *penult*; the one before the penult, the *antepenult*. Monosyllables are words containing *one* syllable; dissyllables, words of *two* syllables; polysyllables, words of more than *two* syllables. Utter separately all vowels except those combined as diphthongs. In dividing a word into syllables, a single consonant is joined with the following vowel; as, *lē-gā-tus*. In the case of two or more consonants, join with the following vowel those consonants that can be pronounced with the vowel; as, *ca-stel-lum*.

**Parts of speech.**—Functions as in English : verb, noun, pronoun, adjective, adverb, preposition, conjunction, interjection.

**Inflection.**—The regular change in the form of a Latin word, by which its different relations to other words are shown, is called inflection. The inflection of nouns, pronouns, participles, and adjectives is called Declension; that of verbs, Conjugation. There are five declensions of nouns and four conjugations of verbs.

**Comparison.**—Adjectives and adverbs have three degrees of comparison: positive, comparative, superlative.

**Number, voice, etc.**—There are two numbers, singular and plural; three persons, first, second, and third; three genders, masculine, feminine, and neuter; two voices in the verb, active and passive.

**Cases.<sup>1</sup>**—In the inflection of nouns, etc., Latin has the following six cases:

---

<sup>1</sup> The cases, except the nominative and vocative, are called *oblique cases*.

*Nominative* = simple meaning of the word, as subject.

*Genitive* = *of* + meaning of the word with the values of the English prepositional phrase.

*Dative* = *to* or *for* + meaning of the word—as *indirect object*.

*Accusative* = simple meaning of the word—as *direct object*.

*Vocative* = *O* + the English meaning.

*Ablative* = *from*, *with*, *by*, *in* or *on* + meaning of the word.

**Accent.**—The accent of a syllable is the stress of voice laid upon it.

1. Words of *two* syllables are accented upon the *penult*; as, *tu'-ba*.

2. Words of *more* than *two* syllables are accented upon the *penult*, if that is long; otherwise upon the *antepenult*; as, *a-mā'-ví*, *a-mā'-ve-ram*.

3. The accent should not fall upon the last syllable.

**Quantity.**—Latin vowels marked with a horizontal line above them are long in quantity, i.e., long in duration of the time required to sound them. Vowels not so marked may be regarded as short and require half as much time in sound as long vowels. The length or shortness of a vowel or a syllable is called *quantity*. A syllable is long in quantity (1) if it contains a long vowel or diphthong; (2) if the vowel of the syllable precedes **x**, or two consonants, except a mute and a liquid. A syllable is short if its vowel precedes another vowel or **h**. A syllable is common when it contains a short vowel followed by a mute with **l** or **r**; as, *lä-cri-ma*. In this book all long vowels are marked, special attention having been given to determining hidden quantities. For rules of quantity see (500–504).



## LESSON I.

### FIRST DECLENSION.

(See Introduction for the names and meanings of the cases.)

#### 1. **Fossa**, *a* or *the ditch*, declined in the singular number.

*Nom.* fossa, *a ditch* ("as subject")

*Gen.* fossae, *of a ditch* (pronounced foss-eye)

*Dat.* fossae, *to or for a ditch*

*Acc.* fossam, *a ditch* ("as object")

*Voc.* fossa, *O ditch*

*Abl.* fossā, *from, with, by, in, or on a ditch*

#### 2. The *stem* of a noun is the common part to which terminations are annexed to distinguish the different cases. The stem of **fossa** ends in **ā**, and is the same as the word itself in the nominative case. The stem originally ended in **ā**.

The stem form appears in each case; the nominative and vocative have nothing additional; the ablative is distinguished from the nominative and vocative by the lengthening of the stem vowel **ā**; the genitive and dative annex **e** to the stem, and the accusative annexes **m**. These terminations may be called case-endings, though strictly speaking they are combinations of the stem and the true ending.

#### 3.

### VOCABULARY.

Nouns of the first declension end in **a** in the nominative singular and are *feminine* except when males are meant, as in **poeta**, a poet. In the vocabularies of this declension, when no gender is specified the feminine is meant.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
causa	causae	<i>cause</i>
porta	portae	<i>gate</i>
Italia	Italiae	<i>Italy</i>
fuga	fugae	<i>flight</i>

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
silva	silvae	forest
tuba	tubae	trumpet
prōvincia	prōvinciae	province
lāta	lātae ( <i>adj.</i> )	wide or broad
māgna	māgnæ ( <i>adj.</i> )	great or large
amīcitia	amīcitiae	friendship

4. **Agreement of the adjective.**—An adjective agrees with the noun which it modifies in *gender*, *number*, and *case*. Thus: silvae lātae, *of a broad forest*; tubā māgnā, *with a large trumpet*.

The adjective is usually placed *after* the noun it modifies. For emphasis it may precede the noun.

### 5.

#### EXERCISES.

I.—1. Causam.<sup>1</sup> 2. Ītaliae. 3. Portae. 4. Tubā. 5. Fuga. 6. Silvam lātam. 7. Prōvinciae māgnæ. 8. Fugā.

II.—1. Of the province. 2. Flight (*obj.*). 3. For the province. 4. Of a wide ditch. 5. By flight. 6. A large trumpet (*obj.*). 7. To the cause.

## LESSON II.

### FIRST DECLENSION, CONTINUED.

#### 6. **Fossa** declined in the plural.

*Nom.* fossae, *the ditches*

*Gen.* fossārum, *of the ditches*

*Dat.* fossīs, *to or for the ditches*

*Acc.* fossās, *the ditches*

*Voc.* fossae, *O ditches*

*Abl.* fossīs, *from, with, in, or on the ditches*

The *stem* **fossa** is unchanged throughout the plural except in the dative and ablative, where final **a** is omitted before the case-ending **is**.

<sup>1</sup> There is no Latin word for *the* or *a*, which words must be supplied according to the sense, as also often *his*, *hers*, *theirs*.

7. **Use of the genitive.**—A noun in the genitive case limits another noun. One genitive may limit another genitive. Sometimes a noun in the genitive is translated by the English *possessive case* instead of *of*.

Thus: *Galbae tuba* may mean *the trumpet of Galba* or *Galba's trumpet*. Here *Galbae* is a noun in the genitive limiting the noun *tuba*.

**The ablative causā.**—*Causā* means *for the sake of*, and must stand after a genitive; as, *fugae causā*, *for the sake of flight*.

## 8.

## VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
pūgna	pūgnæ	<i>fight</i>
Gallia	Galliae	<i>Gaul</i>
Galba	Galbae, mas.	<i>Galba (man's name)</i>
galea	galeæ	<i>helmet</i>
rīpa	rīpæ	<i>bank</i>
cōpiae	cōpiārum, usually plur.	<i>forces</i>
Belgae	Belgārum, mas.	<i>Belgians</i>
amāta	amātae, adj.	<i>beloved</i>
nova	novae, adj.	<i>new</i>
alta	altae, adj.	<i>tall or deep</i>
multa	multae, adj.	<i>much or many</i>
et, conjunction		<i>and</i>
in, preposition with the abl.		<i>in</i>

9. **Use of in.**—The preposition *in* is used with the ablative to denote place where. Thus: *in prōvinciā novā*, *in the new province*.

## 10.

## EXERCISES.

- I.—1. Cōpiārum.
2. Prōvinciīs.
3. Galeae.
4. Amīciiae causā.
5. Rīpās altās.
6. In silvā lātā.
7. Galbae tubā novā.
8. Galeīs multīs.
9. Belgārum cōpiās multās.
10. Galbae cōpiārum causā.

- II.—1. With a trumpet. 2. By Galba's flight. 3. For the beloved forces. 4. The flight (*obj.*) of the Belgians. 5. For the sake of a new province.

## LESSON III.

### FIRST-CONJUGATION VERB. FIRST DECLENSION, CONTINUED.

#### 11. Present indicative active of *portō*, *I carry*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <i>portō</i> , <i>I carry</i> , <i>am carrying</i> ,	1. <i>portāmus</i> , <i>we carry</i>
2. <i>portās</i> , <i>you carry</i> [do carry]	2. <i>portātis</i> , <i>you carry</i>
3. <i>portat</i> , <i>he carries</i>	3. <i>portant</i> , <i>they carry</i>

The *present stem* of this verb is *portā*, which appears in each form except the *first person singular*, where final *ā* is lost before *ō*. The endings *s*, *t*, *mus*, *tis*, *nt*, annexed to the stem, denote the different persons of the verb and its subject, and are called *personal endings*. To conjugate this tense of a verb, change *final ō* of the *first person singular* to *ās*, *at*, *āmus*, *ātis*, *ant*.

Conjugate and give meanings of *pūgnō*, *parō*, and *superō* in the *present indicative active*. Decline and give meanings in both singular and plural of *tuba*, *galea*, and *silva alta* (*together*).

#### 12.

#### VOCABULARY.

<i>pūgnō</i> ,	<i>I fight</i>
<i>parō</i> ,	<i>I prepare</i>
<i>superō</i> ,	<i>I overcome</i>
<i>occupō</i> ,	<i>I seize</i>
<i>cēlō</i> ( <i>pronounced ka-lo</i> ),	<i>I conceal</i>
<i>vītō</i> ( <i>pronounced we-to</i> ),	<i>I avoid</i>

#### 13. Commit to memory the following examples:

1. <i>portat</i> ,	<i>he carries</i>
2. <i>galeam parat</i> ,	<i>he prepares a helmet</i>
3. <i>Galba Belgās superat</i> ,	<i>Galba overcomes the Belgians</i>
4. <i>occupant</i> ,	<i>they seize</i>
5. <i>fugam cēlant</i> ,	<i>they conceal their flight</i>
6. <i>Belgae cōpiās Galbae vītant</i> ,	<i>the Belgians avoid Galba's forces</i>

In sentences (1) and (2), as no subject is separately expressed, *he* is to be supplied. In (3) the subject **Galba** is separately given and therefore *he* should be omitted. Again in (3) **Belgās** is the *direct object* of the verb **superat**, which it precedes : so in (2), (5), and (6), the *direct object* is in the *accusative* and stands before the verb, which comes last.

## LESSON IV.

### FIRST DECLENSION AND FIRST CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

**14.** Conjugate and give meanings of **occupō**, **cēlō**, and **vitō** in the *present indicative active*.

Decline and give meanings of **ripa**, **cōpiae**, and **porta māgna**.

Review vocabularies in Lessons I and II.

**15. Example of the direct and indirect objects.**

**Galba cōpiis galeās multās** *Galba prepares many helmets*  
**parat,** *for his forces*

In this sentence **cōpiis** is in the *dative* and is called the *indirect object* of the verb **parat**; the *indirect object* usually precedes the *direct*, as **cōpiis** here precedes **galeās**.

**16.** Fix in mind this common *order of words* :

- a. Place the adjective *after* the noun it modifies.
- b. **causā**, *for the sake of*, always comes *after* a genitive.
- c. The verb stands at the end of a sentence with the direct object before it.
- d. The indirect (*dative*) object comes before the direct.
- e. The subject comes first; if not separately expressed, it is indicated by the *ending* of the verb.

### 17.

### EXERCISES.

- I.—1. Occupat. 2. Cēlāmus. 3. Superās. 4. Vītātis.
5. Belgās superāmus. 6. Belgae fugam cēlant. 7. Cōpiis

tubās novās parāmus. 8. Galbae cōpiae galeās multās portant (are carrying). 9. Belgae in Galliā cōpiās māgnās parant. 10. Galba in Italiā Belgārum cōpiās superat.

II.—1. We seize. 2. You (*sing.*) are fighting (or fight). 3. You (*plur.*) are preparing helmets for the beloved forces. 4. They avoid a fight for the sake of friendship. 5. They conceal helmets and trumpets for the Belgians. 6. Galba avoids a fight and conceals his flight.

## LESSON V.

### SECOND DECLENSION.

#### 18. **Servus**, *slave*, declined in the singular.

*Nom. servus, a slave*

*Gen. servī,<sup>1</sup> of a slave*

*Dat. servō, to or for a slave*

*Acc. servum, a slave*

*Voc. serve,<sup>2</sup> O slave*

*Abl. servō, from, with, by, etc., a slave*

The stem of nouns in the second declension ends in *o*. In combination with the case-endings *o* undergoes changes, appearing as *ō*, *ī*, *u*, *e*, or disappearing altogether. The stem of **servus** is **servo**.

#### 19. Table of case-endings.—Commit to memory:

*Nom. -us = subject*

*Gen. -ī = of*

*Dat. -ō = to or for*

*Acc. -um = object*

*Voc. -e = O*

*Abl. -ō = from, with, by, in, or on*

<sup>1</sup> Pronounced ser-we, with the *r* slightly trilled.

<sup>2</sup> Pronounced ser-wāy, with the *r* slightly trilled.

## 20.

## VOCABULARY.

Nouns of this declension ending in **us** are mostly masculine; when no gender for such nouns is specified, the *masculine* is meant.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
mūrus	mūrī	<i>wall</i>
vīcus	vīcī	<i>village</i>
amīcus	amīcī	<i>friend</i>
gladius	gladī <sup>1</sup>	<i>sword</i>
dō (conjugated like portō)		<i>I give</i>
novus	novī, adj.	<i>new</i>
māgnus	māgnī, adj.	<i>great or large</i>
multus	multī, adj.	<i>much or many</i>
amātus	amātī, adj.	<i>beloved</i>

**21. Agreement of adjective.** (4.<sup>2</sup>)—Notice carefully the agreement of the adjective in the following examples; thus far the noun and its limiting adjective have the same ending:

1. fossae lātae, *of a wide ditch*
2. mūrī lātī, *of a wide wall*
3. galeā novā, *with a new helmet*
4. gladiō novō, *with a new sword*

## 22.

## EXERCISES.

- I.—1. Mūrō. 2. Gladium novum. 3. Amīcī causā.  
 4. Caesar amīcō galeam novam et gladium māgnum dat.  
 5. Galba in vīcō tubās multās cēlat.

- II.—1. Of a large village. 2. To a beloved friend.  
 3. Galba is preparing a high wall for the village. 4. Caesar conceals in the village the helmets of his forces.

<sup>1</sup> Nouns in **ius** and **ium** contract the genitive ending **ii** to single **i**.

<sup>2</sup> All references are made to paragraphs.

## LESSON VI.

FIRST CONJUGATION AND SECOND DECLENSION,  
CONTINUED.

23. Imperfect indicative of *portō*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <i>portābam</i> , <i>I was carrying</i> — <i>I carried</i>	1. <i>portābāmus</i> , <i>we were carrying</i> <i>ing</i> [ing]
2. <i>portābās</i> , <i>you were carrying</i>	2. <i>portābātis</i> , <i>you were carrying</i>
3. <i>portābat</i> , <i>he was carrying</i>	3. <i>portābant</i> , <i>they were carrying</i>

The stem is **portā**, which appears in each form. To make the imperfect tense of a verb, take the present stem (11) and annex **ba**, which is called the *tense-sign*, and to this add the personal endings **m**, **s**, **t**, **mus**, **tis**, **nt**. Thus **occupā + ba + m**.

## 24. Table of endings.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-bam	-bāmus
-bās	-bātis
-bat	-bant

25. **Servus** declined in the plural.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>servī</i> ,	<i>slaves</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>servōrum</i> ,	<i>of slaves</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>servīs</i> ,	<i>to or for slaves</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>servōs</i> ,	<i>slaves</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>servī</i> ,	<i>O slaves</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>servīs</i> ,	<i>from, with, etc., slaves</i>

## 26. Table of case-endings.

<i>Nom.</i> -ī	<i>Acc.</i> -ōs
<i>Gen.</i> -ōrum	<i>Voc.</i> -ī
<i>Dat.</i> -īs	<i>Abl.</i> -īs

## 27.

## VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
lēgātus	lēgātī	ambassador
Rōmānus	Rōmānī	Roman ( <i>noun or adj.</i> )
populus	populī	people
Gallus	Gallī	Gaul ( <i>noun or adj.</i> )
numerus	numerī	number
nūntius	nūntī	message
hiemō		I winter
aedificō		I build
conlocō		I place
in, prep. with the accusative		into
in Galliam, in Ītaliām		into Gaul, into Italy

## 28.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Hiemāmus. 2. Hiemābāmus. 3. Aedificat. 4. Aedificābat. 5. Caesar Gallōrum cōpiās superābat. 6. Cōpiae populī<sup>1</sup> Rōmānī in vīcō Belgārum hiemant. 7. Gallī amīcīs Galbae gladiōs novōs dabant.

II.—1. They were building. 2. Caesar is wintering in a new village. 3. Galba was building a high wall for his forces. 4. The ambassadors of the Belgians give swords and helmets to Galba's slaves.

## LESSON VII.

## FIRST CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

29. Future indicative of *porto*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. portābō, <i>I shall carry</i>	1. portābimus, <i>we shall carry</i>
2. portābis, <i>you will carry</i>	2. portābitis, <i>you will carry</i>
3. portābit, <i>he will carry</i>	3. portābunt, <i>they will carry</i>

The stem is **portā**; the tense-signs are **bō**, **bi**, and **bu**, to which are annexed the personal endings **s**, **t**, **mus**, **tis**, **nt**.

<sup>1</sup> **Populus Rōmānus** (always singular) means *the Roman people, the Romans*.

### 30. Table of endings.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-bō	-bimus
-bis	-bitis
-bit	-bunt

**31. Order of words.**—For answers to questions on the following sentence see (16).

**Caesar in Galliā cōpiīs Galbae** *Caesar will prepare in Gaul new  
vīcōs novōs parābit,* *villages for Galba's forces*

Point out the subject. What does the adverbial phrase in **Gallia** limit? See use of adjunct (34). Name and give position of the *indirect object*. The genitive **Galbae** limits what? (7). *Direct object* and position? *Agreement of adjective* and its position? (4).

32.

## VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
locus	locī	place
liberī	līberōrum ( <i>plur. only</i> )	children
Germānī	Germānōrum	Germans
fīnitimī	fīnitimōrum	neighbours
nostrī	nostrōrum	our (men) <sup>1</sup>
idōneus or reliquus <sup>2</sup> or properō	idōnea, <i>adj. mas. or fem.</i> reliqua, <i>adj. mas. or fem.</i> <i>I hasten</i>	suitable remaining <i>against</i>
contrā, <i>prep. with the acc.</i>		

33. Conjugate in the present, imperfect, and future indicative properō, conlocō, and hiemō, and give meanings.

<sup>1</sup> For this use of **nostrī** see (258).

<sup>2</sup> *reliquus* often means 'the rest of,' but the 'of' does not necessitate the use of a *genitive*: *cōpiae reliquae*—*cōpiās reliquās*, may mean 'the rest of the forces.'

Decline and give meanings of *causa*, *prōvincia*, *mūrus*, *gladius*, and *fīnitimī*.

**34. Use of the adjunct or adverbial phrase.**—The preposition with its noun always in the accusative or ablative case forms an adverbial phrase and modifies the verb. The accusative contains the idea of *place whither*, the ablative *place whence* and *where*. Prepositions are used to define more exactly the local ideas involved in these cases.

**35. Uses of *in*.**—*In* + ablative = *in* or *on*, and modifies a verb of *rest* within the limits of one place. *In* + accusative = *into* (*to, against*), and modifies a verb of *motion* from one place to another.

**Caesar in Galliā (abl.) hiemā-** *Caesar was wintering (resting) in Gaul*

**Caesar in Galliam (acc.) pro- perābit,** *Caesar will hasten into Gaul*

### 36.

### EXERCISE.

1. *Nostri Germānōs et Belgās superābunt.* 2. *Germānī in locīs idōneīs liberōs cēlābant.* 3. *Reliquae Belgārum cōpiae contrā populum Rōmānum pūgnant.* 4. *Cōpiae Rōmānae (adj.) in Galliam pūgnæ causā properābunt.* 5. *Galbae amīcī nostrīs māgnum gladiōrum numerum parant.*

## LESSON VIII.

### SECOND DECLENSION, CONTINUED.

#### 37. Nouns in *um*.

Nouns of the second declension ending in **um** are neuter. The *nominative*, *accusative*, and *vocative* are alike, ending in **um** in the *singular* and **a** in the *plural*.

### Oppidum, town.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	oppidum	oppida
<i>Gen.</i>	oppidī	oppidōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	oppidō	oppidīs
<i>Acc.</i>	oppidum	oppida
<i>Voc.</i>	oppidum	oppida
<i>Abl.</i>	oppidō	oppidīs

Singular nouns ending in **a**, genitive **ae**, are *feminine* and are declined like **fossa**.

Plural nouns ending in **a**, genitive **ōrum**, are *neuter* and are declined like the *plural* of **oppidum**.

### 38. Table of case-endings.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> -um	-a	<i>Acc.</i> -um	-a
<i>Gen.</i> -ī	-ōrum	<i>Voc.</i> -um	-a
<i>Dat.</i> -ō	-īs	<i>Abl.</i> -ō	-īs

### 39.

### VOCABULARY.

(The gender is *neuter*.)

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
scūtum	-ī	shield
vāllum	-ī	rampart
periculum	-ī	danger
arma	armōrum ( <i>plur. only</i> )	arms
loca	locōrum	places <sup>1</sup>
nōn ( <i>adv.</i> )		not
expūgnō		I storm
per, <i>prep. with the acc.</i>		through
multus	multa	multum, <i>adj.</i> much <sup>2</sup>
altus	-a	-um, <i>adj.</i> high
māgnus	-a	-um, <i>adj.</i> great

<sup>1</sup> **Locus**, *place*, may in the plural take the endings of the *masculine* gender, like the plural of **servus**; or the endings of the *neuter*, like the plural of **oppidum**. In Caesar's Latin the *neuter* plural is regularly used.

<sup>2</sup> The three genders of the adjective occur side by side. For full declension, see (46).

## 40.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Nostrī in Galliam arma multa portābunt. 2. Cōpiae Rōmānae (*adj.*) Belgārum vīcōs et oppida expūgnābant. 3. Germānī per oppida Belgārum arma et liberōs portant. 4. Belgae pūgnac causā in silvīs altīs galeās et gladiōs et scūta cēlābunt. 5. Lēgātus populī Rōmānī nostrīs loca idōnea parat.

II.—1. Slaves were carrying Galba's arms through places of danger. 2. Neighbours of the Roman people (*sing.*) build large ramparts for Galba's forces. 3. Caesar will give helmets and shields to his beloved forces and storm the walls of the town.

## LESSON IX.

## SECOND DECLENSION, CONTINUED.

41. **Puer**,<sup>1</sup> boy, mas. **Ager**, field, mas. **Vir**, man, mas.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	puer	puerī	ager	agrī	vir	virī
<i>Gen.</i>	puerī	puerōrum	agrī	agrōrum	virī	virōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	puerō	puerīs	agrō	agrīs	virō	virīs
<i>Acc.</i>	puerum	puerōs	agrum	agrōs	virum	virōs
<i>Voc.</i>	puer	puerī	ager	agrī	vir	virī
<i>Abl.</i>	puerō	puerīs	agrō	agrīs	virō	virīs

42. **Rule of gender.**—Second-declension nouns ending in **us** are mostly *masculine*, rarely *feminine*. Nouns in **er** and **ir** are *masculine*, those in **um** are *neuter*.

Decline the *nouns* of the first and second declensions (453, 454), and conjugate (with meanings) the present, imperfect, and future indicative of **amō** (474).

43 (a). **Ablative with *cum*.**—When *with* means *together*

<sup>1</sup> Observe that the noun and agreeing adjective need not end alike; as, **puer amātus**, *the beloved boy*.

*with*, it is expressed not by the *ablative alone*, but by **cum** + *ablative*. This is called the “*ablative of attendance*.”

**Galba in Galliam cum cōpiis Galba hastens into Gaul with properat,** *his forces*

In this example the two adverbial phrases **in Galliam** and **cum cōpiis** *precede* and limit the verb **properat**, which they *follow* in the translation.

**43 (b). Ablative without *cum*.**—When *with* means *with the help of* or *with the aid of*, it is expressed by the ablative alone. This is called the “*ablative of means*.”

**Nostrī pīlīs multīs castra ex-pūgnant,** *Our men are storming the camp with many javelins*

#### 44.

#### VOCABULARY.

(The gender is *neuter*.)

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
proelium	proelī	battle
pīlum	-ī	javelin
castra	castrōrum ( <i>plur. only</i> )	camp <sup>1</sup>
hiberna	-ōrum	winter-quarters
praesidium	praesidi	defence
cum, prep. <i>with the abl.</i>		with
redintegrō		I renew

#### 45.

#### EXERCISES.

I.—1. Germānī cum nostrīs proelium nōn redintegrābunt. 2. Nostrī gladiīs et pīlīs praesidia Gallōrum expūgnābant. 3. Galba in Galliam cum cōpiis properābit et armīs castra Gallōrum expūgnābit. 4. Cōpiæ reliquae in castra arma portant et praesidia nova parant.

II.—1. Caesar places his new forces in winter-quarters for the sake of a defence. 2. Our men were storming the walls of the town and renewing battle with the Germans. 3. The friends of the Romans (*noun*) will build many ramparts for our men.

<sup>1</sup> Decline **castra** (37).

## LESSON X.

## ADJECTIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

46. Altus, alta, altum, *high*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i> altus	alta	altum	altī	altæ	alta
<i>Gen.</i> altī	altæ	altī	altōrum	altārum	altōrum
<i>Dat.</i> altō	altæ	altō	altīs	altīs	altīs
<i>Acc.</i> altum	altam	altum	altōs	altās	alta
<i>Voc.</i> alte	alta	altum	altī	altæ	alta
<i>Abl.</i> altō	altā	altō	altīs	altīs	altīs

## 47. Uses of the ablative.

1. Ablative of *place where* takes the preposition *in*, thus:  
**Caesar in Galliā hiemābit.**

2. Ablative of *attendance* takes the preposition *cum*, thus:  
**Galba cum cōpiis properat.**

3. Ablative of *means or instrument* has *no preposition*, thus: **Rōmāni gladiis pūgnābant.**

In (1) and (2) the adverbial phrases *in Galliā* and *cum cōpiis* modify the verb; in (3) *gladiis*, though a noun in the ablative case, modifies *pūgnābant* in an adverbial sense.

## 48.

## VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
nūntius	nūntī, mas.	<i>messenger</i>
mora	-ae, fem.	<i>delay</i>
auxilium	auxilī, neut.	<i>aid or help</i>
imperium	-ī, neut.	<i>power or command</i>
sine, prep. with the abl.		<i>without</i>
ē or ex, prep. with the abl.		<i>out of</i>
convocō		<i>I summon</i>
cōpia	-ae, fem.	<i>abundance</i>
Rēmī	-ōrum, mas.	<i>the Remi</i>
dubitō		<i>I hesitate</i>

## 49.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Nostrī cum Germānōrum fīnitimīs proelium nōn redintegrābunt. 2. Lēgātus Rōmānus sine morā ex hībernīs nūntiōs multōs convocābat. 3. Galba oppidi mūrōs expūgnābit et imperī causā cōpiās Belgārum superābit. 4. Rēmī in proeliīs multīs populō Rōmānō auxilium dant. 5. Caesar per prōvinciam cum cōpiīs properābit et in Ītaliā sine periculō hiemābit.

II.—1. Slaves were carrying arms out of the town into winter-quarters. 2. Caesar will not give help to the remaining Remi. 3. They winter in the fields of the Gauls and renew the battle against our men.

## LESSON XI.

## FIRST CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

50. Present subjunctive of *portō*.

## SINGULAR.

- |            |                                |              |                       |
|------------|--------------------------------|--------------|-----------------------|
| 1. portem, | <i>I may<sup>1</sup> carry</i> | 1. portēmus, | <i>we may carry</i>   |
| 2. portēs, | <i>you may carry</i>           | 2. portētis, | <i>you may carry</i>  |
| 3. portet, | <i>he may carry</i>            | 3. portent,  | <i>they may carry</i> |

## PLURAL.

The present subjunctive is formed by changing final **ā**, of the stem **portā**, to **ē** and annexing the *personal endings* **m**, **s**, **t**, **mus**, **tis**, **nt**.

This is the only tense in which the stem **portā** undergoes a change of the final vowel.

## 51. Table of endings.

## SINGULAR.

-em

-ēs

-et

## PLURAL.

-ēmus

-ētis

-ent

<sup>1</sup> This meaning of the *present subjunctive* is given with a view to its use in *final clauses of purpose*. Other English renderings will be given later.

## 52.

## VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
<b>frūmentum</b>	<i>-ī, neut.</i>	<i>corn</i>
<b>equus</b>	<i>-ī, mas.</i>	<i>horse</i>
<b>oppidānī</b>	<i>-ōrum, mas.</i>	<i>townsmen</i>
<b>sīgnūm</b>	<i>-ī, neut.</i>	<i>signal</i>
<b>ut</b> ( <i>with the subjunctive</i> )		<i>so that</i>
<b>coniūrō</b>		<i>I conspire</i>
<b>vāstō</b>		<i>I lay waste</i>
<b>appellō</b>		<i>I call</i>
<b>praefectus</b>	<i>-ī, mas.</i>	<i>general</i>

## 53. Apposition.

Rōmānī Rēmīs amīcīs auxi- *The Romans give help to the  
lium dant,* *Rēmi, their friends*

In the English sentence *friends* is in apposition with and limits *Remi*; the Latin equivalent for *friends* is put in the *dative* to agree with **Rēmīs**, as the *appositive* takes the *case of the noun which it limits*.

**54. Use of *ut*.**—When *ut* means *so that*, it introduces a subordinate clause of *purpose*, and the verb of this clause is in the *subjunctive*. This *ut + subjunctive* may be translated by the *English infinitive*.

Example of the *ut* clause.

Pūgnant ut superent, *They fight so that they may  
overcome (or to overcome)*

The *English infinitive* “to overcome” is not rendered by the *Latin infinitive*; it must be changed to the *subjunctive*.

## 55.

## EXERCISES.

- 1.—1. Rōmānī gladiīs pūgnant, ut Gallōs superent.
2. Galba nostrīs equōs dabit, ut ex Ītaliā properent. 3. Caesar cūm cōpiīs per prōvinciam properat ut Gallōrum vīcōs vāstet. 4. Germānī cūm Belgīs, fīnitimīs populī

Rōmānī, coniūrābunt. 5. Caesar sīgnum proelī dat et cōpiae Rōmānae oppidum māgnum expūgnant.

II.—1. The Gauls build high walls so that they may avoid a battle with our men. 2. The Romans will not lay waste the fields of the Remi, their friends. 3. Caesar hastens into Gaul to prepare<sup>1</sup> a suitable camp for our men.

## LESSON XII.

### ADJECTIVE AND VERB, CONTINUED.

#### 56. Integer, integra, integrum, *fresh*.

The masculine gender is inflected like **ager**, the feminine like **fossa**, and the neuter like **oppidum**.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i> integer	-gra	-grum	integrī	-grae	-gra
<i>Gen.</i> integrī	-grae	-grī	integrōrum	-grārum	-grōrum
<i>Dat.</i> integrō	-grae	-grō	integrīs	-grīs	-grīs
<i>Acc.</i> integrum	-gram	-grum	integrōs	-grās	-gra
<i>Voc.</i> integer	-gra	-grum	integrī	-grae	-gra
<i>Abl.</i> integrō	-grā	-grō	integrīs	-grīs	-grīs

57. Principal parts of the verb.—Latin verbs have four principal parts, so called because when these parts are known, the other forms of the verb may be found.

They are *present indicative*, *present infinitive*, *perfect indicative*, and the *first supine*. The *present infinitive* of first-conjugation verbs ends in -re, thus: **portō**, **portāre**.

The present stem of a verb is found regularly by dropping re from the present active infinitive. Stem of **portō**, **portā**.

<sup>1</sup> Not infinitive in Latin.

## 58.

## VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
subsidiū	-ī, neut.	relief
cōsilium	-ī, neut.	plan
initiū	-ī, neut.	beginning
aedificiū	-ī, neut.	building
impedimenta	-ōrum, neut. plur.	baggage
ferus	-a, -um, adj.	fierce
sed,	conj.	but
trāns,	prep. with the acc.	across
propter,	prep. with the acc.	on account of
ad,	prep. with the acc.	to or towards
noster,	-tra, -trum, adj.	our
cōfīrmō		I establish

Conjugate the following verbs in the present subjunctive, and review them in the present, imperfect, and future indicative with meanings: *dubitō*, *appellō*, *convocō*, and *parō*. Decline *altus* and *crēber* (466).

59. **Use of *ad*.**—When “to” means *towards* (of place), it is expressed *not* by the *dative*, but by *ad + accusative*. This phrase—*ad + accusative*—modifies a verb which denotes *motion* from one place to another. Thus:

Nostrī ad Galbae castra pro- Our men hasten to Galba's  
perant, camp

But:

Caesar Galbae (dat.) equum Caesar gives a horse to Galba  
dat,

## 60.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Galba proelī causā ē castrīs nostrōs convocāre nōn dubitābit. 2. Praefectī nostrī (adj.) ad Galbae castra gladiōs et scūta portāre parant. 3. Lēgātus Rōmānus in Galliā aedificia nōn vāstābat sed cum Gallis amīcitiam cōfīrmābat. 4. Caesar cōpiis amātis arma nova dabit ut castra Germānōrum expūgnent.

II.—1. The Belgians do not hesitate to build high walls so that they may avoid a battle. 2. The remaining Gauls were preparing to renew the battle with the Germans, their neighbours. 3. The fierce Germans are carrying corn to the camp of the Belgians; they will not give aid to Galba.

## LESSON XIII.

### VERB, CONTINUED.

#### 61. Imperfect subjunctive of *portō*.

##### SINGULAR.

1. *portārem*, *I might carry*
2. *portārēs*, *you might carry*
3. *portāret*, *he might carry*

##### PLURAL.

1. *portārēmus*, *we might carry*
2. *portārētis*, *you might carry*
3. *portārent*, *they might carry*

#### 62. Table of endings.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-rem	-rēmus
-rēs	-rētis
-ret	-rent

These endings are annexed to the stem *portā*.

Conjugate in both *present* and *imperfect subjunctive*, and give meanings of *fugō*, *mandō*, and *imperō*.

#### 63. Principal parts of verbs.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Infin.	Perf. Ind.	First Supine.	
<i>fugō</i>	<i>fugāre</i>	<i>fugāvī</i>	<i>fugātum</i>	<i>to rout</i>
<i>pūgnō</i>	<i>pūgnāre</i>	<i>pūgnāvī</i>	<i>pūgnātum</i>	<i>to fight</i>
<i>occupō</i>	<i>occupāre</i>	<i>occupāvī</i>	<i>occupātum</i>	<i>to seize</i>

64. Moods and tenses.—The indicative mood has six tenses, viz.: present, imperfect, future, perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect.

The subjunctive has four tenses: present, imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect.

The first *three* of the indicative and the first *two* of the subjunctive are formed upon the *present stem*.

**65. Ablative of time.**—*Time when or within which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

Vigiliā secundā trāns Rhēnum	<i>He hastens across the Rhine in properat,</i>	<i>(during) the second watch</i>
Nostrī initiō proelī Germānōs	<i>Our men rout the Germans in fugant,</i>	<i>the beginning of the battle</i>

Vigiliā and initiō, though nouns in the ablative case, in an adverbial sense modify the verb.

## 66.

### VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
animus	-ī, mas.	<i>mind</i>
Rhēnus	-ī, mas.	<i>the Rhine</i>
tēlum	-ī, neut.	<i>weapon</i>
prō, prep. with the abl.		<i>in front of</i>
prīmus	-a, -um, num. adj.	<i>first</i>
secundus	-a, -um, “ “	<i>second</i>
extrēmus	-a, -um, adj.	<i>farthest</i>
oppūgnō	-āre	<i>to attack</i>
mandō	-āre	<i>to direct or instruct</i>
imperō	-āre	<i>to command</i>
fugō	-āre	<i>to rout</i>
vigilia	-ae, fem.	<i>watch (division of the night)</i>

## 67.

### EXERCISES.

I.—1. Nostrī prō castrīs välla alta aedificant. 2. Caesar cum cōpiīs trāns Rhēnum ad oppida Germānōrum properābat. 3. Germānī in castra lēgātōs Rōmānōs convocant et nostrīs auxilium dare parant. 4. Nostrī in Galbae castra tēla multa portābunt et prīmā vigiliā Belgās fugābunt. 5. Gallī prō mūrō oppidī cōpiās integrās conlocābant ut proelium cum nostrīs redintegrārent.

II.—1. Our (*adj.*) ambassador will not hesitate to attack a

town of the Belgians in farthest Gaul. 2. Our men were carrying new weapons into a suitable camp so that they might rout the Gauls. 3. The Belgians in many places build high walls for the sake of defence.

## LESSON XIV.

### VERB AND ADJECTIVE, CONTINUED. REVIEW OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

#### 68. Conjugation of *imperō*.

Present Indicative. <i>I command.</i>	Imperfect Indicative. <i>was commanding.</i>	Future Indicative. <i>shall command.</i>
SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
1. imperō	imperābam	imperābō
2. imperās	imperābas	imperābis
3. imperat	imperābat	imperābit
PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.
1. imperāmus	imperābāmus	imperābimus
2. imperātis	imperābātis	imperābitis
3. imperant	imperābant	imperābunt
Present Subjunctive. <i>may command.</i>	Imperfect Subjunctive. <i>might command.</i>	
SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	
1. imperem	imperārem	
2. imperēs	imperārēs	
3. imperet	imperāret	
PLURAL.	PLURAL.	
1. imperēmus	imperārēmus	
2. imperētis	imperārētis	
3. imperent	imperārent	

69. Agreement of the adjective.—Compare the *ending* of the *adjective* and the *ending* of the *noun* which it limits, in the following:

**Nostrī Belgās ferōs fugābunt,** *Our men will rout the fierce Belgians*

Do the noun **Belgās** and the adjective **ferōs** end alike? Look up the *gender* of **Belgās** and apply the rule for agreement of the adjective (4).

### 70. Imperative mood of *porto*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. [wanting]	[wanting]
2. { portā, carry ( <i>thou</i> )	{ portātē, carry ( <i>ye</i> )
{ portātō, thou shalt carry	{ portātōtē, ye shall carry
3. portātō, he shall carry	portantō, they shall carry

#### Examples of the use of the imperative.

Gladiōs portā, serve!                    Slave, carry the swords!  
 Oppidum, lēgātī, expūgnātē!            Ambassadors, storm the town!

Do not place the person addressed (*voc.*) first in a Latin sentence.

### 71.

### EXERCISES.

I.—1. Germānōs fugātē, Rōmānī! 2. Gallī, ut peri-  
 culum vītent, ex oppidīs properant. 3. Galba tubā sīgnū  
 proelī dabit. 4. Nostrī e Germānōrum castrīs equōs et  
 arma portābunt. 5. Germānī cum Belgīs coniūrābant ut  
 populī (*gen.*) Rōmānī praeſidia expūgnārent. 6. Lēgātī  
 Rōmānī in hibernīs in vīcō idōneō cōpiās conlocābunt.

II.—1. Ambassador, give the signal! 2. The Germans  
 will attack the remaining towns and winter in the vil-  
 lages of the Gauls. 3. The townsmen hasten to Galba's  
 camp to establish<sup>1</sup> friendship with<sup>2</sup> the Roman people.

<sup>1</sup> Not infinitive in Latin.

<sup>2</sup> Use **cum**.

## LESSON XV.

**PORTŌ**, CONTINUED. PRESENT SYSTEM OF TENSES,  
COMPLETED.

**72. Present system of *portō* completed.**

*Present participle* portāns, *carrying*

*Present infinitive* portāre, *to carry*

*Gerund* portandī, *of carrying*

**73. Gerund defined and declined.**—The gerund is, in form, a neuter verbal noun of the second declension, corresponding in meaning to the English verbal noun ending in *ing*.

The gerund is thus declined. The *nominative* is supplied by the present infinitive active.

*Gen.* portandī, *of carrying*

*Dat.* portandō, *to or for carrying*

*Acc. (ad)* portandum, *for carrying*

*Abl.* portandō, *from, with, by, etc., carrying*

**74. Use of the gerund.**—The gerund in any form governs the same case as the verb of which it is a part. As:

Agrōs vāstandō, *By laying waste the fields*

**75. Synopsis of *portō* in the present system.**—The following nine forms are built upon the *present stem portā*:

- |                                 |           |                       |
|---------------------------------|-----------|-----------------------|
| 1. <i>Present indicative</i>    | portō,    | <i>I carry</i>        |
| 2. <i>Imperfect indicative</i>  | portābam, | <i>I was carrying</i> |
| 3. <i>Future indicative</i>     | portābō,  | <i>I shall carry</i>  |
| 4. <i>Present subjunctive</i>   | portem,   | <i>I may carry</i>    |
| 5. <i>Imperfect subjunctive</i> | portārem, | <i>I might carry</i>  |
| 6. <i>Imperative</i>            | portā,    | <i>carry (thou)</i>   |
| 7. <i>Present participle</i>    | portāns,  | <i>carrying</i>       |
| 8. <i>Present infinitive</i>    | portāre,  | <i>to carry</i>       |
| 9. <i>Gerund</i>                | portandī, | <i>of carrying</i>    |

Give complete synopsis, *present system*, in order of “tense-name,” “tense-form,” and “meaning,” of *incūsō* and *sustentō*.

Decline the *nouns* of the *first* and *second declensions* (453, 454), also *altus* and *crēber* (466). Name *four* kinds of *ablatives*.

## 76.

## VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
<i>rēgnūm</i>	-ī, neut.	<i>kingdom or royal power</i>
<i>facile</i> , <i>adv.</i>		<i>easily</i>
<i>castellūm</i>	-ī, neut.	<i>redoubt</i>
<i>armātūs</i>	-a, -um, <i>adj.</i>	<i>armed</i>
<i>proximus</i>	-a, -um, “	<i>next</i>
<i>parātūs</i>	-a, -um, “	<i>ready</i>
<i>incūsō</i>	-āre, -āvī, -ātūm	<i>to blame</i>
<i>sustentō</i>	-āre, -āvī, -ātūm	<i>to hold out</i>
<i>impetrō</i>	-āre, -āvī, -ātūm	<i>to obtain</i>

## 77. Relation of words and clauses.

Lēgātī Belgārum ad Galbae Ambassadors of the Belgians  
 castra veniunt, ut cum come to Galba's camp to es-  
 populō Rōmānō amīcitiam tablish\* friendship with the  
 cōfirment, Roman people

Lēgātī = subject of the principal verb *veniunt* (indicative mood).

Belgārum = genitive plural modifying lēgātī.

{ ad = preposition governing the noun *castra* in the accusative.

{ Galbae = genitive singular limiting *castra*.

{ *castra* = object of ad: this phrase limits the principal verb *veniunt*—*a verb of motion*.

*veniunt* = present indicative active, 3d plural, *not of the first conjugation*.

\* To establish, etc., subordinate clause denoting purpose (53).

**ut** = conjunction going with **cōfirment**: this entire clause denotes *purpose* and is subordinate to **veniunt**.

{ **cum** = preposition governing the noun **populō** in the *ablative*.

{ **populō** = object of **cum**: this phrase limits the verb **cōfirment**.

{ **Rōmānō** = adjective modifying **populō** in the *ablative singular masculine*.

**amīcitiam** = direct object of **cōfirment**.

**cōfirment** = present subjunctive active, 3d plural; subjunctive of *purpose* introduced by **ut**.

78.

## REVIEW VOCABULARY.

## LESSONS I—XV.

1. *trāns* (prep. with the *acc.*), *across*
2. *contrā* (prep. with the *acc.*), *against*
3. *auxilium*, *auxilī* (neut.), *aid or help*
4. *iuvō*, *iuvāre*, *iūvī*, *iūtum*, *to aid*
5. *adiuvō*, *adiuvāre*, *adiūvī*, *adiūtum*, *to aid*
6. *sum*, *esse*, *fūi*, [no supine], *be or am*
7. *lēgātus*, *lēgātī* (mas.), *ambassador*
8. *et* (conj.), *and*
9. *armātus*, *armāta*, *armātum* (adj.), *armed*
10. *arma*, *armōrum* (neut.), *arms*
11. *oppūgnō*, *oppūgnāre*, *oppūgnāvī*, *oppūgnātum*, *attack*
12. *vītō*, *vītāre*, *vītāvī*, *vītātum*, *avoid*
13. *impedīmenta*, *impedīmentōrum* (neut.), *baggage*
14. *rīpa*, *rīpae* (fem.), *bank*
15. *proelium*, *proelī* (neut.), *battle*
16. *quod* (conj.), *because*
17. *initium*, *initī* (neut.), *beginning*
18. *Belgae*, *Belgārum* (mas.), *Belgians*
19. *amātus*, *amāta*, *amātum* (adj.), *beloved*
20. *incūsō*, *incūsāre*, *incūsāvī*, *incūsātum*, *blame*
21. *puer*, *puerī* (mas.), *boy*
22. *lātus*, *lāta*, *lātum* (adj.), *broad or wide*
23. *aedificō*, *aedificāre*, *aedificāvī*, *aedificātum*, *build*
24. *aedificium*, *aedificī* (neut.), *building*
25. *sed* (conj.), *but*
26. *appellō*, *appellāre*, *appellāvī*, *appellātum*, *call*
27. *castra*, *castrōrum* (neut.), *camp*
28. *portō*, *portāre*, *portāvī*, *portātum*, *carry*
29. *causa*, *causae* (fem.), *cause*
30. *līberī*, *līberōrum* (mas.), *children*
31. *imperium*, *imperī* (neut.), *command*

32. imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātum, *to command*  
 33. cēlō, cēlāre, cēlāvī, cēlātum, *conceal*  
 34. coniūrō, coniūrāre, coniūrāvī, coniūrātum, *conspire*  
 35. frūmentum, frūmentī (neut.), *corn*  
 36. periculum, periculī (neut.), *danger*  
 37. praesidium, praesidī (neut.), *defence*  
 38. mora, morae (fem.), *delay*  
 39. mandō, mandāre, mandāvī, mandātum, *direct or instruct*  
 40. fossa, fossae (fem.), *ditch*  
 41. facile (adv.), *easily*  
 42. cōfirmō, cōfirmāre, cōfirmāvī, cōfirmātum, *establish*  
 43. extrēmus, extrēma, extrēmum (adj.), *farthest*  
 44. ager, agrī (mas.), *field*  
 45. ferus, fera, ferum (adj.), *fierce*  
 46. pūgna, pūgnæ (fem.), *fight*  
 47. pūgnō, pūgnāre, pūgnāvī, pūgnātum, *to fight*  
 48. prīmus, prīma, prīmū (adj.), *first*  
 49. fuga, fugae (fem.), *flight*  
 50. causā (stands after the gen.), *for the sake of*  
 51. cōpiae, cōpiārum (fem.), *forces*  
 52. silva, silvae (fem.), *forest*  
 53. integer, integra, integrum (adj.), *fresh*  
 54. amīcus, amīcī (mas.), *friend*  
 55. amīcitia, amīcitiae (fem.), *friendship*  
 56. Galba, Galbae (mas.), *Galba*  
 57. porta, portae (fem.), *gate*  
 58. Gallia, Galliae (fem.), *Gaul (country)*  
 59. Gallus, Gallī (mas.), *Gaul (citizen)*  
 60. praefectus, praefectī (mas.), *general*  
 61. Germānī, Germānōrum (mas.), *Germans*  
 62. dō, dare, dedī, datum, *give*  
 63. māgnus, māgna, māgnum, (adj.), *great or large*  
 64. mātūrō, mātūrāre, mātūrāvī, mātūrātum, *hasten*  
 65. galea, galeae (fem.), *helmet*  
 66. hīc (adv.), *here*  
 67. dubitō, dubitāre, dubitāvī, dubitātum, *hesitate*

68. **altus, alta, altum** (adj.), *high, tall, or deep*
69. **sustentō, sustentāre, sustentāvī, sustentātum, hold out**
70. **equus, equī** (mas.), *horse*
71. **in** (prep. with the *abl.*), *in*; (with the *acc.*) *into*
72. **prō** (prep. with the *abl.*), *in front of*
73. **Ītalia, ītaliae** (fem.), *Italy*
74. **pīlum, pīlī** (neut.), *javelin*
75. **rēgnūm, rēgnī** (neut.), *kingdom or power*
76. **vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvī, vāstātum, lay waste**
77. **amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum, love**
78. **vir, virī** (mas.), *man*
79. **multus, multa, multum** (adj.), *much or many*
80. **nūntius, nūntī** (mas.), *message or messenger*
81. **animus, animī** (mas.), *mind*
82. **fīnitimī, fīnitimōrum** (mas.), *neighbours*
83. **novus, nova, novum** (adj.), *new*
84. **proximus, proxima, proximum** (adj.), *next*
85. **nōn** (adv.), *not*
86. **numerus, numerī** (mas.), *number*
87. **impetrō, impetrāre, impetrāvī, impetrātum, obtain**
88. **propter** (prep. with the *acc.*), *on account of*
89. **noster, nostra, nostrum** (adj.), *our*
90. **nostrī, nostrōrum** (mas.), *our men*
91. **ē or ex** (prep. with the *abl.*), *out of*
92. **superō, superāre, superāvī, superātum, overcome**
93. **populus, populī** (mas.), *people*
94. **locus, locī** (mas.), *place*
95. **conlocō conlocāre, conlocāvī, conlocātum, to place**
96. **loca, locōrum** (neut.), *places*
97. **cōnsilium, cōnsiliī** (neut.), *plan*
98. **parō, parāre, parāvī, parātum, prepare**
99. **prōvincia, prōvinciae** (fem.), *province*
100. **vāllum, vālli** (neut.), *rampart*
101. **parātus, parāta, parātum** (adj.), *ready*
102. **castellum, castellī** (neut.), *redoubt*
103. **subsidiūm, subsidī** (neut.), *relief*

104. Rēmī, Rēmōrum (mas.), *Remi*  
 105. reliquus, reliqua, reliquum (adj.), *remaining*  
 106. redintegrō, redintegrāre, redintegrāvī, redintegrātūm, *renew*  
 107. Rhēnus, Rhēnī (mas.), *Rhine*  
 108. Rōmānus, Rōmānī (mas.), *Roman*  
 109. Rōmānus, Rōmāna, Rōmānum (adj.), *Roman*  
 110. fugō, fugāre, fugāvī, fugātūm, *rout*  
 111. prōflīgō, prōflīgāre, prōflīgāvī, prōflīgātūm, *rout*  
 112. secundus, secunda, secundum (adj.), *second*  
 113. occupō, occupāre, occupāvī, occupātūm, *seize*  
 114. servus, servī (mas.), *servant or slave*  
 115. scūtum, scūtī (neut.), *shield*  
 116. sīgnūm, sīgnī (neut.), *signal*  
 117. ut (conj.), *so that*  
 118. expūgnō, expūgnāre, expūgnāvī, expūgnātūm, *storm*  
 119. idōneus, idōnea, idōneum (adj.), *suitable*  
 120. convocō, convocāre, convocāvī, convocātūm, *summon*  
 121. gladius, gladiī (mas.), *sword*  
 122. per (prep. with the acc.), *through*  
 123. ad (prep. with the acc.), *to, towards*  
 124. oppidum, oppidi (neut.), *town*  
 125. oppidānī, oppidānōrum (mas.), *townsmen*  
 126. tuba, tubae (fem.), *trumpet*  
 127. vīcus, vīcī (mas.), *village*  
 128. mūrus, mūrī (mas.), *wall*  
 129. tēlūm, tēlī (neut.), *weapon*  
 130. hiemō, hiemāre, hiemāvī, hiemātūm, *winter*  
 131. hīberna, hībernōrum (neut.), *winter-quarters*  
 132. cum (prep. with the abl.), *with*  
 133. sine (prep. with the abl.), *without*

## LESSON XVI.

## RELATIVE PRONOUN.

**79. Qui, quae, quod, who, which, what, or that.**

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i> <b>qui</b>	<b>quae</b>	<b>quod</b>	<b>qui</b>	<b>quae</b>	<b>quae</b>
<i>Gen.</i> <b>cūius</b>	<b>cūius</b>	<b>cūius</b>	<b>quōrum</b>	<b>quārum</b>	<b>quōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i> <b>cui</b>	<b>cui</b>	<b>cui</b>	<b>quibus</b>	<b>quibus</b>	<b>quibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i> <b>quem</b>	<b>quam</b>	<b>quod</b>	<b>quōs</b>	<b>quās</b>	<b>quae</b>
<i>Abl.</i> <b>quō</b>	<b>quā</b>	<b>quō</b>	<b>quibus</b>	<b>quibus</b>	<b>quibus</b>

**80. English meanings of the Latin relative pronoun.**

NOTE.—The plural forms of the *Latin* relative pronoun have the same *English meanings* as the singular forms.

The word *that* may be substituted for *who* or *which* in the nominative and accusative cases.

## SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

Mas. and Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i> <i>who</i> or <i>which</i>	<i>which</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>whose, of whom, of which</i>	<i>whose, of which</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>to or for whom, to or for which</i>	<i>to or for which</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>whom or which</i>	<i>which</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>from, with, by, in, or on whom or which</i>	<i>from, with, by, in, or on which</i>

**81.**

## VOCABULARY.

Review words 1–66 in ‘review vocabulary’ (78).

**82. Commit to memory:**

1. **Lēgātus qui properat,** *The ambassador who hastens*
2. **Gallī qui hiemant,** *The Gauls who winter*

- |                           |   |
|---------------------------|---|
| 3. Cōpiae quae parant,    | <i>The forces which prepare</i>         |
| 4. Tuba quae signum dat,  | <i>The trumpet which gives a signal</i> |
| 5. Praesidia quae cēlant, | <i>The defences which conceal</i>       |
| 6. Pilum quod superat,    | <i>The javelin which overcomes</i>      |

**83. Agreement of the relative.**—The relative *must* agree with its antecedent in *number* and *gender*; the case of the relative is determined by its function in its own clause, which function is always independent of that of its antecedent.

## LESSON XVII.

### RELATIVE PRONOUN, CONTINUED.

**84. *Castra* and the relative pronoun.**—As *castra* is *plural* in form and *singular* in meaning and also *neuter*, a relative pronoun referring to *castra* as its antecedent must be *neuter* and *plural*, as in example (1).

When *castra* becomes the *subject* of a verb, the latter takes a *plural form* in Latin, although it is *singular* in English, as in example (2).

### 85. Examples of *castra*, etc.

- |                               |                                     |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Caesar castra quae impedi- | <i>Caesar storms the camp which</i> |
| menta cēlant expūgnat,        | <i>conceals the baggage</i>         |
| 2. Castra Galbae equōs cēlā-  | <i>The camp concealed Galba's</i>   |
| bant,                         | <i>horses</i>                       |

### 86.

### VOCABULARY.

Review words 67–133 in ‘review vocabulary’ (78).

**87.** Conjugate and give meanings of *fugō* and *mandō* in the *imperative* (70); also decline their *gerunds* and give their *present participles* and *present infinitives* (72, 73).

88. What is the *present stem* of *cōfirmō*?

*How many forms* are derived from this stem?

Give full synopsis of these *with meanings*.

How is *purpose* expressed in Latin?

Explain fully the agreement of the *relative quae* in Latin sentence (3) below.

### 89.

### EXERCISES.

I.—1. Lēgātus quī in Galliā hiemat cum Belgīs proelium redintegrābit. 2. Galba pīlīs multīs aedificia Germānōrum quī contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrant expūgnat. 3. Lēgātī nostrī (*adj.*) in hībernīs in prōvinciā cōpiās quae castella nova aedificant conlocābant. 4. Germānī quī in castra cōpiās convocant, ut pūgnam vītent, proelium nōn redintegrābunt sed ē castrīs properābunt.

II.—1. With the aid of the Remi Galba overcomes the remaining Belgians who are laying waste the fields of the Romans. 2. Slaves were carrying many weapons into the camp which concealed the baggage of the Roman ambassador. 3. Our men overcome in many battles the forces which are building defences in Gaul. 4. The fierce Belgians will establish friendship with their neighbours and storm the town which gives aid to the Roman forces.

## LESSON XVIII.

### RELATIVE PRONOUN, CONTINUED.

#### 90. Examples of the relative as the object:

1. **Oppidum quod Galba aedificat,** *The town which Galba builds*

2. **Agrī quōs Germānī vāstant,** *The fields which the Germans lay waste*

3. **Castrā quae Rēmī in Galliā conlocant,** *The camp which the Remi place in Gaul*  
 4. **Cōpiae quās Caesar in prōvinciam convocat,** *Forces which Caesar summons into the province*  
 5. **Tuba quam Galba servō dat,** *The trumpet which Galba gives to (his) slave*  
 6. **Lēgātūs quem oppidānī in- cūsant,** *The ambassador whom the townsmen blame*

## 91.

## VOCABULARY.

Learn the *principal parts* and *meanings* of verbs 1–10 (448).

## 92. How words are joined together in a sentence.

- Belgae contrā integrās cōpiās quās Caesar in castra convocat nōn sustentābunt,** *The Belgians will not hold out against the fresh forces which Caesar is summoning into camp*

**Belgae:** subject of **sustentābunt**, which is the *principal verb* in the sentence and is placed *at the end*. **contrā integrās cōpiās:** adverbial phrase, modifies **sustentābunt**. **nōn:** adverb limiting **sustentābunt**. **quās:** begins the relative clause and is the *direct object* of **convocat**. **Caesar:** subject of **convocat**. **in castra:** adverbial phrase limiting the *next verb*, **convocat**.

## 93.

## EXERCISES.

- I.—1. **Cōpiae quās Galba in hībernīs conlocat Belgārum praesidia nōn oppūgnābunt.** 2. **Nostrī cum Rēmīs coniūrandō castra quae Germānī in Galliā conlocābant oppūgnāre parābant.** 3. **Lēgātī Galbae in Galliā properāre**

nōn dubitant, ut oppida quae amīcī Germānōrum imperī causā aedificant oppūgnent. 4. Caesar cōpiis amātīs vīcōs quōs nostrī in Galliā facile expūgnābant (*stormed*) dabit.

II.—1. The slaves whom Galba conceals in a suitable place will carry relief to the Remi. 2. Caesar was giving swords and javelins to the Remi, whom he calls friends, so that they might attack the large camp which the Germans were preparing to place in Gaul. 3. O Romans! storm the redoubt which the Belgians are preparing. 4. Galba's forces will attack the wall which the Germans are building.

## LESSON XIX.

IRREGULAR VERB **SUM**, *I AM*. RELATIVE PRONOUN,  
CONTINUED.

**94. Present indicative, sum, I am. Imperfect indicative, eram, I was. Future indicative, ero, I shall be.**

I am.		I was.		I shall be.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. sum, <i>I am</i>	sumus, <i>we are</i>	eram	erāmus	ero	erimus
2. es, <i>you are</i>	estis, <i>you are</i>	erās	erātis	eris	eritis
3. est, <i>he is</i>	sunt, <i>they are</i>	erat	erant	erit	erunt

**95. Use of sum—Predicate nominative.**—Finite forms of sum are followed by a *noun* or an *adjective* in the nominative case; such a nominative is called a *predicate nominative*. If the predicate nominative is an *adjective*, it takes the *gender* and *number* of the *subject* to which it belongs. The case with **esse** will be explained later.

### 97. Examples of the predicate nominative:

- |                         |                                 |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Mūrus altus est,     | <i>The wall is high</i>         |
| 2. Porta lāta est,      | <i>The gate is wide</i>         |
| 3. Oppidum māgnum erat, | <i>The town was large</i>       |
| 4. Cōpiae ferae erant,  | <i>The forces were fierce</i>   |
| 5. Belgae ferī erant,   | <i>The Belgians were fierce</i> |
| 6. Castra māgna erunt,  | <i>The camp will be large</i>   |

In the above sentences the *predicate adjective* is in the *nominative*, having the *number* and *gender* of the subject to which it belongs. In (2) *lāta* is *nominative singular feminine*, to agree with *porta*. In (6) *castra* is *plural*, hence *erunt* is *plural* and *māgna* is *nominative plural neuter*, agreeing with *castra*.

### 98. The pronoun in the genitive (possessive) case.

#### EXAMPLES.

- |   |   |                   |
|---|---|-------------------|
| 1. Germānī quōrum castra                                | <i>The Germans whose camp Galba<br/>Galba occupābit,</i>        | <i>will seize</i> |
| 2. Cōpiae quārum tēla nova                              | <i>The forces whose weapons are<br/>sunt,</i>                   | <i>new</i>        |
| 3. Oppidum cūius mūrī altī                              | <i>The town whose walls are tall<br/>sunt,</i>                  | <i></i>           |
| 4. Lēgātus Rōmānus cūius cō-<br>piae Gallōs superābant, | <i>The Roman ambassador whose<br/>forces overcame the Gauls</i> | <i></i>           |

### 99.

#### EXERCISES.

- I.—1. Silvae in Galliā multae sunt (*there are many*, etc.).  
 2. Mūrus oppidī altus est. 3. Sumus amīcī populī Rōmānī.  
 4. Nostrī tēlīs et armīs vīcum cūius mūrī nōn māgnī sunt  
*expūgnābunt*. 5. Caesar lēgātō cūius cōpiae ad Belgās  
*auxilium* nōn portābant pīla multa dabat. 6. Nostrī frū-  
*mentō* Belgās quōrum oppida in prōvinciā sunt iuvābant  
*(were aiding)*.

- II.—1. The walls are high. 2. Galba's camp is new.  
 3. The Roman forces are fresh. 4. Caesar will give help to  
 the Remi whose fields are in farthest Gaul. 5. Our friends  
 will carry corn into the town whose walls the fierce Belgians

are preparing to storm. 6. The forces whose ambassadors Galba summons out of winter-quarters will renew the battle, so that they may rout the Germans.

## LESSON XX.

### PORTŌ, CONTINUED. PERFECT STEM.

**100.** Perfect indicative of *portō*, *I carried, have carried, did carry.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. portāvī	1. portāvimus
2. portāvistī	2. portāvistis
3. portāvit	3. portāvērunt ( <i>ēre</i> )

### Personal endings.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-ī	-imus
-istī	-istis
-it	-ērunt ( <i>ēre</i> )

**101.** Portāv, the stem of this tense, called the *perfect stem*, is found by dropping final ī from the first person singular of the *perfect indicative*.

Conjugate, with meanings, vītō, parō, and occupō in the *perfect indicative*.

**102.** Meanings of the perfect and imperfect indicative.—The *perfect tense* has *two uses*, denoting (1) an action completed just now (*Definite perfect*), or (2) one completed at some point of *past time* (*Indefinite or Historical perfect*): as, (*definite perfect*) pater pervēnit, *father has (already) arrived*; (*indefinite perfect*) Caesar omnem Galliam vicit, *Caesar conquered all Gaul*.

The *imperfect tense* represents an action as *continued* in

the *past*. The action may be (1) *continuous* in the past; as, **oppidānī oppidum aedificābant**, *the townsmen were building a town*;—(2) *customary* or *usual* action; as, **Germānī Rhēnum trānsibant**, *the Germans used to cross (kept crossing) the Rhine*;—(3) *attempted* action (*Conative imperfect*); as, **hostēs pontem incendēbant**, *the enemy tried to burn the bridge*.

## 103.

## VOCABULARY.

Verbs 21--30 (448).

**104. Use of *quod*,<sup>1</sup> because.**—**Quod** introduces a subordinate clause to shew ‘reason why,’ and such a clause is called a *causal clause*.

Causal clauses do not usually stand last.

- |                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1. <b>Quod nostrī ad pūgnandum</b>    | <i>Galba gives the signal, because</i>      |
| (gerund) <b>parātī sunt</b> , Galba   | <i>our men are ready for fighting</i>       |
| <b>sīgnūm dat,</b>                    |   |
| 2. <b>Quod Belgae coniūrāvērunt</b> , | <i>Because the Belgians conspired,</i>      |
| <b>Galba oppida oppūgnāre</b>         | <i>Galba prepared to attack their towns</i> |
| <b>parāvit,</b>                       |   |

In (1) above **quod** introduces **sunt parātī**, giving the *cause of* and modifying the *principal verb*, **dat**. So in (2) **quod . . . coniūrāvērunt** limits **parāvit**, stating the *reason* for the action.

## 105.

## EXERCISES.

- I.—1. **Servī fugae causā lēgātīs equōs parāvērunt.**  
 2. **Quod Germānī quōs fugāvit ex Galliā mātūrābant**, Caesar in hībernīs cōpiās conlocāvit. 3. Caesar lēgātōs incūsābat, quod contrā Belgās proeliō nōn sustentāvērunt (*did not hold out*) sed in castra properāvērunt. 4. **Belgārum cōpiae quās nostrī initiō proelī superāvērunt**

<sup>1</sup> **Quod, quia, quoniam**, discussed in (276).

equōs parābant (*were making ready*), ut trāns Rhēnum properārent. 5. Galba, lēgātus Rōmānōrum, quod Germānī multōs populī Rōmānī agrōs vāstābant, proelium redintegrāre parāvit.

II.—1. The Romans in Galba's camp routed the remaining Belgians with the forces<sup>1</sup> which the Remi gave (*dedērunt*) to the Roman people. 2. The ambassador to whom Caesar gave fresh forces will easily storm the redoubt of the Belgians. 3. The townsmen to whom Caesar gives corn and weapons are friends of the Roman people. 4. The Germans will hasten out of the village, in which they are wintering, to lay waste the fields of the Belgians.

## LESSON XXI.

### PORTŌ AND SUM, CONTINUED.

#### 106. Pluperfect indicative of *portō*. Future perfect indicative.

<i>had carried.</i>	<i>shall have carried.</i>
SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
1. portāveram	portāverō
2. portāverās	portāveris
3. portāverat	portāverit
PLURAL.	PLURAL.
1. portāverāmus	portāverimus
2. portāverātis	portāveritis
3. portāverant	portāverint

107. These two tenses *complete* the indicative mood of *portō* in the active voice. See indicative mood, active, (*six tenses*,) of *amō* (474). Conjugate the entire indicative mood of *sustentō*, *convocō*, and *dō*. Distinguish the indicative tenses with respect to *stems*.

<sup>1</sup> Ablative of means (43 b) 'ablative without **cum**.'

**108. Present subjunctive of *sum*. Imperfect subjunctive.**
*may be.*
*might be.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. sim	sīmus	essem	essēmus
2. sīs	sītis	essēs	essētis
3. sit	sint	esset	essent

**109.**
**VOCABULARY.**

Verbs 31–40 (448).

**110. Subordinate clauses.**—Three kinds of *subordinate clauses* have thus far been used, viz.: the *ut clause*, the *relative*, and the *quod clause*. What can be said of the *ut clause*? of the agreement and position of the *relative*? of the meaning of the *quod clause*?

**111.**
**EXERCISES.**

I.—1. Germānī prō oppidī mūrīs vallum altum conlo-  
candō praesidia parāverant. 2. Quod pericula proelī māgna  
sunt, Caesar in silvīs altīs pūgnam nōn redintegrābit. 3. Lē-  
gātus Belgārum nostrīs equōs et arma dedit, ut ad Rēmōs,  
amicōs, subsidium portārent. 4. Germānī propter mā-  
gnūm nostrōrum numerūm vīcum novūm in quem līberōs et  
impedimenta portāre parābant aedificāvērunt. 5. Lēgātus  
Rōmānōrum oppidānōs, quod amicīs populī Rōmānī sub-  
sidium nōn dederant, incūsābat.

II.—1. Because the Germans gave aid to the Belgians who were not friends of the Roman people, Caesar hastened<sup>2</sup> to attack with many forces the redoubt which they had placed in front of their camp. 2. With the help<sup>3</sup> of the slaves whom Galba had summoned into Gaul, our forces<sup>1</sup> built<sup>2</sup> a large camp in which they placed weapons for fighting.

<sup>1</sup> Place *first* in sentence.      <sup>2</sup>properāvit. See vocabulary, **properē**.

<sup>3</sup> Ablative of means (43 b) ‘ablative without *cum*.’

## LESSON XXII.

## THIRD DECLENSION. SUM, CONTINUED.

## 112. Miles, soldier, mas.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. mīles	mīlītēs
Gen. mīlitis	mīlitum
Dat. mīlitī	mīlitibus
Acc. mīlitem	mīlītēs
Voc. mīles	mīlītēs
Abl. mīlite	mīlitibus

## Case-endings.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
—	-ēs
-is	-um
-ī	-ibus
-em	-ēs
—	-ēs
-e	-ibus

113. The stem<sup>1</sup> of miles may be found by dropping is from the *genitive singular*: militis, stem milit.

The *nominative* and *vocative singular* are alike, differing somewhat from the *stem*; the remaining cases of the *singular* and *all* the cases of the *plural* are formed by annexing the *case-endings* to the *stem*. The *nominative*, *accusative*, and *vocative plural* end in ēs, the *dative* and *abative plural* in ibus.

## 114.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 41–46 (448).

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
pedes	peditis, mas.	footman, plural <i>infantry</i>
eques	equitis, mas.	horseman, plural <i>cavalry</i>
obses	obsidis, mas.	hostage
bellum	-ī, neut.	war
Sēquani	-ōrum, mas.	the Sequani
inimīcus	-a -um, adj.	unfriendly
bonus	-a -um, adj.	good
armō	(give principal parts)	to arm
dēcertō	" " "	to contend
exercitō	" " "	to train

Decline pedes, eques, and obses.

<sup>1</sup> For the classification of stems see Third Declension (455).

**115.** Notice carefully the *agreement* of *adjective* and *noun* in the following:

1. **servī bonī**, *of a good slave*
2. **mīlitis bonī**, *of a good soldier*

Notice that the adjective does not necessarily agree with the noun in *ending*, but only in *gender, number, and case*.

### **116. Imperative of sum.**

#### SINGULAR.

- |                              |                                |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. [wanting]                 | 1. [wanting]                   |
| 2. { es, <i>be thou</i>      | 2. { este, <i>be ye</i>        |
| { estō, <i>thou shalt be</i> | { estōte, <i>ye shall be</i>   |
| 3. estō, <i>he shall be</i>  | 3. suntō, <i>they shall be</i> |

#### PLURAL.

### Present infinitive.

**esse, to be.**

This completes the *present system* of tenses of the verb **sum**.

### **117. Synopsis of sum (present stem es):**

1. <i>Present indicative</i>	<b>sum</b>
2. <i>Imperfect indicative</i>	<b>eram</b>
3. <i>Future indicative</i>	<b>erō</b>
4. <i>Present subjunctive</i>	<b>sim</b>
5. <i>Imperfect subjunctive</i>	<b>essem</b>
6. <i>Imperative</i>	<b>es</b>
7. <i>Present participle</i>	[lacking]
8. <i>Present infinitive</i>	<b>esse</b>
9. <i>Gerund</i>	[lacking]

### **118.**

### EXERCISES.

- I.—1. Galbae mīlitēs ad pūgnandum parātī sunt.
2. Lēgātus noster mīlitibus Rōmānīs galeās quās Germānī in castrīs praeṣidī causā cēlāverant dedit. 3. Mūrī quōs Gallī praeṣidī causā prō oppidīs aedificāvērunt altī et lātī erant. 4. Lēgātī nostrī Gallōs incūsāvērunt et oppida

quae sine praesidiō erant oppūgnāvērunt, quod populō Rōmānō līberōs obsidēs<sup>1</sup> nōn dederant.

II.—1. Caesar will have given a new shield to the good soldier. 2. Galba was summoning the fresh infantry out of camp. 3. Caesar was blaming the ambassador to whom he had given the signal, because he hesitated to renew the battle with<sup>2</sup> the cavalry of the Sequani. 4. The Germans gave their children to Galba as hostages, so that they might establish friendship with<sup>2</sup> the Roman people.

## LESSON XXIII.

### FIRST CONJUGATION AND THIRD DECLENSION, CONTINUED.

**119. Perfect subjunctive of *porto*.** Pluperfect subjunctive.  
*may have carried.*                                   *might have carried.*

SINGULAR.

1. portāverim

SINGULAR.

portāvissem

2. portāveris

portāvissēs

3. portāverit

portāvisset

PLURAL.

1. portāverimus

PLURAL.

portāvissēmus

2. portāveritis

portāvissētis

3. portāverint

portāvissent

### Perfect infinitive.

*portāuisse, to have carried*

This completes the *perfect system of tenses* formed upon the perfect stem **portāv.**

<sup>1</sup> Appositive, *as hostages* (53).

<sup>2</sup> Use prep. **cum.** Why? (43 a.)

## 120. Synopsis of the perfect system of *portō* (*six tenses*):

1. *Perfect indicative*      *portāvī*
2. *Pluperfect indicative*    *portāveram*
3. *Future perfect indicative*    *portāverō*
4. *Perfect subjunctive*      *portāverim*
5. *Pluperfect subjunctive*    *portāvissem*
6. *Perfect infinitive*        *portāvisse*

## 121.

### VOCABULARY.

#### Verbs 47–52 (448).

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
<b>imperātum</b>	-ī, neut.	<i>order or command</i>
<b>levitās</b>	<b>levitātis</b> , fem.	<i>fickleness</i>
<b>facultās</b>	-tātis, “	<i>opportunity</i>
<b>aestās</b>	-tātis, “	<i>summer</i>
<b>potestās</b>	-tātis, “	<i>power</i>
<b>auctōritās</b>	-tātis, “	<i>influence</i>
<b>flūmen</b>	<b>flūminis</b> , neut.	<i>river</i>
<b>homō</b>	<b>hominis</b> , mas.	<i>man</i>
<b>rūmor</b>	<b>rūmōris</b> , mas.	<i>report</i>
<b>celeritas</b>	-tātis, fem.	<i>swiftness, speed</i>

## 122. Declension of nouns.

### Cīvitās, state, fem. Agmen, line (of march), neut.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> cīvitās	cīvitātēs	agmen	agmina
<i>Gen.</i> cīvitātis	cīvitātum	agminis	agminum
<i>Dat.</i> cīvitātī	cīvitātibus	agminī	agminibūs
<i>Acc.</i> cīvitātem	cīvitātēs	agmen	agmina
<i>Voc.</i> cīvitās	cīvitātēs	agmen	agmina
<i>Abl.</i> cīvitātē	cīvitātibus	agmine	agminibūs

Nouns in **ās**, *gen.* **ātis**, are *feminine*. Nouns in **men**, *gen.* **minis**, are *neuter*.

### Lapis, stone, mas.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> lapis	lapidēs	<i>Acc.</i> lapidem	lapidēs
<i>Gen.</i> lapidis	lapidum	<i>Voc.</i> lapis	lapidēs
<i>Dat.</i> lapidī	lapidibus	<i>Abl.</i> lapide	lapidibūs

Nouns in **is**, *gen.* **idis**, and **es**, *gen.* **itis** or **idis**, are *masculine*.

Combined declension of **mīles ferus** (**mīles**, third-declension noun; **ferus**, an adjective with the second-declension endings):

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> mīles ferus	mīlitēs ferī
<i>Gen.</i> mīlitis ferī	mīlitum ferōrum
<i>Dat.</i> mīlitī ferō	mīlitibus ferīs
<i>Acc.</i> mīlitem ferum	mīlitēs ferōs
<i>Voc.</i> mīles fere	mīlitēs ferī
<i>Abl.</i> mīlite ferō	mīlitibus ferīs

## 123.

## EXERCISE.

1. Lēgātus cui Caesar proelium redintegrāndī sīgnūm dat Germānōrum peditēs facile fugābit. 2. Noster lēgātus in Galliam cum peditib⁹s integrīs quōs in hībernīs in prōvinciā Rōmānā conlocāverat properāvit et obsidēs multōs postulāvit. 3. Belgae lēgātō nostrō liberōs obsidēs dabant, ut in potestāte populū Rōmānī essent. 4. Caesar multīs cum cīvitatib⁹s quae in armīs nōn erant et contrā populum Rōmānum nōn coniūrāverant amīcitiam cōnfīrmāvit. 5. Quod Germānī obsidēs quōs postulāverat nōn dedērunt,<sup>1</sup> Caesar oppida trāns flūmen Rhēnum oppūgnāvit.

## LESSON XXIV.

## THIRD DECLENSION. SUM, CONTINUED.

124. *Pater, father, mas.**Rūmor, report, mas.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> pater	patrēs	rūmor	rūmōrēs
<i>Gen.</i> patris	patrum	rūmōris	rūmōrum
<i>Dat.</i> patrī	patrib⁹s	rūmōrī	rūmōrib⁹s
<i>Acc.</i> patrem	patrēs	rūmōrem	rūmōrēs
<i>Voc.</i> pater	patrēs	rūmor	rūmōrēs
<i>Abl.</i> patre	patrib⁹s	rūmōrē	rūmōrib⁹s

Nouns in **er** and **or** are *masculine*.

<sup>1</sup> Would not give.

**Latus**, *side or flank*, neut.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	latus	latera
<i>Gen.</i>	lateris	laterum
<i>Dat.</i>	lateri	lateribus
<i>Acc.</i>	latus	latera
<i>Voc.</i>	latus	latera
<i>Abl.</i>	latere	lateribus

Nouns in us, gen. eris or oris, are *neuter*.

**Legiō**, *legion*, fem.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	legiō	legiōnēs
<i>Gen.</i>	legiōnīs	legiōnum
<i>Dat.</i>	legiōnī	legiōnibus
<i>Acc.</i>	legiōnēm	legiōnēs
<i>Voc.</i>	legiō	legiōnēs
<i>Abl.</i>	legiōne	legiōnibus

Nouns in ō are *masculine*, save those in dō, gō, and iō, which are *feminine*.

## 125.

### VOCABULARY.

Verbs 53–66 (448).

**126. Dative with adjectives.** — Adjectives of *likeness*, *fitness*, *nearness*, and the like with their opposites take the *dative*; as,

*Belgae sunt proximī Germānīs*, *The Belgians are next to the Germans*

**127. Sum in the perfect tenses.** — Principal parts: sum, esse, fuī, no supine. Upon the *perfect stem* fu are formed six tenses. For synopsis of the present system, see (117).

Synopsis of the *perfect system* of sum (stem fu), see (484):

<i>Perfect indicative</i>	fuī, <i>I have been—was</i>
<i>Pluperfect indicative</i>	fueram
<i>Future perfect indicative</i>	fuerō
<i>Perfect subjunctive</i>	fuerim
<i>Pluperfect subjunctive</i>	fuissem
<i>Perfect infinitive</i>	fuisse

**128. Use of *cum* + subjunctive.**—**Cum**,<sup>1</sup> *when*, is followed by a verb in the *imperfect* or *pluperfect subjunctive*. **Cum** + *imperfect subjunctive* means ‘*when*’ in the sense of *while*, denoting action *unfinished*; **cum** + *pluperfect subjunctive* means ‘*when*’ in the sense of *after*, denoting action *finished*. If the verb depending on **cum** is in the *imperfect subjunctive*, then **cum** = *while (when)*, not *with*, and the verb is translated *as if it were imperfect indicative*; as, **cum Caesar in Galliā esset**, *while Caesar was in Gaul*.

## 129.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Cum Caesar equitēs integrōs exspectāret, peditēs oppidum cūius mūrī nōn altī fuērunt expūgnāvērunt.  
 2. Lēgātī tubīs mīlitibus integrīs sīgnū dedērunt et ē castrīs celeritāte māgnā mātūrāvērunt, ut Germānōrum hīberna quae in Galliā erant occupārent. 3. Cum reliquae cīvitātēs quae Galbae amīcae<sup>2</sup> erant ad castra Rōmāna auxiliū portārent, Caesar trāns Rhēnum cum peditibus et equitibus mātūrāvit et Germānōrum castella, quod populō Rōmānō obsidēs novōs nōn dederant, oppūgnāvit.  
 4. Caesar auctōritātem amplificandī causā cum cīvitātibus multīs in Galliā amīcitiam cōnfīrmāvit.

II.—1. The state in which Caesar placed his camp will give much corn to the Roman infantry. 2. While our soldiers were preparing to attack the walls of the town, the townsmen hastened out of the town, so that they might avoid (to avoid) the dangers of battle. 3. While the Sequani were awaiting the forces of the neighbouring Belgians, the Roman legions hastened with great swiftness through the province and seized the camp which the Sequani had prepared for the sake of defence.

---

<sup>1</sup> For treatment of *historical cum* see (203).

<sup>2</sup> Adjective, *friendly*.

## LESSON XXV.

THIRD DECLENSION AND FIRST CONJUGATION,  
CONTINUED.130. *Collis, hill, mas.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> collis	collēs
<i>Gen.</i> collis	collium
<i>Dat.</i> collī	collibus
<i>Acc.</i> collem	collēs -īs
<i>Voc.</i> collis	collēs
<i>Abl.</i> colle	collibus

*Rēx, king, mas.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rēx	rēgēs
rēgis	rēgum
rēgī	rēgibus
rēgem	rēgēs
rēx	rēgēs
rēge	rēgibus

*Flūmen lātūm, a wide river, neut.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> flūmen lātūm	flūmina lāta
<i>Gen.</i> flūminis lātī	flūminum lātōrum
<i>Dat.</i> flūminī lātō	flūminib⁹s lātīs
<i>Acc.</i> flūmen lātūm	flūmina lāta
<i>Voc.</i> flūmen lātūm	flūmina lāta
<i>Abl.</i> flūmine lātō	flūminib⁹s lātīs

131. Nouns ending in *es* and *is* *not increasing* the number of syllables in the *genitive* are called “*vowel-stems in i*” (*collis, collis*, stem *colli*; *nubes, nubis*, stem *nubi*). They have *ium* in the *genitive plural* and *ēs* or *is* in the *accusative plural*. Some have the *ablative* in *i* (457). They are mostly *masculine*, sometimes *feminine*. The stem of nouns in *es* or *is* *increasing* the number of syllables in the *genitive* is found by dropping *is* from the *genitive*: *lapis, lapidis*, stem *lapid*; *miles, militis*, stem *milit*.

<sup>1</sup> For summary of the genitive plural in *um* and *iu* see (460).

## 132.

## VOCABULARY.

Verbs 67-80 (448).

**133. Supine system of *portō*.**—The *supine stem*, upon which *four* forms are based, is found by dropping **um** from the first supine: *portātum*, supine stem *portāt*.

The following, formed upon the stem *portāt*, *complete the active voice of portō*:

1. *First supine*      *portātum*, joined to verbs,      *to carry*
2. *Second supine*      *portātū*,      “      “      *adjectives, to carry*
3. *Future participle*      *portātūrus*, -a, -um, *being about to carry*
4. *Future infinitive*      *portātūrum*, -am, -um *esse, to be about to carry*

Write a *complete synopsis* of *superō* in the active voice in order of *stems*, giving *name of tense and meaning*, with *nine* forms upon *superā* (75), *six* upon *superāv* (120), and *four* upon *superāt*.

**134. Dative with *imperō* and *mandō*.**—*Imperō*, *I command*, and *mandō*, *I direct*, take their *object*, the person commanded, in the *dative*; thus:

*Caesar legiōnibus imperat*,      *Caesar commands the legions*  
*Galba lēgātīs mandāvit*,      *Galba directed the ambassadors*

**135. Rule of sequence of tenses.**—When the verb in the *principal clause* denotes *present* or *future time*, the verb in the *dependent clause* is *present* or *perfect subjunctive*.

When the verb in the *principal clause* denotes *past time*, the verb in the *dependent clause* is *imperfect* or *pluperfect subjunctive*.

**136. Table of sequence.**

Present	}	are fol-	}	present subjunctive to show <i>con-</i>
Future				<i>temporaneous</i> or <i>subsequent</i>
Future-perfect				<i>action (unfinished);</i>
				perfect subjunctive to show <i>an-</i>
				<i>tecedent action (finished).</i>

Imperfect      }  
 Perfect        }  
 Pluperfect     } are follow.  
ed by      { imperfect subjunctive to show  
                   *contemporaneous or subsequent action (unfinished);*  
                   pluperfect subjunctive to show  
                   *antecedent action (finished).*

### 137. Application of the rule of sequence in the *ut* clause.

Caesar obsidēs postulat ut Caesar demands hostages so  
 auctōritātem amplificet, that he may increase his power

Caesar obsidēs postulābit ut Caesar will demand hostages so  
 auctōritātem amplificet, that he may increase his power

Caesar obsidēs postulāverit ut Caesar will have demanded  
 auctōritātem amplificet, hostages so that he may increase his power

Caesar obsidēs postulābat ut Caesar kept demanding hostages  
 auctōritātem amplificāret, so that he might increase his power

Caesar obsidēs postulāvit ut Caesar demanded hostages so  
 auctōritātem amplificāret, that he might increase his power

Caesar obsidēs postulāverat ut Caesar had demanded hostages  
 auctōritātem amplificāret, so that he might increase his power

## LESSON XXVI.

### THIRD DECLENSION, CONTINUED.

#### 138. Multitūdō, *multitude*, fem.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	multitūdō	multitūdinēs
Gen.	multitūdinis	multitūdinum
Dat.	multitūdinī	multitūdinibus
Acc.	multitūdinem	multitūdimēs
Voc.	multitūdō	multitūdinēs
Abl.	multitūdine	multitūdinibus

**Vīs**, force, vigor, fem.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	vīs	vīrēs	iter	itinera
<i>Gen.</i>	vīs	vīriūm	itineris	itinerum
<i>Dat.</i>	—	vīribus	itinerī	itineribus
<i>Acc.</i>	vim	vīrēs	iter	itinera
<i>Voc.</i>	—	vīrēs	iter	itinera
<i>Abl.</i>	vī	vīribus	itinere	itineribus

For 'general rules of gender' in the *third declension* see (458).

**139.** Review declension of all the *nouns* in the third declension (458, 459). Give synopsis in the entire active voice of *imperō* in order of 'tense-name,' 'stem,' and 'meaning.' Give synopsis, active voice, of *amō*, by *moods, etc.* (474). What can be said of the *relative clause* and of subordinate clauses introduced by *ut*, *quod*, and *cum*? Give the *rule of sequence of tenses*.

**140.**

## VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
hostis	hostis, mas.	enemy (usually plural in Caesar)
īgnis	īgnis, mas.	fire
fīnis	fīnis, mas.	end (in the plural, territory)
turris	turris, fem.	tower
calamitās	-tātis, fem.	calamity
pāx	pācis, fem.	peace
pars	partis, fem.	part
subitō, <i>adv.</i>		suddenly
fortiter, <i>adv.</i>		bravely
ōrātiō	-ōnis, fem.	speech
profectiō	-ōnis, fem.	departure
dēditiō	-ōnis, fem.	surrender
mūnitiō	-ōnis, fem.	fortification

īgnis has the ablative īgne or īgni.

**141.**

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Cum Caesar in Galliā esset, lēgātī multārum cīvitātum ad castra quae in hostium fīnibus parābat mātū-

rāvērunt. 2. Equitēs Rōmānī auxiliō Rēmōrum castellum in quō arma multa erant expūgnāvērunt et agmina hostium facile prōfligāvērunt. 3. Quod hostēs proeliō cum Caesaris legiōnibus nōn dēcertābant sed in oppidō cōpiās cēlābant, mīlitēs nostrī altās turrēs quibus oppidī mūrōs facile ex-pūgnāvērunt aedificāvērunt. 4. Germānī in quōrum fīni-bus nostrī praesidia parant ad Caesaris castra līberōs obsidēs, ut pācem impetrent, portābunt. 5. Galba in fīnēs hostium cum peditibus et māgnā equitum parte mātūrāvit, ut mā-gnum obsidum numerum postulāret.

II.—1. Caesar blamed the soldiers of the first and second legion, because they did not renew the battle with the enemy's infantry. 2. While Caesar was preparing on the hill a place for his camp, the enemy's forces suddenly hastened out of the woods towards our men. 3. The Remi whose soldiers routed the Sequani will hasten into the territory of the Belgians to prepare<sup>1</sup> new fortifications. 4. While Galba was contending in the boundaries<sup>2</sup> of the Belgians, Caesar's legions easily routed the infantry of the Sequani and gave to the rest of<sup>3</sup> the enemy an opportunity of establishing peace with the Roman people.

## LESSON XXVII.

### USE OF IMPERŌ AND MANDŌ.

**142.** Review **sum**—*present system* (117), *perfect system* (127). Also conjugate with meanings all of **sum** in the order given in (484); observe carefully the *future participle* and *future infinitive*. What forms of **sum** are lacking?

**143.** Decline the nouns of the *first* and *second declensions*

<sup>1</sup> How is *purpose* expressed in Latin? (54.)

<sup>2</sup> 'boundaries' = *territory*.

<sup>3</sup> 'rest of': *dative of reliquus*.

(453, 454), and also *altus* and *crēber* (466). What is the case of the *predicate noun* or *adjective* after finite forms of *sum*? After *esse* the predicate noun is *acc.* Give example, both English and Latin, illustrating the *agreement* of the *relative with its antecedent*, and explain.

## 144.

## VOCABULARY.

Verbs 81–92 (448).

**145. Use of *imperō* and *mandō*.**—*Imperō* and *mandō* take the person commanded in the *dative* and an *ut* clause to denote what is commanded to be done. This *ut* clause is translated by the *present infinitive*.

- |                                |   |
|--------------------------------|---|
| 1. Caesar servō ut mātūret im- | <i>Caesar commands the slave to hasten</i>                    |
| perat,                         |   |
| 2. Galba lēgātīs ut frūmen-    | <i>Galba will direct the ambassadors to obtain corn</i>       |
| tum impetrēt mandābit,         |   |
| 3. Lēgātūs nostrīs ut mūnī-    | <i>The ambassador commanded our men to storm the fortifi-</i> |
| tiōnēs expūgnārent impe-       | <i>cations</i>  |
| rāvit                          |   |

Notice very carefully the *sequence of tenses in the ut clauses* when the *English infinitive verb* is turned into the *subjunctive in Latin*. In (1) and (2) the *present subjunctive* is used because the *time of the leading verb* is in (1) *present* and in (2) *future*; see ‘*table of sequence*’ (first part) (136). In (3) the *imperfect subjunctive* is used because the *principal verb* denotes *past time* (‘*table of sequence*,’ second part).

## 146.

## EXERCISES.

- I.—1. Caesar Germānīs quī in fīnibus nostrīs hiemant imperābit ut in prōvinciam Rōmānam liberōs obsidēs portent. 2. Caesar lēgātō equitum mandat ut in hostium fīnēs mātūret et cōpiās prōfliget. 3. Galba lēgātō cūiūs mīlītēs mūnītiōnēs novās aedificābant mandāvit ut in hībernīs peditēs et equitēs conlocāret (*sequence*). 4. Cum Rēmī, amīcī nostri (*adj.*), contrā Germānōrum et Belgārum

cōpiās fortiter sustentārent, Caesar Galbae imperāvit ut in Galliam cum mīlitibus p̄imae et secundae legiōnis mātūrāret et ad Rēmōs subsidium portāret.

II.—1. Because the fortifications in the enemy's territory were large, Galba directed (*past time*) his soldiers to build a high tower. 2. The Remi direct their ambassadors to obtain peace for their state which had given aid to the Roman legions in many battles. 3. While Caesar was preparing to attack a large town, messengers hastened into our camp to announce<sup>1</sup> the departure of the enemy out of the town. 4. The soldiers whom Caesar commanded to attack the new fortifications will seize the enemy's baggage.

## LESSON XXVIII.

### SECOND-CONJUGATION VERB.

**147.** Present indicative of *dēleō*, *I destroy*. Meanings of persons as in *portō*.

*I destroy.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-----------	---------

1. dēleō	dēlēmus
2. dēlēs	dēlētis
3. dēlet	dēlēnt

The present infinitive of second-conjugation verbs ends in ēre. Hence the present stem ends in ē. Stem of *dēleō*, *dēlē* (57).

**148.**

### VOCABULARY.

videō,	<i>I see</i>
habeō,	<i>I have</i>
teneō,	<i>I hold</i>
moveō,	<i>I move</i>
contineō,	<i>I keep</i>
prohibeō,	<i>I prevent or cut off</i>

<sup>1</sup> Infinitive to express purpose. Do not render by the Latin infinitive.

**149.** Notice carefully the endings of the *present subjunctive* in the *first* conjugation and those of the *present indicative* in the *second* conjugation. Note the loss of a syllable in the second person singular of *dēleō*: not *dē-le-ēs*, but *dē-lēs*.

**First conjugation—present subjunctive.**      **Second conjugation—present indicative.**

*Table of endings.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-em	-ēmus
-ēs	-ētis
-et	-ent

*Table of endings.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-eō	-ēmus
-ēs	-ētis
-et	-ent

**150.** Thus if a verb ends in *et* or *ent*, for instance, it is *present subjunctive* when the verb is of the *first* conjugation; *present indicative* when the verb is of the *second* conjugation.

Conjugate the *present subjunctive* of *postulō* and *imperō*; *present indicative* of *habeō*, *moveō*, and *teneō*.

**151.**

**EXERCISES.**

I.—1. Lēgātus Rōmānus, quod hostium profectiōnem videt, cum legiōne p̄imā ad collem in quō<sup>1</sup> Galbae castra sunt mātūrat. 2. Nostri Germānōrum profectiōnem prohibent, ut Caesarī obsidēs novōs impetrent. 3. Peditēs Caesaris gladiīs et pīlīs mūnītiōnēs quās Sēquani praesidī causā aedificāvērunt facile dēlent. 4. Quod Belgae ferī<sup>2</sup> in Galliā fīnēs lātōs<sup>2</sup> habent, Caesar castra movet et in Galliam mātūrat, ut agrōs vāstet. 5. Cum hostēs trāns flūmen impedīmenta portārent, Galba in colle proximō flūminī cōpiās conlocāvit et Caesaris imperāta exspectāvit.

II.—1. The soldiers of the second legion easily routed

<sup>1</sup> on which.

<sup>2</sup> Explain agreement of *ferī* and *lātōs*.

the enemy's infantry and obtained the baggage which the enemy had concealed in their fortifications. 2. Because Caesar sees the enemy's forces on the hill in front of the town whose walls he is preparing to attack, he keeps his infantry and cavalry in camp. 3. Galba commands the cavalry and infantry to hasten across the river and await the departure of the enemy.

## LESSON XXIX.

### SECOND CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

#### 152. Imperfect indicative of *dēleō*. Future indicative. Present subjunctive.

*was destroying.*      *shall destroy.*      *may destroy.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <b>dēlēbam</b>	<b>dēlēbāmus</b>	<b>dēlēbō</b>	<b>dēlēbimus</b>	<b>dēleam</b>	<b>dēleāmus</b>
2. <b>dēlēbās</b>	<b>dēlēbātis</b>	<b>dēlēbis</b>	<b>dēlēbitis</b>	<b>dēleās</b>	<b>dēleātis</b>
3. <b>dēlēbat</b>	<b>dēlēbant</b>	<b>dēlēbit</b>	<b>dēlēbunt</b>	<b>dēleat</b>	<b>dēleant</b>

153. The stem in the above tenses is *dēlē* (147). The endings of the *imperfect* and *future* indicative are the same as in *portō*. Compare the endings of the *present subjunctive* of *dēleō* with the *present indicative* endings of *portō* (11). Therefore when the verb ends in *at* or *ant*, it is *present indicative* if it belongs to the *first conjugation*; *present subjunctive* if it belongs to the *second conjugation*.

## 154.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>habeō</b>	<b>habēre</b>	<i>to have</i>
<b>prohibeō</b>	<b>prohibēre</b>	<i>to prevent</i>
<b>valeō</b>	<b>valēre</b>	<i>to be strong</i>
<b>distineō</b>	<b>distinēre</b>	<i>to divide</i>
<b>sustineō</b>	<b>sustinēre</b>	<i>to withstand</i>
<b>iubeō</b>	<b>iubēre</b>	<i>to order</i>

155. Use of *iubeō*, *I order*.—*Iubeō* is followed by the *accusative (subject) + infinitive*; as,

**Caesar mīlitēs hostium profec-**    *Caesar will order his soldiers to*  
**tiōnem prohibēre iubēbit**,            *prevent the enemies' departure*

In this sentence **militēs** is in the *accusative case, subject* of the infinitive **prohibēre**, which, being a transitive verb, takes its *direct object, profectiōnem*, in the *accusative also*.

## 156.

## EXERCISES.

In the following sentences distinguish carefully the verb-forms in **et**, **at**; **ent**, **ant**.

I.—1. Quod cīvitās auctōritātē et numerō mīlitum valēbat, Caesar lēgātīs ut obsidēs multōs postulārent imperāvit. 2. Lēgātī nostrī peditēs distinēbunt, ut in Galliā populī Rōmānī imperium amplifacent et hostium cōpiās superent. 3. Galba mīlitēs integrōs trāns flūmen ad collem in quō hostēs mūnītiōnēs novās aedificant proprāre iubēbit. 4. Lēgātus peditum numerum amplificat et fīnitimōs in castra frūmentum portāre iubet, ut in Galliā hiemet et hostium profectiōnem prohibeat. 5. Gallī turrēs novās quās nostrī ad oppidum oppūgnandum aedificāvērunt ignī dēlēbunt.

II.—1. Our infantry will obtain corn and arms from many states which are preparing to give hostages to Caesar,

so that they may have peace. 2. While the states next to the Roman province were preparing a plan of surrender, Caesar was keeping his new legions in camp. 3. Galba commands<sup>1</sup> his soldiers to place the baggage in camp and with javelins and swords to withstand the infantry of the enemy. 4. Write sentence (3) again, substituting ‘orders’ for ‘commands’: Galba *orders*<sup>2</sup> his soldiers, etc.

## LESSON XXX.

### SECOND CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

#### 157. Imperfect subjunctive of *dēleō*, might destroy.

##### SINGULAR.

- 1. dēlērem
- 2. dēlērēs
- 3. dēlēret

##### PLURAL.

- dēlērēmus
- dēlērētis
- dēlērent

#### Imperative.

##### SINGULAR.

- 1. [wanting] dēlē, *destroy thou*
- 2. { dēlētō, *thou shalt destroy*
- 3. dēlētō, *he shall destroy*

##### PLURAL.

- [wanting] { dēlēte, *destroy ye*
- { dēlētōte, *ye shall destroy*
- dēlēntō, *they shall destroy*

#### Present participle.

dēlēns, *destroying*

#### Gerund.

Gen. dēlēndī

#### Present infinitive.

dēlēre, *to destroy*

Dat. dēlēndō

Acc. dēlēndūm

Abl. dēlēndō

158. This completes the *present system* of forms belonging to the *present stem*, *dēlē*, as is seen in the following synopsis:

- |                                |         |
|--------------------------------|---------|
| 1. <i>Present indicative</i>   | dēleō   |
| 2. <i>Imperfect indicative</i> | dēlēbam |

<sup>1</sup> Use **imperō**.

<sup>2</sup> Use **iubeō**.

3. <i>Future indicative</i>	dēlēbō
4. <i>Present subjunctive</i>	dēleam
5. <i>Imperfect subjunctive</i>	dēlērem
6. <i>Imperative</i>	dēlē
7. <i>Present participle</i>	dēlēns
8. <i>Present infinitive</i>	dēlēre
9. <i>Gerund</i>	dēlēndī

## 159.

## VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
frāter	-tris, mas.	brother
imperātor	-tōris, mas.	commander
lēx	lēgis, fem.	law
nox	noctis, fem.	night
virtūs	-tūtis, fem.	courage
compleō	-plēre, second conj.	to fill
obtineō	-nēre, “ “	to hold

160. Principal parts of second-conjugation verbs.—Only a few verbs of the second conjugation have the *perfect indicative* in *vī*; *dēleō* is given for better comparison with *portō*. Most verbs of this conjugation have *uī* in the *perfect*.

The ending of the *present infinitive* is *ēre* (147).

dēleō	dēlēre	dēlēvī	dēlētum
compleō	complēre	complēvī	complētum
habeō	habēre	habuī	habitum
valeō	valēre	valuī	valitum
sustineō	sustinēre	sustinuī	sustentum

## 161. Review of subordinate clause—order of words.

Cum nostrī prō oppidō fossās complērent, hostium cōpiae in mūrō pīla et lapidēs conlocābant,

While our men were filling the ditches in front of the town, the enemies' forces were placing javelins and stones upon the wall

The **cum** clause, ending with **complērent**, modifies and marks the *time* of the action in the principal verb, **conlocābant**; **prō oppidō**, adverbial phrase (*within the cum clause*), modifies **complērent**; in the principal clause **hostium** (*genitive*) limits the subject, **cōpiae**; in **mūrō** modifies **conlocābant** and denotes *place where*; the direct objects precede their verbs.

## 162.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Caesar imperātōrī legiōnis p̄imae ut vigiliā secundā castra moveat imperat. 2. Galba partem legiōnis oppidum subitō oppūgnāre et partem profectiōnem hostium prohibēre iubet. 3. Caesar mīlitibus quōs in hībernīs in prōvinciā conlocāvit imperābit ut castra moveant et in Galliā praesidia et mūnitōnēs aedificant. 4. Cum Galba cōpiās distinēret et mūrōs prō oppidō expūgnāre parāret, oppidānī ex oppidō properāvērunt et māgnā virtūte nostrōs fugāvērunt.

II.—1. Galba directed the commanders of the new legions to renew the battle with great courage. 2. The enemy build many fortifications, so that they may overcome the great multitude of our men. 3. Our commanders divide their forces in the first watch, that they may storm the enemy's redoubts in many places. 4. Galba demands the surrender of many hostages, because the Gauls have great influence and hold command in many states.

## LESSON XXXI.

## SECOND CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

**163. Dēleō** in the *perfect system*; stem dēlēv.

Perfect indicative.	Pluperfect indicative.	Future-perfect indicative.	Perfect subjunctive.
<i>destroyed.</i>	<i>had destroyed.</i>	<i>shall have destroyed.</i>	<i>may have destroyed.</i>
SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR,
1. dēlēvī	dēlēveram	dēlēverō	dēlēverim
2. dēlēvistī	dēlēverās	dēlēveris	dēlēveris
3. dēlēvit	dēlēverat	dēlēverit	dēlēverit
PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.
1. dēlēvimus	dēlēverāmus	dēlēverimus	dēlēverimus
2. dēlēvistis	dēlēverātis	dēlēveritis	dēlēveritis
3. dēlēvērunt (ēre)	dēlēverant	dēlēverint	dēlēverint

## Pluperfect subjunctive.

*might have destroyed.*

SINGULAR.

1. dēlēvissem

2. dēlēvissēs

3. dēlēvisset

PLURAL.

1. dēlēvissēmus

2. dēlēvissētis

3. dēlēvissent

## Perfect infinitive.

*dēlēvisse, to have destroyed*

Synopsis of the *perfect system*:

- |              |               |
|--------------|---------------|
| 1. dēlēvī    | 4. dēlēverim  |
| 2. dēlēveram | 5. dēlēvissem |
| 3. dēlēverō  | 6. dēlēvisse  |

**164.** Compare the personal endings of the following:

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Present indicative.*

- |           |          |
|-----------|----------|
| 1. portō  | portāmus |
| 2. portās | portātis |
| 3. portat | portant  |

*Present subjunctive.*

- |           |          |
|-----------|----------|
| 1. portem | portēmus |
| 2. portēs | portētis |
| 3. portet | portent  |

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Present indicative.*

- |       |         |
|-------|---------|
| dēleō | dēlēmus |
| dēlēs | dēlētis |
| dēlet | dēlent  |

*Present subjunctive.*

- |        |          |
|--------|----------|
| dēleam | dēlēamus |
| dēlēas | dēlēatis |
| dēleat | dēleant  |

## 165.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 1–10 (449).

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
nōmen	-minis, neut.	name
prīnceps	-cipis, mas.	chief
cohors	-hortis, fem.	cohort
altitūdō	-dinis, fem.	height
ibi, adv.		there
salūs	-ūtis, fem.	safety

## 166. Points to remember.

1. Ut, so that, introduces a purpose clause with the verb in the subjunctive. This ut + subjunctive is often translated by the infinitive.
2. Cum, while, takes the imperfect subjunctive, translated like the imperfect indicative.
3. Quod, because, introduces a causal clause whose verb is often in the indicative.
4. The relative qui, etc., usually follows its antecedent and stands first in its clause, the verb of which is often in the indicative.
5. Imperō and mandō take the dative and an ut clause; the verb in the ut clause is in the subjunctive.
6. Iubeō is used with the accusative + infinitive.

## 167.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Quod cīvitās auctōritātē<sup>1</sup> māgnā est, Caesar Belgīs ut imperātōribus Rōmānīs līberōs prīncipum ob-sidēs dent mandat. 2. Hostēs qui nostrōrum virtūtem et multitūdinem māgnam vidēbant (*saw*) cum līberīs et fīnitimīs trāns flūmen in Galliam properāvērunt et ibi castra conlocāvērunt. 3. Cum cohortēs legiōnis prīmae

<sup>1</sup> auctōritātē māgnā = of great influence; 'ablative of quality' (376). Translate, 'because their state is one of great influence,' etc.

in castris essent, cohortes reliquae ut mūrōs oppugnārent magnae altitudinis turrīs (*acc.*) altas aedificabant. 4. Quod hostēs in castris mīlites continēbant et nostrīs facultātem pugnandī nōn dabant, Caesar mīlitibus ut agrōs hostium vāstārent imperāvit.

II.—1. On account of the great courage of our men the enemy did not attack the town in which the Roman legions were wintering. 2. Caesar will hasten out of camp with the remaining cohorts to destroy<sup>1</sup> the redoubt which the enemy are building for the sake of safety. 3. Our commanders gave aid to many states of Gaul and called the Gauls friends of the Roman people, because they had many fields and villages and much influence. 4. Caesar commanded Galba to keep<sup>1</sup> his cavalry ready upon the hill and to prevent the flight of the enemy.

## LESSON XXXII.

### SECOND CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

#### 168. Perfect system of *sustineō*; perfect stem *sustinu-*.

Principal parts: *sustineō* *sustinēre* *sustinuī* *sustentum*

*From sustinuī is derived the stem *sustinu-*.*

1. <i>sustinuī</i>	4. <i>sustainuerim</i>
2. <i>sustainueram</i>	5. <i>sustainuissem</i>
3. <i>sustainuerō</i>	6. <i>sustainuisse</i>

#### 169. Supine system of *dēleō* (four forms).

*Supine, dēlētum; supine stem, dēlēt.*

*First supine      dēlētum, to destroy*

*Second supine      dēlētū, to destroy*

*Future participle      dēlētūrus, -a, -um, being about to destroy*

*Future infinitive      dēlētūrum, -am, -um esse, to be about to  
destroy*

---

<sup>1</sup> Be careful about choice of tense—<sup>1</sup> rule of sequence (135).

**170.** The ending of the *future participle* is *ūrus*, *-a*, *-um*; that of the *future infinitive* *ūrum*, *-am*, *-um esse*. To form these, strike off *um* from the *supine* and annex the above endings; as, *parō*, *parāre*, *parāvī*, *parātum*; *supine stem*, *parāt*; *future participle*, *parātūrus*; *future infinitive*, *parātūrum esse*. *videō*, *vidēre*, *vīdī*, *vīsum*; *supine stem*, *vīs*; *future participle*, *vīsūrus*; *future infinitive*, *vīsūrum esse*.

**171.****VOCABULARY.****Verbs 11–22 (449).**

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
<b>tempus</b>	<i>-poris</i> , neut.	<i>time</i>
<b>eōdem tempore</b> , <i>adverbial phrase</i>		<i>at the same time</i>
<b>explorātor</b>	<i>-tōris</i> , <i>mas.</i>	<i>scout</i>
<b>pēs</b>	<i>pedis</i> , <i>mas.</i>	<i>foot</i>
<b>pōns</b>	<i>pontis</i> , <i>mas.</i>	<i>bridge</i>
<b>undique</b> , <i>adv.</i>		<i>from (on) all sides</i>
<b>tum</b> , <i>adv.</i>		<i>then</i>

**172.** Repeat the rule of sequence. What adjectives govern the dative? What is the *case* of the *predicate word* with *sum*, etc.? Give rules for the agreement of *adjective* and *relative*. Name four kinds of *ablatives*. Decline the nouns of the first, second, and third declensions (**453, 454, 458, 459**), and *altus* and *crēber* (**466**).

**173.****EXERCISES.**

I.—1. Caesar Gallīs ut in castra Rōmāna līberōs prīncipum obsidēs portārent imperāvit. 2. Quod Caesar explorātōrēs pontem dēlēre iusserat, hostēs prīmā vigiliā cum līberīs et impedīmentīs trāns flūmen mātūrāvērunt. 3. Nostrī quibus Caesar tēla nova dedit peditēs hostium,

quod virtūte et numerō hominum nōn valēbant, facile prōflīgāvērunt. 4. Mīlitēs legiōnis p̄imae hominēs virtūtis māgnæ erant et nōn fugā sed fortiter dīmicandō salūtem impetrāvērunt. 5. Quod Gallī mūnītiōnēs novās nostrās oppūgnābant, Caesar imperātōrem cūius cōpiae tēla multa et bona habēbant in Galliam properāre, ut Gallōrum castella et vāllum dēlērent, iussit.

II.—1. Caesar ordered the infantry of the second legion to attack the town whose walls were not high. 2. With great swiftness and courage our cavalry hastened out of the redoubts and easily routed the enemy's lines. 3. Galba commanded scouts to destroy the new bridge and prevent the departure of the Belgians who had not given hostages to Caesar. 4. While the Belgians were awaiting the aid of their neighbours, Caesar suddenly attacked their town on all sides with his infantry<sup>1</sup> and destroyed the new fortifications.

## LESSON XXXIII.

### THIRD CONJUGATION.

#### **174. Present indicative of *pōnō*, *I place*.**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <i>pōnō</i>	<i>pōnimus</i>
2. <i>pōnis</i>	<i>pōnit̄is</i>
3. <i>pōnit</i>	<i>pōnunt̄</i>

#### Personal endings.

-ō	-imus
-is	-itis
-it	-unt̄

---

<sup>1</sup> ‘Ablative of means’ (43 b).

Like **pōnō**, conjugate **mittō**, *to send*, **dūcō**, *to lead*, and **cōgō**, *to collect*.

## 175.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 23–32 (449).

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
fertilitās	-tātis, fem.	<i>fertility</i>
ab latere, adverbial phrase		<i>on the flank</i>
ac, conj.		<i>and</i>
parātus -a, -um, adj.		<i>prepared</i>
inīquus -a, -um, adj.		<i>unfavourable</i>
inter, prep. with the acc.		<i>among or between</i>
cis, “ “ “ “		<i>on this side of</i>
tam, adv.		<i>so</i>

**176. Order of words.**—Though the *subject* usually tends to stand first and the *verb* last in the Latin sentence, this arrangement of words is frequently greatly varied. Often the *most prominent* word in the speaker's mind comes *first* and other words follow in order of prominence. For position of forms of **sum**, for example, see the first line in "*Caesar's Gallic War*," Book II, Chapter I: "**cum esset Caesar in Galliā**"; again in Chapter IX: "**palūs erat nōn māgna**." Then we find the *verb first* in the sentence, as in Chapter II, third paragraph: "**dat negōtium Senonibus**," *he employs the Senones*; and in Chapter XVII, line 12: "**adiuvābat etiam . . . cōnsilium**," *it was of advantage, too, to the plan*.

**177.** Review the entire verb **sum** (484), and *all* of the active voice of **amō** and **moneō** (474, 476).

## 178.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Caesar incūsāvit imperātōrem cui sīgnūm dedit, quod ad mūrum oppidī turrēs nōn prōmōvit. 2. Eōdem

tempore hostēs in multīs Galliae cīvitātibus cōpiās māgnās cōgunt ut legiōnēs Rōmānās superent. 3. Imperātor Rōmānus, quod profectiōnem hostium videt, trāns flūmen ad collem in quō sunt Galbae castra peditēs prīmae legiōnis mittit ut fugam prohibeant. 4. Lēgātī hostium, quod virtūtem ac numerum nostrōrum peditum vidēbant, in castrīs cōpiās continēbant neque<sup>1</sup> nostrīs facultātem pūgnandī dabant. 5. Galba nōmine populī Rōmānī obsidēs multōs cōgit (*collects*) et in hībernīs inter cīvitātēs quārum auctōritās est nōn māgna legiōnēs novās pōnit.

II.—1. Caesar places (*pōnō*) in winter-quarters among the Remi the new cavalry which Galba is collecting from all sides. 2. Because the courage of the Roman legions is so great, the enemy send to Galba the children of their chiefs as hostages. 3. Caesar leads his new legions into the boundaries of farthest Gaul and commands the Gauls,<sup>2</sup> who are unfriendly to the Roman people, to prepare<sup>3</sup> winter-quarters for our men and to carry corn into our camp.

## LESSON XXXIV.

### THIRD CONJUGATION, CONTINUED. FOURTH DECLENSION.

#### 179. Imperfect indicative of *pōnō*. Future indicative.

*was placing.*

*shall place.*

SINGULAR. PLURAL.

SINGULAR. PLURAL.

1. *pōnēbam* *pōnēbāmus*

*pōnam* *pōnēmus*

2. *pōnēbās* *pōnēbātis*

*pōnēs* *pōnētis*

3. *pōnēbat* *pōnēbant*

*pōnet* *pōnent*

180. The *present stem* (*verb-stem*), *pōnē*, ending in *short e*, is found by dropping *re* from the *present infinitive active* (57). The stem vowel *ē* is lost before *ō*, is changed to *u* before *nt*,

<sup>1</sup> *neque = et . . . nōn*; see vocab. (202).

<sup>2</sup> Case after *imperō*?

<sup>3</sup> Mood with *imperō*?

to ī before the other endings of the *indicative* and *imperative*; in the *imperfect* and *future indicative* it becomes ē, and in the *present subjunctive* ā.

## 181.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 33–42 (449).

<b>exercitus</b>	-ūs, mas.	army
<b>incendō,</b>	<i>third conjugation</i>	<i>to burn</i>
<b>relinquō,</b>	" "	<i>to leave</i>
<b>cōnscribō,</b>	" "	<i>to enroll</i>
<b>expellō,</b>	" "	<i>to drive out</i>
<b>incolō,</b>	" "	<i>to inhabit</i>
<b>permittō,</b>	" "	<i>to entrust</i>

Verbs of the third conjugation have *short e* in the *penult* of the *present infinitive*, the accent falling upon the *antepenult*: pōnō, pónēre; mittō, mittēre.

## 182. Fourth declension.

Cāsus, *fate*, mas.      Cornū, *horn or wing*, neut.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> cāsus	cāsūs	cornū	cornua
<i>Gen.</i> cāsūs	cāsuūm	cornūs	cornuum
<i>Dat.</i> cāsuī(ū)	cāsibus	cornū	cornibus
<i>Acc.</i> cāsum	cāsūs	cornū	cornua
<i>Voc.</i> cāsus	cāsūs	cornū	cornua
<i>Abl.</i> cāsū	cāsibus	cornū	cornibus

The stem ends in u. Nouns in us are *masculine* with a few *feminine* exceptions; those in ū are *neuter*.

## 183. Comparison of tenses having similar endings.

<b>Present</b>	<b>Present</b>	<b>Future</b>
<b>subjunctive.</b>	<b>indicative.</b>	<b>indicative.</b>

(First conjugation.) (Second conjugation.) (Third conjugation.)

1. portem	portēmus	dēleō	dēlēmus	pōnam	pōnēmus
2. portēs	portētis	dēlēs	dēlētis	pōnēs	pōnētis
3. portet	portent	dēlet	dēlēnt	pōnet	pōnēnt

Thus it is seen that a verb ending in **et** or **ent** is *present subjunctive* if *first conjugation*; *present indicative* if *second conjugation*; *future indicative* if *third conjugation*.

## 184.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Imperatōrēs Rōmānī extrēmā in Galliā ut potestātem amplifcent legiōnēs novās cōscrībent. 2. Lēgātus quī māgnam hostium multitūdinem videt trāns flūmen Rhēnum mīlētēs nōn dūcet. 3. Caesar in fīnibus Germānōrum exercitum māgnūm relinquet ut nōmen et auctōritātem populī Rōmānī amplificet. 4. Cīvitātēs Galliae quae virtūte et auctōritāte et numerō hominum valent nōn facile ē fīnibus Galliae legiōnēs nostrās expellent. 5. Nostrī in cīvitātibus proximīs Galliae (*dative*) māgnās cōpiās cōgent ac peditēs eōdem tempore cōscrībent ut hostēs superent.

II.—1. The townsmen will burn their towns and carry their children and baggage into the boundaries of their neighbours. 2. The Gauls place their states under the power<sup>1</sup> of the Roman army and drive out the Germans who are in arms and are not friendly to Caesar. 3. The Roman commander leaves the cavalry among the Sequani, because they inhabit places next to our province, and hastens across the river with his infantry. 4. In the second watch our men will burn the bridge which the enemy built and will prevent their departure.

---

<sup>1</sup> Place under the power of, **permittō in + accusative.**

## LESSON XXXV.

THIRD CONJUGATION, CONTINUED ADJECTIVES  
OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

**185. Present subjunctive of *pōnō*. Imperfect subjunctive.  
*may place.*      *might place.***

SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
1. pōnam	pōnerem
2. pōnās	pōnerēs
3. pōnat	pōneret
PLURAL.	PLURAL.
1. pōnāmus	pōnerēmus
2. pōnātis	pōnerētis
3. pōnant	pōnerent

**186.** As in the *second conjugation*, the *present subjunctive* ends in *am*, *ās*, *at*, etc. If a verb ends in *at*, for example, it is *present indicative* in the *first conjugation*, *present subjunctive* in *any other conjugation*. Conjugate *incendō* and *expellō* in the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and present and imperfect subjunctive.

**187.****VOCABULARY.****Verbs 1–6 (450).**

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
dux	ducis, mas.	leader
adventus	-ūs, mas.	arrival
equitātus	-ūs, mas.	cavalry
impetus	-ūs, mas.	attack
omnis	-nis, -ne, adj.	all
facilis	-lis, -le, adj.	easy

## 188. Adjective of the third declension.

*Fortis, brave.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i>	fortis	-is	-e	fortēs	-ēs	-ia
<i>Gen.</i>	fortis	-is	-is	fortium	-ium	ium
<i>Dat.</i>	fortī	-ī	-ī	fortibus	-ibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	fortem	-em	-e	fortēs (-īs)	-ēs (-īs)	-ia
<i>Voc.</i>	fortis	-is	-e	fortēs	-ēs	-ia
<i>Abl.</i>	fortī	-ī	-ī	fortibus	-ibus	-ibus

*Fortis, stem fortī* (vowel-stem in i), has one form for both *masculine* and *feminine*, and one for the *neuter* (e). Adjectives of two terminations, being i-stems, have ī in the *ablative singular*, ia in the *nominative, accusative*, and *vocative neuter plural*, ium in the *genitive plural*, and īs often in the *accusative plural masculine and feminine*.

189. Use of *sūus*, ‘his,’ ‘hers,’ or ‘theirs.’—*Suns, sua, suum* is a possessive *reflexive pronoun* of the third person, denoting *possession* and referring to the *subject* of a sentence or clause (214). It is declined like *altus, -a, -um*, and *agrees* in *gender, number, and case* with the *noun limited*, that is, the *thing possessed, not the possessor*. It means *his, hers, or theirs* according to the *number* of the possessor.

*Caesar ē castrīs suōs mīlitēs dūcit,*      *Caesar leads his soldiers out of camp*  
*Hostēs suum oppidum incendunt,*      *The enemy burn their town*

## 190.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Caesar, cum in prōvinciā legiōnēs reliquās cōscrīberet, ducib⁹ equitātūs imperāvit ut hostium oppidum in quō erant multa impedimenta incenderent. 2. Caesar undique exercitum cōget ut Germānōs quī inter multās cīvitātēs valent ac multa oppida incolunt ē fīnibus Gallōrum expellat. 3. Caesar, ut Sēquanōs quī nostrīs sunt

inimicī expellat et ad fortēs Rēmōs auxilium portet, in Galliam sine morā suās cōpiās dūcet. 4. Quod imperātor hostium ē castrīs ad proelium exercitum nōn dūcēbat, Galba ut castra hostium expūgnāret mīlitēs aedificāre turrīs (*accus.*) altitūdinis māgnae iussit. 5. Quod explōrātōrēs adventum Caesaris exercitūs nūntiāvērunt, Belgae trāns Rhēnum sua castra movēbunt et cum Germānīs coniūrābunt ut mīlitūm nostrōrum (*adj.*) impetum sustineant.

II.—1. On account of the enemy's arrival Caesar will leave his infantry in winter-quarters among the Remi and will enroll new legions. 2. With the aid of the soldiers whom he will enroll in farthest Gaul Caesar will overcome and drive out the remaining enemy. 3. Galba directs his commanders to lead the cavalry of the second legion into the territories next to the Roman province and to attack the new fortifications of the enemy.

## LESSON XXXVI.

### THIRD CONJUGATION, CONTINUED

#### 191. Imperative of *pōnō*, *place (thou)*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
2.	{ pōne { pōnitō	{ pōnite { pōnitōte
3.	pōnitō	pōnuntō

#### Present participle.

*pōnēns*, *placing*

#### Present infinitive.

*pōnēre*, *to place*

#### Gerund.

*of placing*, etc.

*Gen.* *pōnēndī*

*Acc.* *pōnēndūm*

*Dat.* *pōnēndō*

*Abl.* *pōnēndō*

This completes the *nine* forms composing the *present system* of *pōnō*, based upon the *present stem* *pōne*.

192. Synopsis—present system—of *pōnō*.

1. <i>Present indicative</i>	<i>pōnō</i>
2. <i>Imperfect indicative</i>	<i>pōnēbam</i>
3. <i>Future indicative</i>	<i>pōnam (-ēs)</i>
4. <i>Present subjunctive</i>	<i>pōnam (-ās)</i>
5. <i>Imperfect subjunctive</i>	<i>pōnerem</i>
6. <i>Imperative</i>	<i>pōne</i>
7. <i>Present participle</i>	<i>pōnēns</i>
8. <i>Present infinitive</i>	<i>pōnere</i>
9. <i>Gerund</i>	<i>pōnendī</i>

Give synopsis in the *present system* of *mittō* and *relinquō*. Conjugate the *present subjunctive* of *dubitō*, *present indicative* of *habeō*, *future indicative* of *dūcō*.

## 193.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 7–14 (450).

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
<b>aditus</b>	-ūs, <i>mas.</i>	access or approach
<b>commeātus</b>	-ūs, <i>mas.</i>	supplies
<b>mōns</b>	montis, <i>mas.</i>	mountain
<b>statim</b> , <i>adv.</i>		at once
<b>manus</b>	-ūs, <i>fem.</i>	hand (hand)

194. Decline *duplex* and *equester* (467). Observe that *equester* has *three* terminations in the *nominative*: **ter**, **tris**, **tre**; being a vowel-stem in **i** (**ri**), it takes **i** in the *ablative*, etc., as in *fortis*. **Duplex**, increasing the number of syllables in the *genitive*, is a consonant-stem (**duplic**), and takes the form of *i-stems* in the cases pointed out in (188), except that the *ablative* (*singular*) often ends in **e**.

## 195.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Caesar prō oppidō cūius mūrī sunt nōn altī castra pōnet, quod aditum facilem habet. 2. Adventū equitātū Caesar ē castrī omnēs cōpiās dūcit et ab latere inīquō in locō hostium agmen exagitāre parat. 3. Germānī quī trāns Rhēnum agrōs multōs habent et māgna oppida in-

colunt ex hibernis omnēs nostrōs militēs expellent. 4. Eōdem tempore Galba in extrēmōs Galliae fīnīs (*acc. plur.*) lēgātōs mittit ut legiōnēs novās cōscrībant et frūmentum et commeātūs impetrent. 5. Caesar in hostium fīnēs, ut agrōs vāstent et mūnītiōnēs dēleant et exercituī Rōmānō commeātūs cōgant, fortēs lēgātōs mittet.

II.—1. Because the brave messengers had announced the approach of the enemy's cavalry, Galba ordered his commanders to prepare all the forces for renewing the battle. 2. Caesar commands the brave forces to collect an abundance of corn for the army whose camp he will place (*pōnō*) in Gaul. 3. While Galba was enrolling infantry and cavalry for the sake of overcoming the Gauls, ambassadors from a large part of Gaul hastened to Caesar's winter-quarters to give hostages and obtain peace. 4. Because the town has an easy access, Caesar at once prepares to lead all the forces out of camp and storm the walls from all sides.

## LESSON XXXVII.

### THIRD CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

#### 196. Perfect system of *pōnō*.—*Perfect stem posu.*

<b>Perfect indicative.</b>	<b>Pluperfect indicative.</b>	<b>Perfect subjunctive.</b>
<i>placed.</i>	<i>had placed.</i>	<i>may have placed.</i>
SINGULAR.	posueram	posuerim
1. posuī	posuerās, etc.	posueris, etc.
2. posuistī		
3. posuit	<b>Future-perfect indicative.</b>	<b>Pluperfect subjunctive.</b>
PLURAL.	<i>shall have placed.</i>	<i>might have placed.</i>
1. posuimus	posuerō	posuissem
2. posuistis	posueris, etc.	posuissēs, etc.
3. posuērunt (-ēre)		

**Perfect infinitive.**  
posuisse, to have placed

197. *Supine system of pōnō (four forms); supine stem posit.*

1. *First supine*      *positum*,                  *to place*
2. *Second supine*    *positū*,                  *to place*
3. *Future participle* *positūrus, -a, -um*,    *being about to place*
4. *Future infinitive* *positūrum, -am, -um esse*, *to be about to place*

## 198.

**VOCABULARY.**

## Verbs 15–18 (450).

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
mōs	mōris, mas.	custom or habit
servitūs	-tūtis, fem.	slavery
dēdō		{ to surrender
ēdūcō	(see principal parts in	{ to lead out
petō	the general vocabulary)	{ to seek or ask for
timeō		to fear
novissimum agmen,	neut.	the rear

**Petō**, with the meaning ‘ask for,’ takes a direct object, not the *dative*; as, pācem petunt, *they ask for peace*.

199. Decline pūgnāns (467). Give full synopsis, *entire active voice*, by stems, of imperō, iubeō, and cōgō. First repeat the *principal parts* of the verb and point out the *three stems*, stating the *number* of forms derived from *each stem*. Give the *name* of the form, next the *form itself*, and then the *meaning*.

## 200.

**EXERCISES.**

I.—1. Caesar in (*upon*) altum collem suās cōpiās dūxit et ibi castella ac mūnītiōnēs posuit ut prīmum hostium impetum sustinēret. 2. Dux Rōmānus in castrīs mīlitēs continuit, quod hostēs līberōs prīncipum obsidēs dēdiderant ac potestātī Caesaris oppida omnia permīserant. 3. Cum ducēs quōs Caesar in Galliam lēgātōs mīserat ut exercituī

Rōmānō commeātum cōgerent frūmentum postulārent, Sēquani castra nostra oppūgnāvērunt et incendērunt. 4. Quod explōrātōrēs quōs trāns Rhēnum commeātūs causā mīserat hostium adventum nūntiāvērunt, Caesar fortibus lēgātīs ut statim in proximum montem omnem equitātum dūcerent mandāvit.

II.—1. While the cohorts of the first legion with great courage were withstanding the enemy's brave attack, Galba directed the cavalry to await his commands upon the nearest hill. 2. Upon the arrival of the Roman infantry which Caesar had trained in many battles, the townsmen will send into our camp suitable men so that they may surrender hostages and ask for peace. 3. Caesar hastened at once with his armed infantry into the farthest boundaries of Gaul, and many states that feared the power of our army sought peace.

### LESSON XXXVIII.

#### THE IRREGULAR VERB **POSSUM**, *I AM ABLE.*

**201.** Learn the indicative mood of *possum* (485).—Principal parts, *possum*, *posse*, *potuī*—no supine.

*Decline altior* (467) and the fourth-declension nouns (461).

**202.**

#### VOCABULARY.

##### Verbs 19–23 (450).

*tantus*, -a, -um, *adj.*

*so great*

*ubi*, *conj.*

*when*

*dē*, *prep. with the abl.*

*with respect to, about*

*discēdō*

*to depart*

*redigō*

*to reduce*

*nec (neque)* { conjunction, used in  
the second of two connected ideas } and . . . not

**203.** Use of *cum* and *ubi*.—*Cum*, *when*, is used with the imperfect subjunctive to denote contemporaneous action

(when in the sense of ‘while’); with the *pluperfect subjunctive* to denote *antecedent* action (when in the sense of ‘after’). This is called *Historical cum* and describes the circumstances under which an action took place.

**Ubi**, *when*, commonly takes the *perfect indicative*, or the *Historical present indicative* (*the present as a vivid representation of the past*). The **ubi** clause *defines the time* during which an action took place. When to use **cum** or **ubi**, in writing English in Latin, is often difficult to determine.

#### 204. Analysis of a complex sentence.

Cum mīlitēs quōs Caesar in  
Galliam ut exercituī Rōmānō  
commeātūs cōgerent mīse-  
rat frūmentum postulārent,  
Sēquani castra nostra in-  
cendērunt,

While the soldiers whom Caesar  
had sent into Gaul to collect  
supplies for the Roman army  
were demanding corn, the  
Sequani set fire to our camp

A complex declarative sentence, of which **Sēquani . . . incendērunt** is the *main clause*. Since the *subject*, **Sēquani**, is unmodified, the remainder of the sentence limits the *predicate* **incendērunt**. Hence it is seen that the *subordinate part of the sentence*, **cum . . . postulārent**, has *three component parts*, viz., a **cum**, a **relative**, and an **ut clause**.

Begin with **cum**: looking for the verb introduced by **cum**, there appears a *relative clause* which is in turn divided in two by an intermediate **ut** clause, and the *latter* standing undivided ends with **cōgerent**. Since the **ut . . . cōgerent** clause *stands within the relative clause*, the *next verb* in order should complete the *relative clause*, beginning with **quōs** and ending with **mīserat**; here bear in mind that **ut . . . cōgerent** shows *affirmative purpose of*, and gets its *sequence from*, **mīserat**, and that **quōs . . . mīserat** describes **mīlitēs**. Thus it is seen that **cum** introduces

**postulārent**, and that this entire clause modifies the *principal verb incendērunt*, describing the *circumstances* of the action of the latter and denoting *time contemporaneous*.

## 205.

## EXERCISE.

1. Caesar ubi tantam hostium multitūdinem vīdit, ē castrīs omnēs legiōnēs ēdūxit et mandāvit mīlitibus ut impetum hostium exspectārent. 2. Quod mīlitum nostrōrum impetum sustinēre nōn poterant, oppidānī proximīs cūm fīnitimīs in extrēmōs Galliae fīnēs discessērunt. 3. Quod Gallī nōn possunt contrā legiōnēs fortēs nostrās sustentāre, Caesar in servitūtem omnēs cīvitātēs quae arma et obsidēs nōn dēdidērunt rediget. 4. Hostēs reliquī qui armīs ac hominū numerō nōn valēbant ad Caesarem pīncipēs cīvitātum lēgātōs ut pācem peterent mīsērunt. 5. Adventū hostium Galba suō mōre in castrīs partem equitū reliquit, partem in montē dūxit. 6. Castra Caesaris quae hostēs expūgnāre non potuerant proxima erant collī altō nec aditum facilem habēbant.

## LESSON XXXIX.

## POSSUM, CONTINUED. PERSONAL PRONOUN.

206. Learn the subjunctive and infinitive moods of *possum* (485).

*Decline all the nouns of the third declension* (458, 459).

207. Personal pronoun, first person.

## Ego, I.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom. ego, I	nōs, we
Gen. meī, of me	{ nostrum, { of us nostrī,
Dat. mihi, to or for me	nōbīs, to or for us
Acc. mē, me	nōs, us
Abl. mē, { with, from, by me, etc.	{ nōbīs, from us, etc.

**208. Demonstrative pronoun** (sometimes used for the personal pronoun, *third person*).

is, ea, id, *this or that, he, etc.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	eī or iī	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	ēārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	eīs or iīs	eīs or iīs	eīs or iīs
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	ea	eō	eīs or iīs	eīs or iīs	eīs or iīs

## 209.

### VOCABULARY.

Verbs 24–33 (450).

nōndum, <i>adv.</i>	not yet
nē, <i>conj.</i>	in order that . . . not
trādō	to hand over
circumdō	to surround

Nē in negative commands, prohibitions, etc., will be given later.

**210. How cause and manner are expressed.**—Cause is expressed by the simple ablative.

**Virtūte nostrōrum hostēs sus-** *On account of (because of) the*  
**tentāre nōn poterant,** *courage of our men the ene-*  
*my could not hold out*

The *manner* of an action is expressed by the ablative usually with cum, unless a limiting adjective accompanies the noun. But even with the adjective cum may be used. Sometimes it is almost impossible to distinguish *means* and *manner*.

**Hostēs cum celeritāte disces-** *The enemy departed with speed*  
*sērunt,*

**211. Use of nē.—Nē,** *in order that . . . not*, introduces a subordinate clause of *negative purpose* with the verb in the *subjunctive*, the choice of *tense* being determined by the *rule of sequence*.

Dant obsidēs nē Caesar oppi- *They give hostages in order that*  
 dum dēleat, *Caesar may not destroy their*  
*town*

## 212.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Caesar māgnō equitātūs numerō oppidum circum-dedit nē hostēs noctū<sup>1</sup> discēderent. 2. Hostēs quī mīlitum nostrōrum impetum sustinēre possunt ad Caesarem dē pāce lēgātōs nōn mittent. 3. Rēmī quī proximī Belgīs et hominēs virtūtis māgnae erant ex suīs fīnibus Germānōs facile expulērunt. 4. Ubi trāns flūmen hostium agmen vīdit, Caesar in collem proximum cōpiās omnēs suās ēdūxit ac mīlitibus fortibus ut proelī sīgnū exspectārent imperāvit. 5. Rēmī quī Caesaris exercitūs adventum timent Belgās reliquōs, quod populō Rōmānō obsidēs trādiderant et pācem petīverant, incūsant.

II.—1. Because they were not able to overcome the Roman infantry, the Sequani burned all their towns and departed out of Gaul. 2. Upon the arrival of the cavalry (*singular of equitātus*) which our leaders had collected from (*ex*) many states the Gauls sent ambassadors to Caesar with respect to a surrender. 3. While our men were preparing to storm the walls of the town with weapons and stones, the townsmen suddenly departed and placed (*pōnō*) safety in flight. 4. When the enemy saw upon the hill our cavalry whose approach (*adventus*) scouts had announced, they did not await an attack but<sup>2</sup> departed at once into the nearest (*proximus*) villages.

<sup>1</sup> An old ablative used adverbially, *by night*.

<sup>2</sup> Use *ac*.

## LESSON XL.

## THE Iō VERB OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

**213.** Learn *capiō*,<sup>1</sup> *I take*, in the entire active voice (480).—Principal parts, *capiō*, *capere*, *cēpī*, *captum*.

**214.** Reflexive (personal) pronoun of the third person.—*Sūi*, *of himself, herself, themselves*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> —	—
<i>Gen.</i> <i>sūi</i> , <i>of himself</i>	<i>sūi</i> , <i>of themselves</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>sibi</i> , <i>to or for himself</i>	<i>sibi</i> , <i>to or for themselves</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>sē</i> , <i>himself</i>	<i>sē</i> , <i>themselves</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>sē</i> , <i>from, etc., himself</i>	<i>sē</i> , <i>from, etc., themselves</i>

The reflexive (personal) pronoun *sē*, etc., like its corresponding possessive *suus*, etc., (189), refers to the *subject of the sentence or clause*: hence it is distinguished by the term ‘reflexive’ (from *reflectō*, *bend or turn back*).

<b>Cum Caesar in Galliā esset,</b>	<i>While Caesar was in Gaul, am-</i>
<b>lēgātī ad eum</b> (not reflexive)	<i>bassadors came to him</i>
<b>vēnērunt,</b>	
<b>Caesar lēgātōs ad sē</b> (reflexive)	<i>Caesar ordered ambassadors to</i>
<b>venīre iussit,</b>	<i>come to him</i>

**215.**

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 34–41 (450).

<b>ā</b> or <b>ab</b> , <i>prep. with the abl.</i>	<i>from</i>
<b>āriter</b> , <i>adv.</i>	<i>fiercely</i>
<b>faciō</b> ,	<i>to do or make</i>
<b>impetum faciō</b> ,	<i>to make an attack</i>
<b>acciō</b> ,	<i>to receive</i>
<b>que</b> , <i>conj.</i>	<i>and</i>

<sup>1</sup> Verbs in **iō** retain **i** in all the tenses formed from the present stem, except the *imperfect subjunctive*.

**Que** is always *enclitic*, being attached to the *second* of two words connected: **ferrō ignique**, *with fire and sword*. When **que** joins clauses, it is attached to the *first* word of the *second* clause.

**Caesar vīcōs incendit agrōsque** *Caesar burnt the villages and laid waste the fields*

**216. Use of *impetum facere*.**—*Impetum facere*, *to make an attack*, usually takes in + *accusative*.

**Hostēs in nostrōs impetum** *The enemy made a fierce attack upon our men*  
**āriter fēcērunt,**

An *adverb* is often used in *Latin* where the English makes use of an *adjective*, as with **āriter** in the above sentence.

**217. Review of important points.**—Define *meaning* and *use* of **suus** (189); distinguish **cum** and **ubi** clauses (203); explain use of **ut** and **quod**, and of **imperō** and **iubeō** (166); **nē + subjunctive** (211); predicate nominative with **sum**, etc.; position and agreement of the *relative*; rule of sequence; name *six* kinds of ablatives.

## 218.

### EXERCISES.

I.—1. Dux noster in deditiōnem Rēmōs accipiet et cōpiis omnibus in Sēquanōrum fīnēs, ut in hostēs impetum āriter faciat, mātūrābit. 2. Caesar imperat Galbae ut cōpiis quās ab Rēmīs, fīnitimīs, accēperat in oppidānōs impetum faciat. 3. Adventū equitātū nostri Caesar commeātibus hostēs prohibuit et māgnā hominum multitudine oppidum circumdedit, nē oppidānī fugā salūtem peterent. 4. Caesar mūnītiōnibus mūrisque altīs ea castra in quibus omnēs suās legiōnēs posuerat circumdedit ut exercitus noster ad hiemandum salūtis locum habēret. 5. Tum Rēmī ac Belgae qui cīvitātēs Galliae proximae prōvinciae sunt ad Caesaris castra dē dēditiōne hominēs idōneōs mīsērunt.

II.—1. While our infantry in an unfavourable place were

withstanding the javelins of the enemy with courage, Caesar directed his commanders to lead out the cavalry and make an attack upon the enemy's rear. 2. Because Caesar ordered the Remi to inhabit a part of the territories which he had received from (ab) the Gauls, many states next to Gaul blamed Caesar and prepared to attack our camp. 3. While the cavalry were making an attack upon the Gauls, Caesar ordered his scouts to destroy the bridge, which the enemy had built, in order that they might not be able to depart out of Gaul without a surrender.

## 219. REVIEW VOCABULARY.

## LESSONS XXII—XL.

1. **possum**, **posse**, **potuī**, [no supine], *to be able*
2. **cōpia**, **cōpiae** (fem.), *abundance*
3. **aditus**, **aditūs** (mas.), *access*
4. **omnis**, **omnis**, **omne** (adj.), *all*
5. **inter** (prep. with the *acc.*), *among*
6. **ac** (conj.), *and*
7. **nūntiō**, **nūntiāre**, **nūntiāvī**, **nūntiātum**, *announce*
8. **adventus**, **adventūs** (mas.), *approach*
9. **armō**, **armāre**, **armāvī**, **armātum**, *arm*
10. **arma**, **armōrum** (neut.), *arms*
11. **exercitus**, **exercitūs** (mas.), *army*
12. **petō**, **petere**, **petīvī**, **pctitum**, *ask for or seek*
13. **impetus**, **impetūs** (mas.), *attack*
14. **eōdem tempore**, *at the same time*
15. **statim** (adv.), *at once*
16. **exspectō**, **exspectāre**, **exspectāvī**, **exspectātum**, *await*
17. **manus**, **manūs** (fem.), *band*
18. **corpus**, **corporis** (neut.), *body*
19. **fīnis**, **fīnis** (mas.), *end*, (plural) *boundary or territories*
20. **fortis**, **fortis**. **forte** (adj.), *brave*
21. **fortiter** (adv.), *bravely*
22. **pōns**, **pontis** (mas.), *bridge*

23. **frāter**, **frātris** (mas.), *brother*
24. **incendō**, **incendere**, **incendī**, **incēnsum**, *burn*
25. **Caesar**, **Caesaris** (mas.), *Caesar*
26. **calamitās**, **calamitātis** (fem.), *calamity*
27. **eques**, **equitis** (mas.), *horseman*, (plur.) *Roman cavalry*
28. **equitātus**, **equitātūs** (mas.), *cavalry*
29. **prīnceps**, **prīcipis** (mas.), *chief*
30. **cohors**, **cohortis** (fem.), *cohort*
31. **cōgō**, **cōgere**, **coēgī**, **coāctum**, *collect*
32. **imperātor**, **imperātōris** (mas.), *commander*
33. **contendō**, **contendere**, **contendī**, **contentum**, *contend*
34. **virtūs**, **virtūtis** (fem.), *courage*
35. **mōs**, **mōris** (mas.), *custom or habit*
36. **pellō**, **pellere**, **peplū**, **pulsum**, *defeat*
37. **postulō**, **postulāre**, **postulāvī**, **postulātum**, *demand*
38. **discēdō**, **discēdere**, **discessī**, **discessum**, *depart*
39. **profectiō**, **profectiōnis** (fem.), *departure*
40. **dēlēō**, **dēlēre**, **dēlēvī**, **dēlētum**, *destroy*
41. **distineō**, **distinēre**, **distinuī**, **distentum**, *divide*
42. **faciō**, **facere**, **fēcī**, **factum**, *do or make*
43. **expellō**, **expellere**, **expulī**, **expulsum**, *drive out*
44. **facilis**, **facilis**, **facile** (adj.), *easy*
45. **hostis**, **hostis** (mas.), *enemy*
46. **cōnscribō**, **cōnscribere**, **cōnscripsī**, **cōnscriptum**, *enroll*
47. **permittō**, **permittere**, **permīsī**, **permīssum**, *entrust*
48. **pater**, **patris** (mas.), *father*
49. **fertilitās**, **fertilitātis** (fem.), *fertility*
50. **timeō**, **timēre**, **timuī**, [no supine], *fear*
51. **levitās**, **levitātis** (fem.), *fickleness*
52. **ācriter** (adv.), *fiercely*
53. **compleō**, **complēre**, **complēvī**, **complētum**, *fill*
54. **īgnis**, **īgnis** (mas.), *fire*
55. **pēs**, **pedis** (mas.), *foot*
56. **mūnitiō**, **mūnitiōnis** (fem.), *fortification*
57. **undique** (adv.), *from or on all sides*
58. **bonus**, **bona**, **bonum** (adj.), *good*
59. **trādō**, **trādere**, **trādīdī**, **trāditum**, *hand over*
60. **habeō**, **habēre**, **habuī**, *habitum, have*

61. **altitūdō**, *altitūdinis* (fem.), *height*
62. **collis**, *collis* (mas.), *hill*
63. **suus**, *sua*, *suum* (possessive adj. pron.), *his or their*
64. **teneō**, *tenēre*, *tenuī*, *tentum*, *hold*
65. **cornū**, *cornūs* (neut.), *horn*
66. **obses**, *obsidis* (mas.), *hostage*
67. **amplificō**, *amplificāre*, *amplificāvī*, *amplificātum*, *increase*
68. **pedes**, *peditis* (mas.), *footman*, (plur.) *infantry*
69. **auctōritās**, *auctōritātis* (fem.), *influence*
70. **incolō**, *incolere*, *incoluī*, [no supine], *inhabit*
71. **nē** (conj.), *in order that . . . not*
72. **contineō**, *continēre*, *continuī*, *contentum*, *keep*
73. **rēx**, *rēgis* (mas.), *king*
74. **lēx**, *lēgis* (fem.), *law*
75. **dūcō**, *dūcere*, *dūxī*, *ductum*, *lead*
76. **dux**, *ducis* (mas.), *leader*
77. **ēdūcō**, *ēdūcere*, *ēdūxī*, *ēductum*, *lead out*
78. **relinquō**, *relinquere*, *reliquī*, *relictum*, *leave*
79. **legiō**, *legiōnis* (fem.), *legion*
80. **agmen**, *agminis* (neut.), *line of march* (marching column)
81. **homō**, *hominis* (mas.), *man*
82. **impetum** *facere*, *make an attack*
83. **mōns**, *montis* (mas.), *mountain*
84. **moveō**, *movēre*, *mōvī*, *mōtum*, *move*
85. **multitūdō**, *multitūdinis* (fem.), *multitude*
86. **nōmen**, *nōminis* (neut.), *name*
87. **nox**, *noctis* (fem.), *night*
88. **nōndum** (adv.), *not yet*
89. **ab latere**, *on the flank*
90. **facultās**, *facultātis* (fem.), *opportunity*
91. **iubeō**, *iubēre*, *iussī*, *iussum*, *order*
92. **pars**, *partis* (fem.), *part*
93. **pāx**, *pācis* (fem.), *peace*
94. **pōnō**, *pōnere*, *posuī*, *positum*, *place*
95. **potestās**, *potestātis* (fem.), *power*
96. **parātus**, *parāta*, *parātum* (adj.), *prepared or ready*
97. **prohibeō**, *prohibēre*, *prohibuī*, *prohibitum*, *prevent*

98. novissimum agmen, novissimī agminis (neut.), *rear*  
 99. accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptum, *receive*  
 100. redigō, redigere, redēgī, redāctum, *reduce*  
 101. rūmor, rūmōris (mas.), *report*  
 102. flūmen, flūminis (neut.), *river*  
 103. salūs, salūtis (fem.), *safety*  
 104. explōrātor, explōrātōris (mas.), *scout*  
 105. videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, *see*  
 106. mittō, mittere, mīsī, mīssum, *send*  
 107. Sēquanī, Sēquanōrum (mas.), *Sequani*  
 108. gravis, gravis, *grave* (adj.), *severe*  
 109. latus, lateris (neut.), *side or flank*  
 110. servitūs, servitūtis (fem.), *slavery*  
 111. tam (adv.), *so*  
 112. tantus, tanta, tantum (adj.), *so great*  
 113. mīles, mīlitis (mas.), *soldier*  
 114. ūrātiō, ūrātiōnis (fem.), *speech*  
 115. cīvitās, cīvitātis (fem.), *state*  
 116. lapis, lapidis (mas.), *stone*  
 117. valeō, valēre, valuī, valitum, *to be strong*  
 118. subitō (adv.), *suddenly*  
 119. aestās, aestātis (fem.), *summer*  
 120. commeātus, commeātūs (mas.), *supplies*  
 121. dēditiō, dēditiōnis (fem.), *surrender*  
 122. dēdō, dēdere, dēdīdī, dēditum, *surrender*  
 123. circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatum, *sur-round*  
 124. celeritās, celeritātis (fem.), *swiftness*  
 125. tum, inde (adverbs), *then*  
 126. ibi (adv.), *there*  
 127. cis (prep. with the *acc.*), *on this side of*  
 128. tempus, temporis (neut.), *time*  
 129. turris, turris (fem.), *tower*  
 130. inīquus, inīqua, inīquum (adj.), *unfavourable*  
 131. inimīcus, inimīca, inimīcum (adj.), *unfriendly*  
 132. bellum, bellī (neut.), *war*  
 133. vigilia, vigiliae (fem.), *watch* (division of the night)  
 134. ubi (adv.), *when*

135. *cum* (conj.), *while*  
 136. *quī, quae, quod* (rel. pron.), *who, which, what, that*  
 137. *sustineō, sustinēre, sustinuī, sustentum, withstand*  
 138. *dē* (prep. with the *abl.*), *with respect to*

## LESSON XLI.

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

220. *Rēs, thing, fem.**Diēs, day, mas.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> rēs	rēs	diēs	diēs
<i>Gen.</i> reī	rērum	diēī	diērum
<i>Dat.</i> reī	rēbus	diēī	diēbus
<i>Acc.</i> rem	rēs	diem	diēs
<i>Voc.</i> rēs	rēs	diēs	diēs
<i>Abl.</i> rē	rēbus	diē	diēbus

The stem of nouns in the fifth declension ends in ē. Nouns of the fifth declension are *feminine*, except *diēs*, which is generally *masculine*.

*Rēs* and *diēs* alone have the entire plural; others occur usually in the nominative and accusative plural—many have no plural.

221. **Ablative of separation.**—Separation is expressed by the ablative with or without a preposition; as,

**Caesar armīs hostēs dēspoliat,** *Caesar deprives the enemy of their arms*

222.

## VOCABULARY.

<i>spēs</i>	<i>speī, fem.</i>	<i>hope</i>
<i>fidēs</i>	<i>fideī, fem.</i>	<i>confidence</i>
<i>propīnquitās</i>	<i>-tātis, fem.</i>	<i>nearness</i>
<i>exiguitās</i>	<i>-tātis, fem.</i>	<i>shortness</i>
<i>vulnus</i>	<i>-neris, neut.</i>	<i>wound</i>
<i>summus -a -um, adj.</i>		<i>top of</i>
<i>in summō colle'</i>		<i>on the top of the hill</i>
<i>sī, conj.</i>		<i>if</i>
<i>nisi, conj.</i>		<i>unless</i>
<i>proelium committō</i>		<i>to begin battle</i>
<i>fugiō</i>		<i>to flee</i>

**223. Use of *sī* and *nisi* in conditions (335).**—*Sī* and *nisi* introduce conditional sentences. In a conditional sentence the *dependent clause*, *containing the condition*, is called the *protasis*; the clause containing the *conclusion* is called the *apodosis*.

**The more vivid future condition.**—(a) In the *more vivid future condition* the *future indicative* is used in both *protasis* and *apodosis*; as,

**Caesar pācem faciet, sī hostēs  
obsidēs dēdent,** *Caesar will make peace, if the  
enemy surrender hostages*

(b) If the conditional act is considered as *completed* before that of the *apodosis*, the *future perfect* is used in the *protasis*; as,

**Nisi hostēs omnia arma trādi-  
derint, Galba proelium com-  
mittet,** *Unless the enemy hand over all  
their arms, Galba will begin  
battle*

('Hand over' = *shall have handed over*, representing action *completed* in the *future*, before another *future action* begins.)

## 224.

### EXERCISE.

1. Caesar in servitūtem eās cīvitātēs quae cum nostrīs peditibus in Rēmōrum fīnibus proelium commisērunt facile redēgit.
2. Mīlitēs quī commeātūs petendī causā ē castrīs discesserant adventum hostium nōn cōnspēxērunt.
3. Nostrī propter propīnquitātem celeritātemque hostium capere oppidum in quō erant commeātūs et multa arma nōn potuērunt.
4. Cum Caesar in colle adventum hostium exspectāret, ducibus equitum mandāvit ut statim ē castrīs omnēs cōpiās ēdūcerent et ad proelium committendum parārent.
5. Noster imperātor in suam fidem<sup>1</sup> Rēmōs fīnitimōsque accipiet, sī eae cīvitātēs quae sine causā in

---

<sup>1</sup> *In suam fidem* = *under his protection*.

nostrōs impetum fēcērunt ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne lēgātōs mīserint. 6. Caesar in Belgās omnibus cōpiīs impetum faciet, nisi Belgae lēgātōs mīserint ut obsidēs dēdant pācemque petant. 7. Peditēs Rōmānī propter temporis exiguitātem celeritātemque hostium imperātum Caesaris nōn exspectāvērunt sed in hostēs impetum āriter fēcērunt, nē pūgnandī facultātem āmitterent.

## LESSON XLII.

### FOURTH CONJUGATION.

**225. Mūniō, I fortify.** Principal parts *mūniō*, *mūnīre*, *mūnīvī*, *mūnītūm*. The present system is as follows. The *present stem*, *mūnī*, is found by striking off *re* from the *present infinitive active*, *mūnīre*.

Present indicative.	Imperfect indicative.	Present subjunctive.
<i>I fortify.</i>	<i>was fortifying.</i>	<i>may fortify.</i>
SINGULAR.	<i>mūniēbam</i>	<i>mūniām</i>
1. <i>mūniō</i>	<i>mūniēbās</i> , etc.	<i>mūniās</i> , etc.
2. <i>mūnīs</i>		
3. <i>mūnit</i>		
PLURAL.		
1. <i>mūnīmus</i>	<i>Future indicative.</i>	<i>Imperfect subjunctive.</i>
2. <i>mūnītis</i>	<i>shall fortify.</i>	<i>might fortify.</i>
3. <i>mūniunt</i>	<i>mūniām</i>	<i>mūnīrem</i>
	<i>mūniēs</i> , etc.	<i>mūnīrēs</i> , etc.

Imperative.	Present participle.
<i>mūnī</i> , <i>fortify thou</i>	<i>mūniēns</i> , <i>fortifying</i>
<i>mūnīte</i> , <i>fortify ye</i> , etc.	

Present infinitive.	Gerund.
<i>mūnīre</i> , <i>to fortify</i>	<i>mūniendī</i> , <i>of fortifying</i>

## 226.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 1–9 (451).

<b>audiō</b>	<i>to hear</i>
<b>impediō</b>	<i>to hinder</i>
<b>veniō</b>	<i>to come</i>
<b>cōsentīō</b>	<i>to conspire</i>
<b>quis</b> , <i>interrogative pronoun</i>	<i>who?</i>
<b>aliquis</b> , <i>indefinite pronoun</i> ,	<i>any one, some one</i>
<i>quis</i> is used for <b>aliquis</b> after <b>sī</b> , <b>nisi</b> , <b>nē</b> , <b>num.</b>	

227. Demonstrative pronoun *hīc*, *this*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i> <b>hīc</b>	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
<i>Gen.</i> hūius	hūius	hūius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i> huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Acc.</i> hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Abl.</i> hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

228. Use of *nē* (*not*) in negative commands.—Imperō, mandō, and many verbs of *commanding* take *ut* + *subjunctive* in *affirmative commands*, and *nē* + *subjunctive* in *negative commands*.

Caesar imperat mīlitibus nē Caesar commands his soldiers  
oppidum incendant, not to burn the town

## 229.

## EXERCISES.

- I.—1. Hīs in locīs sunt nōn multa oppida idōnea tantae hominum multitūdinī. 2. Germānī spē expūgnandī opida multa trāns Rhēnum in Galliam suās cōpiās dūxerant. 3. Belgae omnibus cōpiīs in prōvinciam nostram ut in fidem populī Rōmānī līberōs obsidēs trādant veniunt. 4. Nisi Caesar in hās cīvitātēs quās Galba proeliīs multis in servitūtem redēgit contenderit, hostēs manūs novās cōgent ut mūnītiōnēs Rōmānās incendant. 5. Sēquānī

cum Belgīs, fīnitimīs, cōsentient et oppida sua fossīs mūrīsque mūniunt nē Caesar in potestātem populi Rōmānī cīvitātēs redigat.

II.—1. Because the enemy fear the approach of the Roman legions, they will depart out of these fortifications and leave in camp a large part of their baggage. 2. While Caesar's soldiers were fortifying that town which the Sequani had left, the Belgians made an attack upon Galba's infantry who were coming towards the town with all the baggage. 3. When Caesar saw the large number of ambassadors whom the enemy had sent into our camp, he commanded his leaders not to make (*nē + imperf. subj.*) an attack upon the enemies' forces. 4. Unless the chiefs of these states which are strong in courage and in number of men come<sup>1</sup> into our camp and ask for<sup>1</sup> peace, Caesar will lead out his infantry and lay waste their towns and fields.

## LESSON XLIII.

### FOURTH CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

#### 230. Perfect system of *mūniō*.—*Stem mūnīv.*

Perfect indicative.	Pluperfect indicative.	Perfect subjunctive.
<i>I fortified.</i>	<i>had fortified.</i>	<i>may have fortified.</i>
SINGULAR.	<i>mūnīveram,</i> <i>mūnīverās, etc.</i>	<i>mūnīverim, etc.</i>
1. <i>mūnīvī</i>		
2. <i>mūnīvistī</i>		
3. <i>mūnīvit</i>		
PLURAL.		
1. <i>mūnīvimus</i>	<b>Future-perfect indicative.</b>	<i>might have fortified.</i>
2. <i>mūnīvistis</i>	<i>shall have fortified.</i>	<i>mūnīvissem, etc.</i>
3. <i>mūnīvērunt (-ēre)</i>	<i>mūnīverō</i> <i>mūnīveris, etc.</i>	<b>Perfect infinitive.</b>
		<i>to have fortified.</i>
		<i>mūnīvisse</i>

<sup>1</sup> Future or future-perfect indicative.

Give synopsis, by stems, in entire active voice of **audiō** and **cōsentīō**.

Give synopsis in active voice of **mūniō**, by moods, etc., in the order given in (482).

### 231. Supine system of *mūniō*.—*Stem mūnīt-*

1. *First supine*      **mūnītum**,      *to fortify*
2. *Second supine*      **mūnītū**,      *to fortify*
3. *Future participle*      **mūnītūrus -a, -um**,      *being about to fortify*
4. *Future infinitive*       $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{mūnītūrum,} \\ \text{-am, -um esse,} \end{array} \right\}$       *to be about to fortify*

### 232.

### VOCABULARY.

Verbs 10–19 (451).

### 233. Demonstrative pronoun *ille*, *that*, *he*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i> <i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>illīus</i>	<i>illīus</i>	<i>illīus</i>	<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>

### 234.

### EXERCISES.

I.—1. Nisi illae cīvitātēs reliquīs cum Belgīs cōsentient ac suīs amīcīs auxilium dabunt, Gallī Caesaris exercitūs adventum impedīre nōn poterunt. 2. Exercitus noster vīcōs omnēs incendit (*perf.*) et agrōs per quōs vēnerant vāstāvit, nē hostēs illa loca incolere possent. 3. Cum Rēmī in castra sua cum impedimentīs exercitūs venīrent, nostrī in novissimum agmen impetum fēcērunt et mīlitēs perturbāvērunt. 4. Caesar hōc proeliō in servitūtem omnēs eās cīvitātēs quārum pīncipēs cum Germānīs cōsēnserant et obsidēs nōn dederant redēgit. 5. Quod hostēs, in castrīs suās manūs retinendō, nostrīs facultātem pūgnandī nōt

dedērunt, Caesar ducibus p̄imae legiōnis ut omnibus cum cohortibus ēius legiōnis ē castrīs contenderent et in mūrum oppidi impetum facerent imperāvit.

II.—1. When the enemy had lost hope with respect to withstanding the attack of our infantry, Caesar directed their chiefs to bring (*addūcō*) hostages into his camp and to surrender the town without delay. 2. At the same time ambassadors come to Caesar from all sides and bring corn and (*que*) supplies for our men, because Caesar had announced the approach of his army. 3. While the enemy were fortifying their (*omit*) camp on the top of the hill, our commanders surrounded the hill with infantry and (*que*) cavalry and began battle on all sides. 4. The Sequani into whose territories Caesar is preparing to lead a large army will ask for (*petō*) peace, in order that the Roman legions may not lay waste their fields, destroy their fortifications, and burn their towns.

## LESSON XLIV.

### FIRST CONJUGATION PASSIVE.

#### 235. Present indicative passive of *portō*.

##### SINGULAR.

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. portor, <i>I am (being) carried</i>    | 1. portāmur, <i>we are carried</i>    |
| 2. portāris (-re), <i>you are carried</i> | 2. portāminī, <i>you are carried</i>  |
| 3. portātur, <i>he is carried</i>         | 3. portantur, <i>they are carried</i> |

##### PLURAL.

The present stem is *portā* as in the active, to which are annexed the following endings.

#### Table of endings.

##### SINGULAR.

- or
- ris (-re)
- tur

##### PLURAL.

- mur
- minī
- ntur

Conjugate **postulō** and **cōservō** in the *present indicative passive*.

## 236.

## VOCABULARY.

Review verbs 1–19 (451).

Decline **īdem**, *the same* (464).

**237. Personal agent—how expressed.**—The agent or doer with a passive verb is put in the *ablative with ā or ab*. Distinguish carefully *means* or *instrument* from *agent*; thus,

(a) **Gallī ā Rōmānīs superantur**, *the Gauls are overcome by the Romans*: *by the Romans* = *persons* by whom, hence **ā** or **ab** + *ablative*, to denote *personal agent*.

(b) **agrī ignī vāstantur**, *the fields are laid waste by fire*: *by fire* = *thing* by which, hence *ablative of means or instrument* without a preposition.

## 238.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Eae cīvitātēs quae arma commētūsque trādiderunt ā nostrīs cōservantur. 2. Proelium in summō colle ab imperātōre fortī redintegrātur. 3. Fīnēs per quōs Caesar suum exercitum dūxit ā peditibus nostrīs vāstantur. 4. Dēditiō omnium armōrum ā Caesare postulātur, quod Sēquanī in Rēmōs, fīnitimōs amīcōsque populi Rōmānī, impetum āriter fēcerant. 5. Hostēs ad Caesarem liberōs prīcipum obsidēs mīsērunt nē facultātem faciendī pācem āmitterent.

II.—1. New fortifications are being built by those soldiers whom Caesar placed in camp. 2. Those states into which the Roman commanders came to enroll new legions are spared by Caesar. 3. The number of soldiers is being increased by the Roman commanders in order that the enemy may not be able to defeat our army. 4. Unless

Caesar surrounds<sup>1</sup> the town on all sides, the enemy will depart by night<sup>2</sup> and seek safety in flight. 5. The enemies' forces which made an attack upon Caesar's infantry while they were fortifying their camp, are easily routed by Galba's soldiers.

## LESSON XLV.

### FIRST CONJUGATION PASSIVE, CONTINUED.

#### 239. *Porto* continued in the indicative passive.

##### **Imperfect indicative.**

*was (being) carried.*

###### SINGULAR.

- 1. portābar
- 2. portābāris (-re)
- 3. portābātūr

###### PLURAL.

- 1. portābāmūr
- 2. portābāmīnī
- 3. portābāntūr

##### **Future indicative.**

*shall be carried.*

###### SINGULAR.

- portābor
- portāberis (-re)
- portābitūr

###### PLURAL.

- portābimūr
- portābimīnī
- portābuntūr

### Table of endings.

#### SINGULAR.

-bar

-bāris (-re)

-bātūr

#### PLURAL.

-bāmūr

-bāmīnī

-bāntūr

#### SINGULAR.

-bor

-beris (-re)

-bitūr

#### PLURAL.

-bimūr

-bimīnī

-buntūr

240. Use of *ā* or *ab*.—Ā or ab means *from* (denoting origin or source) when the adverbial phrase (*preposition + noun*) limits a verb in the *active voice*; but if the phrase limits a passive verb it may mean either *from* or *by* according as the verb which it modifies signifies origin or agency:

1. **Arma ā mūrīs portāta sunt,** *Arms were brought from the walls*
2. **Hostēs ab Gallīs auxilium** *The enemy receive aid from the accipiant,* *Gauls*
3. **Auxilium hostibus (dat.) ab** *Aid is given to the enemy by the Gauls*  
*Gallīs datur,*

<sup>1</sup> Fut. perf. indic.; see (223 b).

<sup>2</sup> noctū.

## 241.

## VOCABULARY.

Review words 1–46 in the ‘review vocabulary’ (219).

<b>auxilia</b>	<b>-ōrum</b> , <i>neut.</i>	<i>auxiliaries</i>
<b>medius</b>	<b>-a, -um</b> , <i>adj.</i>	<i>middle of</i>
<b>dē mediā nocte</b>		<i>about the middle of the night</i>
<b>eō</b> , <i>adv.</i>		<i>thither</i>
<b>ad eum</b> , <i>ad eōs</i>		<i>to him, to them</i>

242. Decline *quis*, *who?* (465).

Sometimes *is*, *ea*, *id*, *he*, *she*, *it*, is used as the personal pronoun of the third person; thus,

1. **Cum Caesar esset in Galliā**, *While Caesar was in Gaul*, *ambassadōrī ad eum vēnērunt*, *ambassadors came to him*
2. **Nisi Belgae pācem petent** (*petīverint*), *Caesar statim in eōs impetum faciet*, *Unless the Belgians ask for peace, Caesar will make an attack upon them at once*

## 243.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Causa coniūrandī erat haec, quod multī in locīs oppida Gallōrum ā militib⁹ nostrīs vāstābantur. 2. Sīgnūm ad proelium committendum ab imperātōre cūius cōpiae in silvīs cēlantur<sup>1</sup> subitō dabitur hostēsque ā legiōnibus fortibus prōfligābuntur. 3. Cum exercitus noster in extrēmā Galliā esset, obsidēs nōmine populī Rōmānī ā ducib⁹ nostrīs postulābantur et in castra Rōmāna sine morā ab hostib⁹ portābantur. 4. Potestās populī Rōmānī inter eās cīvitātēs quārum virtūs māgna est ā Caesare amplificābitur, nē hostēs commeātibus nostrōs prohibeant. 5. Eōdem tempore oppida Sēquanōrum ab his cōpiis quibus Galba tēla nova dedit occupantur, quod ad Caesarem de pāce lēgātōs nōn mīserunt.

II.—1. The enemy fled with all their baggage out of the territories through which our men were coming, because

<sup>1</sup> The present indicative passive denotes the *continuance of an action in the present*; **cēlantur** = ‘are being concealed.’

they feared the power of our army. 2. The brave soldiers of the second legion were overcome by many wounds, which they received when they made an attack upon the Germans. 3. While Caesar was wintering among the Remi whose fields are next to the Roman province, corn and supplies were carried to him by many states. 4. When the enemy saw the high towers which were being built by our men so that they might storm the walls of the town, they at once surrendered to Caesar the children of their chiefs as hostages and asked for peace.

## LESSON XLVI.

### FIRST CONJUGATION PASSIVE, CONTINUED.

**244.** *Portō* continued in the present system passive.

#### Present subjunctive.

*may be carried.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. porter	portēmūr	portārēr	portārēmūr
2. portēris (-re)	portēminī	portārēris (-re)	portārēminī
3. portētur	portentur	portārētūr	portārentur

#### Imperative.

##### SINGULAR.

- 2. { portāre, *be thou carried*
- { portātor, *thou shalt be carried*
- 3. portātor, *he shall be carried*

##### PLURAL.

- 2. portāminī, *be ye carried*
- 3. portantor, *they shall be carried*

#### Present infinitive.

#### Gerundive.

portārī, *to be carried*    portandus, -a, -um, (*worthy*) *to be carried*

**245.** This completes the *eight* forms in the *passive*, based upon the *present stem* *portā*. The *present stem* *portā* undergoes a change in the *present subjunctive* where final ā

becomes ē. Compare the *ending* of the *present infinitive active* (āre) with that of the *present infinitive passive* (ārī).

**246. Synopsis of portō in the present system passive.—*Stem portā.***

1. <i>Present indicative</i>	portor,	<i>I am being carried</i>
2. <i>Imperfect indicative</i>	portābar,	<i>I was being carried</i>
3. <i>Future indicative</i>	portābor,	<i>I shall be carried</i>
4. <i>Present subjunctive</i>	porter,	<i>I may be carried</i>
5. <i>Imperfect subjunctive</i>	portārer,	<i>I might be carried</i>
6. <i>Imperative</i>	portāre,	<i>be thou carried</i>
7. <i>Present infinitive</i>	portārī,	<i>to be carried</i>
8. <i>Gerundive</i>	portandus -a -um, ( <i>worthy</i> )	<i>to be carried</i>

**247.****VOCABULARY.**

Review words 47–92, in ‘review vocabulary’ (219).

vadum, -ī, neut.	<i>ford</i>
concilium, -ī, neut.	<i>council of war</i>
post, prep. with the acc.	<i>behind or after</i>
prōtinus, adv.	<i>immediately</i>
atque, conj.	<i>and also</i>

**248.****EXERCISES.**

I.—1. Proximō diē Caesar fortibus equitātūs duecibus ut in Sēquanōrum fīnēs cōpiās omnēs dūcerent imperāvit. nē auxilia ā Sēquānis ad Aeduōs portārentur. 2. Belgae, quod nostrī exercitūs quem timēbant adventum audīverant (*had heard of*), ad Germānōs, fīnitimōs, lēgātōs mīsērunt ut ab eīs cīvitātibus quae populō Rōmānō sē nōndum dēdiderant auxilia impetrārent. 3. Nisi Galba suōs mīlitēs in novissimum agmen Belgārum impetum facere iusserit commeātibusque eōs prohibuerit, Belgae ex Ītaliā contendent et cum Germānīs coniūrābunt. 4. Cum Caesar castra mūnīret, lēgātī ex māgnā parte Galliae ad eum vēnērunt atque ut in dēditionem eōs acciperet petīvērunt.

II.—1. Because the Belgians burned our fortifications in the territories of Gaul, a large number of hostages was demanded by Caesar according to his custom. 2. Galba will enroll new legions and hasten (*properō*) into the boundaries of the Gauls whose fields are being laid waste by the Germans, so that aid may be given to his friends<sup>1</sup> and the enemy may be overcome. 3. A camp will be placed (*conlocō*) on the top of the hill and the battle will be renewed by those commanders whose brave forces have defeated (*pellō*) the enemy in many battles.

## LESSON XLVII.

### FIRST CONJUGATION PASSIVE, PERFECT SYSTEM.

#### 249. Principal parts of *portō* in the passive:

**Present indicative.** **Present infinitive.** **Perfect indicative.**

<b>portor</b>	<b>portārī</b>	<b>portātus sum</b>
---------------	----------------	---------------------

The perfect stem *portāv* does not occur in the passive voice.

The remaining *eight forms* of the passive are based upon the *supine stem portāt* which is seen in the *perfect passive participle*, *portātus*; these compose the *perfect system* of the passive.

#### 250. Perfect system of *portō* in the passive.—*Stem portāt.*

<b>Perfect indicative.</b>	<b>Perfect subjunctive.</b>
----------------------------	-----------------------------

<i>have been—was carried.</i>	<i>may have been carried.</i>
-------------------------------	-------------------------------

##### SINGULAR.

1. <i>portātus, -a, -um sum</i>	
---------------------------------	--

2. " " " es	
-------------	--

3. " " " est	
--------------	--

##### SINGULAR.

portātus, -a, -um sim	
-----------------------	--

" " " sis	
-----------	--

" " " sit	
-----------	--

##### PLURAL.

1. <i>portātī, -ae, -a sumus</i>	
----------------------------------	--

2. " " " estis	
----------------	--

3. " " " sunt	
---------------	--

##### PLURAL.

portātī, -ae, -a sīmus	
------------------------	--

" " " sītis	
-------------	--

" " " sint	
------------	--

<sup>1</sup> *Suis amīcīs.*

**Pluperfect indicative.***had been carried.*

## SINGULAR.

1. portātus, -a, -um eram
2. " " " erās
3. " " " erat

## PLURAL.

1. portātī, -ae, -a erāmus
2. " " " erātis
3. " " " erant

**Future-perfect indicative.***shall have been carried.*

## SINGULAR.

1. portātus, -a, -um erō
2. " " " eris
3. " " " erit

## PLURAL.

1. portātī, -ae, -a erimus
2. " " " eritis
3. " " " erunt

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***might have been carried.*

## SINGULAR.

- portātus, -a, -um essem
- " " " essēs
- " " " esset

## PLURAL.

- portātī, -ae, -a essēmus
- " " " essētis
- " " " essent

**Perfect infinitive.***portātum, -am, -um esse  
to have been carried.***Future infinitive.***portātum irī  
to be about to be carried***Perfect participle.***portātus, -a, -um  
having been carried.*

**251.** The above compound tenses are formed by annexing parts of the verb **sum** to the perfect passive participle, **portātus, -a, -um**.

The participial parts of these tenses, such as **portātus, -a, -um**, **portātī, -ae, -a**, **portātum, -am, -um**, etc., are made to agree in *gender, number, and case* with the *subject* of the verb.

**252.****VOCABULARY.**

Review words 93–138 in ‘review vocabulary’ (**219**).

**253. The gerundive construction.**—Instead of the accusative-object with the gerund (noun), put the *object* in the *case* in which the gerund would stand (*were it used*), and place the *gerundive* (adjective) in agreement with this noun in the *same gender, number, and case*. When the verb is followed by an object, the gerundive rather than the gerund is almost always used.

1. By drawing up a line of battle: the gerund construction is **instruendō aciem**; change **aciem** to the *ablative* **aciē** (the case indicated by **instruendō**); place the gerundive **instruendus** in the *ablative, singular, feminine* to agree with **aciē** and the phrase is correctly written **aciē instruendā**.

2. By destroying the fortifications: the gerund construction is **dēlendō mūnītiōnēs**; gerundive, **mūnītiōnibus dēlendis**.

#### 254. Commit to memory the following :

1. **Imperātor amātus est,** *The commander has been or was loved*
2. **Virtus amāta est,** *Courage has been or was loved*
3. **Nōmen amātum est,** *The name was loved*
4. **Militēs amātī sunt,** *The soldiers were loved*
5. **Civitātēs amātāe sunt,** *The states were loved*
6. **Castra amāta sunt,** *The camp has been loved*

### LESSON XLVIII.

#### FIRST CONJUGATION PASSIVE. ADJECTIVES USED AS SUBSTANTIVES.

#### 255. Synopsis of the passive—first conjugation—by stems.

##### *Present system, stem portā.*

1. <i>Present indicative</i>	portor
2. <i>Imperfect indicative</i>	portābar
3. <i>Future indicative</i>	portābor
4. <i>Present subjunctive</i>	porter
5. <i>Imperfect subjunctive</i>	portārer
6. <i>Imperative</i>	portāre
7. <i>Present infinitive</i>	portāri
8. <i>Gerundive</i>	portandus

##### *Perfect system, stem portāt.*

1. <i>Perfect indicative</i>	portātus -a, -um sum <sup>1</sup>
2. <i>Pluperfect indicative</i>	portātus -a. -um eram

---

<sup>1</sup> The perfect indicative passive (*indefinite perfect*) represents the action as *past*, without reference to its *duration, merely as something ended*.

3. Future-perfect indicative	portātus, -a, -um erō
4. Perfect subjunctive	portātus, -a, -um sim
5. Pluperfect subjunctive	portātus, -a, -um essem
6. Perfect infinitive	portātum, -am, -um esse
7. Future infinitive	portātum īrī
8. Perfect participle	portātus, -a, -um

Conjugate the entire verb **amō**, *active* and *passive*, as given in (474, 475).

## 256.

## VOCABULARY.

Review verbs 1–41 (450).

**257. Perfect passive participle.**—The perfect passive participle (p. p. p.) is found by changing final **m** of the *first supine* to **s**: *moveō*, *movēre*, *mōvī*, *mōtum*; supine *mōtum*, p. p. p. *mōtus*, -a, -um, *having been moved*. *cōgnōscō*, *cōgnōscere*, *cōgnōvī*, *cōgnitum*; supine *cōgnitum*, p. p. p. *cōgnitus*, *having been found out*.

**258. Adjectives used as substantives.**—The *adjective* in the *masculine plural* is often used as a noun, meaning *men*, *soldiers*, *friends*, etc.; as, *ad eōs*, *to those (men)*; *prīmōrum*, *of the foremost (men)*; *reliquī*, *the rest*; *ad suōs*, *to his or their own (friends)*;—so **noster** in the masculine plural: *nostri*, *our men*.

The *adjective* in the *neuter plural*, as a substantive, means *things* or *possessions*; as, *ea*, *those (things)*; *haec*, *these (things)*; *sua omnia*, *all his or their (possessions)*.

## 259.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Multa Gallōrum castella ā ncstrīs quī conlocatī erant in hībernīs in Galliā occupāta sunt. 2. Proelium ab eīs quōs Caesar in Sēquanōrum fīnīs mīsit redintegrātum est. 3. Lēgatī Rōmānī in extrēmās Galliae partēs vēnērunt ut ea quae hostēs facerent<sup>1</sup> cōgnōserent.

<sup>1</sup> were doing : for mood of **facerent** see (276)—‘subjunctive by attraction.’

4. Omnia quae erant idōnea bellō ā Belgīs comparāta erant, quod adventum nostrī exercitūs exspectābant.  
 5. Eī quibus Galba loca in Galliā ad hiemandum dedit ā Gallīs fortibus facile prōturbāti sunt. 6. Gallī spē<sup>1</sup> pācis faciendaē obsidēs dēdēnt.

II.—1. All who handed over arms and (*que*) gave hostages were spared by our leaders and called friends of the Roman people. 2. About the middle of the night Caesar will send scouts into those territories, in which the camp of the Germans has been placed, to find out those things which the enemy are doing.<sup>2</sup> 3. The rest of the Gauls (*nom.*) from whom Caesar had received hostages were incited by the enemies of the Roman people. 4. When (*ubi*) the ambassador of the Belgians came into our camp, Caesar ordered him to surrender to the Roman people all the fields on this side of the river Rhine. 5. The Gauls surround their towns with high walls that they may not be overcome by the Romans.

### LESSON XLIX.

#### SECOND CONJUGATION. PASSIVE OF DĒLEŌ.

**260.** The present system of *dēleō* continued in the passive.

Present indicative.	Imperfect indicative.	Future indicative.
<i>am being destroyed.</i>	<i>was being destroyed.</i>	<i>shall be destroyed.</i>
SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
1. dēleor	dēlēbar	dēlēbor
2. dēlēris (-re)	dēlēbāris (-re)	dēlēberis (-re)
3. dēlētur	dēlēbātur	dēlēbitur
PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.
1. dēlēmur	dēlēbāmur	dēlēbimur
2. dēlēminī	dēlēbāminī	dēlēbiminī
3. dēlēntur	dēlēbāntur	dēlēbuntur

<sup>1</sup> Abl. of cause: *because of their hope.*

<sup>2</sup> *Faciant*; see (276).

The present stem is *dēlē*, as in the *active*. The *personal endings* are the *same* as in the *corresponding* tenses of the *first-conjugation verb*. Avoid putting in an extra syllable in the second person singular, present indicative; it is *dē-lē-ris*, not *dē-lē-e-ris*.

**261. Compare carefully the following tenses:**

**First conjugation,  
present subjunctive.**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. porter	portēmur
2. portēris (-re)	portēminī
3. portētur	portentur

**Second conjugation,  
present indicative.**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
dēleor	dēlēmur
dēleris (-re)	dēlēminī
dēletur	dēlentur

When the verb ends in *ētur*, *entur*, etc., it is *present subjunctive* in the *first conjugation*, *present indicative* in the *second conjugation*.

**262.**

**VOCABULARY.**

**Verbs 42–48 (450).**

sagittārius, sagittārī, <i>mas.</i>	<i>bowman</i>
funditor, funditōris, <i>mas.</i>	<i>slinger</i>
quīnque, <i>indecl. num. adj.</i>	<i>five</i>
circiter, <i>adv.</i>	<i>about</i>
cum, <i>conj.</i>	<i>after</i>
trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trāductum,	<i>to lead across</i>
perveniō, pervenire, pervēnī, peruentum,	<i>to arrive at</i>
pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum,	<i>to drive</i>
tum, <i>adv.</i>	<i>then</i>

**263. Cum + pluperfect subjunctive (203, 359).—Cum, when, in the sense of ‘after,’ takes the pluperfect subjunctive, translated like the pluperfect indicative; as,**

Cum Caesar in Galliam iter fēcisset, multae cīvitātēs ad eum lēgātōs dē pāce mīsē-	After Caesar had marched into Gaul, many states sent ambassadors to him with respect to peace
runt,	

**264.**

**EXERCISES.**

I.—1. Exercitus noster in Galliā distinētur, nē rēgnūm ā Caesaris hostibus occupētur. 2. Fossae quae oppidum

circumdant corporibus eōrum quī peditum Rōmānōrum impetum nōn sustinuērunt complentur. 3. Cum Caesar eō vēnisset, Rēmī quōrum cīvitātēs proximae Belgīs sunt ad eum prīcipēs lēgātōs, ut eī<sup>1</sup> sua omnia trādant, mittunt. 4. Caesar māgnō numerō cōpiārum fortium collem in quō hostēs sua castra mūniēbant circumdedit lēgātīsque, ut in eōs māgnā cum virtūte impetum āriter facerent, imperāvit.

II.—1. Unless Caesar leads<sup>2</sup> the bowmen and (que) slingers across the bridge and prevents<sup>2</sup> the departure of the enemy, he will not receive the hostages which he had demanded. 2. That state, from (ā) which auxiliaries came so that they might aid our army, will not be attacked by the Roman soldiers. 3. Because the Remi are ready to give hostages and receive him in their towns, Caesar will command the Belgians not to lead the army through that state. 4. After the Remi had surrendered all their (possessions), Caesar ordered them to inhabit that part of Gaul from which he had driven (expellō) the bands of the enemy.

## LESSON L.

### SECOND CONJUGATION. PASSIVE OF DĒLEŌ, CONTINUED.

**265.** The present system of *dēleō* completed in the passive.

Decline *ūnus*, *duo*, and *trēs* (468).

#### Present subjunctive.

*may be destroyed.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. dēlear	dēlēamur	dēlērer	dēlērēmur
2. dēleāris (-re)	dēlēamīnī	dēlērēris (-re)	dēlērēminī
3. dēleātūr	dēlēantur	dēlērētūr	dēlērentur

#### Imperfect subjunctive.

*might be destroyed.*

<sup>1</sup> Dative.

<sup>2</sup> Future or future-perfect indicative.

**Imperative.***be thou destroyed, etc.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
2. { dēlēre	dēlēminī
dēlētor	
3. dēlētor	dēlentor

**Present infinitive.***dēlērī, to be destroyed***Gerundive.***dēlēndus, -a, -um, (worthy) to  
be destroyed*

The *stem* is **dēlē**: this completes the *present system* of eight forms based upon **dēlē**.

**266.** Compare carefully the following tenses :

**First conjugation, present indicative, stem *portā*.**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. portor	portāmūr
2. portāris (-re)	portāmīnī
3. portātūr	portantur

**Second conjugation, present subjunctive, stem *dēlē*.**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
dēlear	dēleāmūr
dēleāris (-re)	dēleāmīnī
dēleātūr	dēleantur

Thus when a verb ends in **ātūr**, **antūr**, etc., it is *present indicative* in the *first conjugation*, *present subjunctive* in the *second conjugation*.

**267.****VOCABULARY.****Verbs 49–55 (450).**

ūnus, ūna, ūnum, <i>num.</i> <i>adj.</i>	<i>one</i>
quantus, quanta, quantum, <i>adj.</i>	<i>how great</i>
neque . . . neque, <i>conj.</i>	<i>neither . . . nor</i>
celeriter, <i>adv.</i>	<i>quickly</i>
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, <i>emphatic pron.</i>	<i>he, self</i>
quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaeſitūm,	<i>to inquire</i>
palūs, palūdis, <i>fem.</i>	<i>swamp</i>
coniungo, coniungere, coniūnxī, coniūnctūm,	<i>to join</i>

**268.****EXERCISES.**

I.—1. Omnes reliquī Belgae in armis sunt Germāni que quī cis Rhēnum incolunt sē cum hīs coniūnxērunt, nē sua oppida ā nostrīs dēleantur. 2. Cum Germānī suās cōpiās trāns Rhēnum trādūxissent, ibi cōnsēdērunt Gallōsque quī ea loca incolēbant armis expulērunt. 3. Cum ab hīs

Caesar quaereret quantae cīvitātēs in armīs essent<sup>1</sup> atque quantum exercitum hostēs cōgere possent,<sup>2</sup> haec reperiēbat. 4. Palūs erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum et hostēs trāns hanc suās cōpiās trādūcere parābant. 5. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est contendērunt.

II.—1. Caesar leads out all the army and prepares to storm the walls so that the town may be destroyed and many weapons may be seized. 2. After Caesar had come into those parts in which he had placed (*pōnō*) his camp, many states joined themselves with our army so that their children might not be carried into slavery. 3. While Caesar was inquiring of (*ab*) the scouts with respect to the number of the enemy, ambassadors of the Germans came into our camp and surrendered themselves and (*que*) all their (possessions) to Caesar (*dative*). 4. After Caesar had driven the enemy out of these boundaries and had received a suitable number of hostages, he led his soldiers back into camp.

## LESSON LI.

### SECOND CONJUGATION. PASSIVE OF DĒLEŌ, CONTINUED.

**269.** Principal parts of *dēleō* in the passive: *dēteor*, *dēlērī*, *dēlētus sum*.

For the tense names of these forms, see (249).

Perfect system of *dēleō* in the passive.—*Stem dēlēt.*

#### Perfect indicative.

*have been—was—destroyed.*

##### SINGULAR.

1. *dēlētus*, -a, -um sum

2. " " " es

3. " " " est

##### PLURAL.

*dēlētī*. ae, -a sumus

" " " estis

" " " sunt

<sup>1</sup> were.    <sup>2</sup> were able; for mood in both, see (313), 'indirect question.'

### Pluperfect indicative.

*had been destroyed.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
1.	dēlētus, -a, -um	eram	dēlētī, -ae, -a	erāmus	
2.	" " "	erās	" " "	erātis	
3.	" " "	erat	" " "	erant	

### Future-perfect indicative.

*shall have been destroyed.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
1.	dēlētus, -a, -um	erō	dēlētī, -ae, -a	erimus	
2.	" " "	eris	" " "	eritis	
3.	" " "	erit	" " "	erunt	

### Perfect subjunctive.

*may have been destroyed.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
1.	dēlētus, -a, -um	sim	dēlētī, -ae, -a	sīmus	
2.	" " "	sīs	" " "	sītis	
3.	" " "	sit	" " "	sint	

### Pluperfect subjunctive.

*might have been destroyed.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
1.	dēlētus, -a, -um	essem	dēlētī, -ae, -a	essēmus	
2.	" " "	essēs	" " "	essētis	
3.	" " "	esset	" " "	essent	

### Perfect infinitive.

dēlētum, -am, -um esse, *to have been destroyed*

### Future infinitive.

dēlētum īrī, *to be about to be destroyed*

### Perfect participle.

dēlētus, -a, -um, *having been destroyed*

**270.** *Synopsis, present system, passive.—Present stem dēlē.*

1. <i>Present indicative</i>	dēleor
2. <i>Imperfect indicative</i>	dēlēbar
3. <i>Future indicative</i>	dēlēbor
4. <i>Present subjunctive</i>	dēlear
5. <i>Imperfect subjunctive</i>	dēlērer
6. <i>Imperative</i>	dēlēre
7. <i>Present infinitive</i>	dēlēri
8. <i>Gerundive</i>	dēlēndus

*Perfect system, passive.—Stem dēlēt, seen in the perfect participle, dēlētus.*

1. <i>Perfect indicative</i>	dēlētus, -a, -um sum
2. <i>Pluperfect indicative</i>	dēlētus, -a, -um eram
3. <i>Future-perfect indicative</i>	dēlētus, -a, -um erō
4. <i>Perfect subjunctive</i>	dēlētus, -a, -um sim
5. <i>Pluperfect subjunctive</i>	dēlētus, -a, -um essem
6. <i>Perfect infinitive</i>	dēlētum, -am, -um esse
7. <i>Future infinitive</i>	dēlētum irī
8. <i>Perfect participle</i>	dēlētus, -a, -um

## 271.

### VOCABULARY.

#### Verbs 56–64 (450).

## 272.

### EXERCISES.

I.—1. Cīvitātēs multae, quod cōpiae superātac erant atque sua oppida ā nostrīs occupāta et dēlēta erant, in fidem Caesaris sē suaque omnia permīsērunt. 2. Caesar, ubi eae cōpiae quās Germānī trāns Rhēnum trādūxerant in summō monte ā nostrīs vīsae sunt, mīlitibus legiōnis prīmae ut in eās impetum facerent imperāvit. 3. Nisi legiōnēs novae comparābuntur<sup>1</sup> ac castra nostra ex eō locō movēbuntur,<sup>2</sup> imperātōrēs Rōmānī neque in Galliā agrōs lātōs possidēre neque nōmen populī Rōmānī amplificāre poterunt. 4. Caesar suīs peditibus nē inīquō locō proelium

<sup>1</sup> comparābuntur or comparātac erunt; see (223 a, b).

<sup>2</sup> What other form may be used?

committant mandat. 5. Galba in servitūtem Belgās quōrum oppida frūmentō commeātibusque complentur rediget.

II.—1. While Caesar was emolling a new legion in that state which had been overcome, the Germans were preparing to make an attack upon him with a large army. 2. After the Aedui had entrusted themselves and (*que*) all their (possessions) to (*in + acc.*) the power and protection of the Roman people, Caesar ordered them to settle in farthest Gaul. 3. By preparing<sup>1</sup> a large army and surrounding<sup>1</sup> their towns with new ramparts the enemy were able to cut off (*prohibeō*) our men from<sup>2</sup> their supplies and withstand the attacks of the Roman legions. 4. Caesar directs his commanders to separate their forces and drive the enemy out of the boundaries of Gaul. 5. When (*ubi*) the first baggage of our army was seen by those who were concealed in the forests, the leaders of the enemy ordered all their forces to rush forth.

## LESSON LII.

### THIRD CONJUGATION. PASSIVE OF PŌNŌ.

#### 273. The present system of *pōnō* in the passive.

Decline *vīs*, *mīlia*, and *īnsīgne* (458, 459).

**Present indicative. Imperfect indicative. Future indicative.**  
*am being placed.*      *was being placed.*      *shall be placed.*

SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
1. pōnor	pōnēbar	pōnar
2. pōneris (-re)	pōnēbāris (-re)	pōnēris (-re)
3. pōnitur	pōnēbātūr	pōnētūr
PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.
1. pōnimur	pōnēbāmūr	pōnēmūr
2. pōnimīnī	pōnēbāmīnī	pōnēmīnī
3. pōnuntur	pōnēbāntūr	pōnēntūr

<sup>1</sup> 'Gerundive construction'; see (253).

<sup>2</sup> Abl. without prep. to denote separation; see (221).

Conjugate **mittō**, **cōgō**, and **expellō** in the above tenses.  
The *present stem* is **pōne**; for change in *stem-vowel*, see (180).

### 274. Table of endings.

PRESENT INDICATIVE.		FUTURE INDICATIVE.	
-or	-imur	-ar	-ēmur
-eris (-re)	-iminī	-ēris (-re)	-ēminī
-itur	-untur	-ētur	-entur

A verb ending in **ētur**, **entur**, etc., is *present subjunctive* in the *first conjugation*, *present indicative* in the *second conjugation*, *future indicative* in the *third conjugation*.

### 275.

### VOCABULARY.

#### Verbs 65–70 (450).

<b>iter</b> <i>facere</i> ,	<i>to march</i>
<b>sēcum</b> = ( <i>cum sē</i> ),	<i>with himself or themselves</i>
<b>poscō</b> (see vocab. for princ. parts),	<i>to demand</i>
<b>repellō</b> “ “ “ “ “	<i>to drive back</i>
<b>aut</b> , <i>conj.</i>	<i>or</i>

**276. Intermediate clauses—mood.**—**Qui** clause: a simple *relative clause*, introducing only a descriptive fact, has its verb in the *indicative*. **Quod** clause: *causal clauses* introduced by **quod**, **quia**, and **quoniam** have the verb in the *indicative*, when the reason given is vouched for by the writer or speaker; *subjunctive*, when the reason is given on the authority of another. These clauses take the verb in the *subjunctive by attraction*, when they form a necessary part of a *subjunctive clause* upon which they depend.

Example of a *relative clause* the verb of which is in the *subjunctive by attraction*:

<b>Nostrī in Galliam contendunt ut oppidum quod commēatibus armisque compleātur oppūgnent,</b>	<i>Our men hasten into Gaul to attack a town which is being filled with arms and supplies</i>
--	---

Here the *verb* in the *relative clause*, **quod . . . compleātur**, which is within an **ut clause** and forms an essential part of it, is *drawn into the subjunctive*.

## 277.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. *Sī obsidēs Caesarī dabuntur (datī erunt) ā Gallīs, omnēs Germānī ex fīnibus Galliae expellentur.* 2. *Germānī, cum in prōvinciam nostram et Ītaliā iter facerent, ea impedīmenta quae sēcum nōn portāre poterant eis Rhēnum flūmen relīquerunt.* 3. *Caesar Sēquanīs fīnitimīsque imperābit nē Rēmōs ā quibus auxilium multum accēperit<sup>1</sup> exagitent.* 4. *Belgæ, ā quibus proelium redintegrātum est cum nostrī sua castra mūnīrent, facile celeriterque ab equitātū fugātī sunt.* 5. *Spē imperī dēlendī populī Rōmānī, māgnus exercitus ab eis cīvitātibus quae adventū legiōnum Rōmānarūm perterritæ sunt cōgitur.*

II.—1. Caesar will make peace with those from whom he has received corn and supplies. 2. Because of the courage<sup>2</sup> of our infantry the enemy were alarmed and fled into the nearest fortifications. 3. The Aedui whose forces joined themselves with the rest of the enemy will be quickly defeated (*prōturbō*) and reduced to<sup>3</sup> subjection by Caesar's brave generals. 4. Scouts will be sent forward by Caesar to find out those (things) which are being prepared<sup>4</sup> in the enemy's camp.

<sup>1</sup> Subjunctive by attraction (276); perfect by 'rule of sequence' (135).

<sup>2</sup> Because of the courage: **virtūte, abl. of cause.**

<sup>3</sup> in + acc.

<sup>4</sup> Why subjunctive? What tense?

## LESSON LIII.

THIRD CONJUGATION. PASSIVE OF PŌNŌ, CONTINUED.

**278.** The present system of *pōnō* completed in the passive.—*Stem pōne.*

**Present subjunctive.***may be placed.***Imperfect subjunctive.***might be placed.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. pōnar	pōnāmur	pōnerer	pōnerēmur
2. pōnāris (-re)	pōnāminī	pōnerēris (-re)	pōnerēminī
3. pōnātur	pōnantur	pōnerētur	pōnerentur

**Imperative.***be thou placed, etc.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
2. { pōnere pōnitor	pōnimini
3. pōnitor	pōnuntor

**Present infinitive.***pōnī, to be placed***Gerundive.***pōnendus, (worthy) to be placed*

**279.** To form the *present infinitive passive* of a verb of the *third conjugation*, change *ere* of the present infinitive active to *i*. *cōgō*: present infinitive active *cōgere*, present infinitive passive *cōgi*. *mittō*: present infinitive active *mittere*, present infinitive passive *mittī*. *gerō*: present infinitive active *gerere*, present infinitive passive *gerī*. When a verb ends in *ātur*, *antur*, etc., it is *present indicative* in the *first conjugation*, *present subjunctive* in the *other conjugations*.

## 280.

## VOCABULARY.

Verbs 71–75 (450).

dexter, dextra, dextrum, <i>adj.</i>	<i>right</i>
ā dextrō cornū,	<i>on the right wing</i>
paene, <i>adv.</i>	<i>almost</i>
aut . . . aut, <i>conj.</i>	<i>either . . . or</i>
tōtus, tōta, tōtum, <i>adj.</i>	<i>entire</i> [to retreat
sē recipere,	<i>to betake one's self or</i>

281. Synopsis of the present system, passive, of pōnō.—  
Present stem pōne.

1. Present indicative	pōnor
2. Imperfect indicative	pōnēbar
3. Future indicative	pōnar
4. Present subjunctive	pōnar
5. Imperfect subjunctive	pōnerer
6. Imperative	pōnere
7. Present infinitive	pōnī
8. Gerundive	pōnendus

Give synopsis, present system, passive, of dūcō, mittō, dēdō, and incendō.

## 282. Comparative table of endings.

First and second conjugations.

## FUTURE INDICATIVE.

## Active.

## Passive.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. -bō	-bimus	-bor	-bimur
2. -bis	-bitis	-beris (-re)	-bimini
3. -bit	-bunt	-bitur	-buntur

Third and fourth conjugations.

## FUTURE INDICATIVE.

## Active.

## Passive.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. -am	-ēmus	-ar	-ēmur
2. -ēs	-ētis	-ēris (-re)	-ēminī
3. -et	-ent	-ētur	-entur

## 283.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Cum Caesar hōc bellum cōnfēcisset, inter eās cīvitātēs quās pepulerat (*pellō*) in hībernīs omnīs cohortēs prīmae atque secundae legiōnis posuit. 2. Cum imperātōrēs hostiū aut vulnerātī aut superātī essent, omnēs mīlitēs perterritī sunt et ad Germānōs, fīnitimōs, sē recēpērunt. 3. Caesar cum omnibus cōpiīs in Belgārum fīnīs iter facit ut hostēs expellantur aut in servitūtem redigan-  
tur; adventū hōrum hostēs in oppidum māgnum quod mūrō altō mūnīverant sē recipiunt. 4. Mūnītiōnēs multae ā Gallīs in suīs fīnībus exstruentur nē sua castella aedifi-  
ciaque adventū (*upon the arrival*) exercitūs nostrī incen-  
dantur.

II.—1. After all the cavalry had been summoned out of camp, Caesar's forces surrounded the enemy's winter-quarters on all sides in order that they might not be able to depart in the night. 2. Brave soldiers are placed (*pōnō*) in the foremost line,<sup>1</sup> because the enemy have a great multitude of men and will make a fierce<sup>2</sup> attack upon our men. 3. While Caesar was marching thither, scouts were sent forward by the Gauls to find out the plans of our commanders and to cut off our men from supplies.

## LESSON LIV.

## PASSIVE OF PŌNŌ, CONTINUED. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

284. Principal parts of *pōnō*.

*Active*, pōnō pōnere posuī positum  
*Passive*, pōnor pōnī positus sum

<sup>1</sup> in prīmā acie.<sup>2</sup> Adverb.

Synopsis of the perfect system, passive, of *pōnō*.—*Stem posit*, seen in the perfect passive participle, *positus*.

- |                                     |                               |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Perfect indicative</i>        | <i>positus, -a, -um sum</i>   |
| 2. <i>Pluperfect indicative</i>     | <i>positus, -a, -um eram</i>  |
| 3. <i>Future-perfect indicative</i> | <i>positus, -a, -um erō</i>   |
| 4. <i>Perfect subjunctive</i>       | <i>positus, -a, -um sim</i>   |
| 5. <i>Pluperfect subjunctive</i>    | <i>positus, -a, -um essem</i> |
| 6. <i>Perfect infinitive</i>        | <i>positum, -am, -um esse</i> |
| 7. <i>Future infinitive</i>         | <i>positum iri</i>            |
| 8. <i>Perfect participle</i>        | <i>positus, -a, -um</i>       |

Conjugate the entire verb *pōnō* in both voices, as given in (478, 479).

### 285. VOCABULARY.

#### Verbs 76–86 (450).

<i>inde, adv.</i>	<i>thence or then</i>
<i>nam, conj.</i>	<i>for</i>
<i>proximē, adv.</i>	<i>lately</i>
<i>expeditus, -a, -um, adj.</i>	<i>light-armed</i>
<i>cōsuētūdō, -dinis, fem.</i>	<i>custom or habit</i>

286. Adjectives with the genitive in *iūs* and the dative in *i*.—The following adjectives (o-stems) have the genitive singular in *iūs* and the *dative* in *i*:

<i>ūnus, one</i>	<i>alius, other or another</i>
<i>ūllus, any</i>	<i>uter, which (of two)</i>
<i>nūllus, no, none</i>	<i>neuter, neither</i>
<i>sōlus, alone, only</i>	<i>alter, the other (of two)</i>
<i>tōtus, whole, entire</i>	

These words are declined regularly in the plural, like *altus*. The vocative is lacking in all save *sōlus* and *ūnus*.

The *i* of the genitive singular ending *iūs* is long except in *alterius*.

*Tōtus* is thus declined in the singular:

	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>tōtus</i>	<i>tōtā</i>	<i>tōtūm</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>tōtīus</i>	<i>tōtīus</i>	<i>tōtīus</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>tōtī</i>	<i>tōtī</i>	<i>tōtī</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>tōtūm</i>	<i>tōtām</i>	<i>tōtūm</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>tōtō</i>	<i>tōtā</i>	<i>tōtō</i>

**287. Ablative absolute.**—A noun or pronoun in the *ablative* may be used with a *participle* in agreement to define the *time* or *circumstances* of an action; such a phrase is called an *ablative absolute* and serves in the place of a *subordinate clause*.

*Examples of the ablative absolute:*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Pāce factā,   | <i>Peace having been made</i>   |
| 2. Obsidibus datīs,  | <i>Hostages having been given</i>   |
| 3. Obsidibus acceptīs Caesar<br>suū exercitū ex hos-<br>tium fīnibus ēdūxit, | <i>Hostages having been received,<br/>Caesar led his army out of<br/>the enemies' territories</i> |

**288.** The noun and participle in the *ablative absolute* may each have one or more modifiers; as,

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| Tōtō exercitū in aciē īstrūc-<br>tō, Caesar sīgnūm proeliī<br>dedit, | <i>The whole army having been<br/>drawn up in line of battle,<br/>Caesar gave the signal for<br/>battle</i> |
|--|---|

**Tōtō**, the adjective, limits **exercitū** in the *ablative singular masculine*; the adverbial phrase *in aciē* modifies *īstrūctō*; the ablative absolute **tōtō . . . īstrūctō** represents a subordinate clause *defining the time of the action of the verb dedit*.

In the above *ablative absolute exercitū*, the *basis* or *principal word*, takes the participle *īstrūctō* into agreement with it; in rendering the *ablative absolute* by a *subordinate clause* the *basis* (noun or pronoun in the ablative) becomes the *subject*, and the *participle* a *finite verb*; thus, **exercitū īstrūctō**, *when or after the army had been or was drawn up*.

## 289.

### EXERCISE.

1. Caesar necessāriīs rēbus imperātīs ad cohortandōs mīlitēs dēcucurrit et ad legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. 2. Nostrī propter propīnquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil

---

<sup>1</sup>That is, *after, when, because* hostages had been received.

iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē<sup>1</sup> quae<sup>2</sup> vidēbantur administrābant. 3. Temporis brevitās et successus hostium māgnam hārum rērum partem impediēbat; sed nostrī, quod superiōribus (*former*) proeliis exercitātī erant, nōn minus (*less*) commodē sibi<sup>3</sup> praescribere quam (*than*) ab aliīs docērī poterant.

## LESSON LV.

### THIRD CONJUGATION PASSIVE, THE 'IŌ' VERB— ACCIPIO.

**290.** Principal parts of *accipiō* in the passive: *accipior*, *accipī*, *acceptus sum*.

Passive voice of *accipiō*, *I receive*.—The present stem *accipe* is found by dropping *re* from the present infinitive active, *accipere*. The perfect stem *accēp* is not used in the passive. In the passive of *accipiō* eight forms are based upon the present stem *accipe*, eight upon the supine stem *accept* (*seen in the perfect passive participle, acceptus*). For the occurrence and omission of *i* in the 'iō' verbs, see (213) and foot-note.

The second person singular of the present indicative is pronounced, *not ac-ci-pi-e-ris*, but *ac-ci'-pe-ris*.

**291.** Present system, passive, of *accipiō*.—*Stem accipe*.

#### Present indicative.

*am being received.*

##### SINGULAR.

1. *accipior*

2. *acciperis (-re)*

3. *accipitur*

##### PLURAL.

*accipimur*

*accipiminī*

*accipiuntur*

#### Imperfect indicative.

*was being received.*

##### SINGULAR.

*accipiēbar*

*accipiēbāris (-re)*

*accipiēbātur*, etc.

<sup>1</sup> Of themselves.

<sup>2</sup> Nominative plural neuter, subject of *vidēbantur*, seemed best; the antecedent of **quae** = **ea**, understood object of *administrābant*.

<sup>3</sup> Dative with the compound verb *praescribere*; see (337).

**Future indicative.***shall be received.*

SINGULAR.

1. accipiar
2. accipiēris (-re)
3. accipiētur, etc.

**Present subjunctive.***may be received.*

SINGULAR.

- accipiar
- accipiāris (-re)
- accipiātur, etc.

**Imperfect subjunctive.***might be received.*

SINGULAR.

1. acciperer
2. acciperēris (-re)
3. acciperētur, etc.

**Imperative.***be thou received, etc.*

SINGULAR. PLURAL.

- |               |            |
|---------------|------------|
| 2. { accipere | accipimini |
| { accipitor   |            |
| 3. accipitor  | acciunctor |

**Present infinitive.***accipi, to be received***Gerundive.***acciendus, -a, -um, (worthy) to be received*

**292. Synopsis of the perfect system.**—*Stem accept, seen in the perfect passive participle, acceptus.*

- |                           |                            |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. acceptus, -a, -um sum  | 5. acceptus, -a, -um essem |
| 2. acceptus, -a, -um eram | 6. acceptum, -am, -um esse |
| 3. acceptus, -a, -um erō  | 7. acceptum īrī            |
| 4. acceptus, -a, -um sim  | 8. acceptus, -a, -um       |

**293.****VOCABULARY.****Verbs 87–96 (450).***ubi, adv.**where**aciēs, aciēī, fem.**line of battle, army**sub, prep. with abl. and acc.**under**sub monte,**at the foot of the mountain**equestrer, equestris, equestre, adj.**of cavalry**proeliō equestrī,**in a cavalry skirmish**summus mōns,**the top of the mountain*

## 294.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Hōc bellō factō hostēs castra prōmōvērunt ac sub monte in Rēmōrum fīnibus cis Rhēnum cōnsēdērunt (*encamped*, from *consido*). 2. Omnībus aedificiīs vīcīsque in Galliā incēnsīs Caesar trāns flūmen contendit ut hostium cōpiās frūmentō commeātibusque prohibēret. 3. Fortēs peditēs legiōnis pīmae in Galliā ā Caesare mīssī sunt ut exercitum cōgerent et castra in eīs cīvītātibus quae Caesarī sē suaque omnia dēdidissent pōnerent. 4. Cohortibus reliquīs ē castrīs ēductīs Galba suīs ducībus ut aciem triplicem īstruerent atque ā dextrō cornū in hostēs impetum facerent, imperāvit. 5. Triplicī aciē factā imperātōrēs nostrī ē castrīs suōs peditēs ēdūxērunt atque at eum locum, ubi hostium explōrātōrēs vīderant, properāvērunt. 6. Quod hostēs in castrīs quae sub monte salūtis causā posuerant sē continēbant neque peditēs ad proelium ēdūcēbant, Caesar Galbae ut in aciē equitātum omnem īstrueret mandāvit et ipse suō mōre ad portās hostium castrōrum peditēs fortīs dūxit.

II.—1. After their fields had been laid waste,<sup>1</sup> the enemy sent ambassadors to Caesar to ask for peace. 2. When the camp had been surrounded<sup>2</sup> on all sides, Caesar commanded the Remi to give his (men) corn and supplies. 3. If the enemy surrender<sup>3</sup> hostages, Caesar will command his leaders not to destroy the town into which they carried<sup>4</sup> all their arms.

<sup>1</sup> Two ways : by *ablative absolute* and by a **cum clause**.

<sup>2</sup> By *ablative absolute* and the **ubi clause**.

<sup>3</sup> See (223).

<sup>4</sup> Mood ? (276), ‘*intermediate clauses*.’ Tense ? (135).

## LESSON LVI.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION PASSIVE. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

**295. Principal parts of *mūniō*, *I fortify*.**

<i>Active,</i>	<i>mūniō</i>	<i>mūnīre</i>	<i>mūnīvī</i>	<i>mūnītum</i>
<i>Passive,</i>	<i>mūnīor</i>	<i>mūnīrī</i>	<i>mūnītus</i>	<i>sum</i>

In the *passive* two stems are used: *mūnī* and *mūnīt*, upon each of which eight forms are based.

**Present system of *mūniō* in the passive.—Present stem *mūnī*. For the tense forms complete, see (483).**

**Present indicative.**  
*am being fortified.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <i>mūnīor</i>	<i>mūnīmūr</i>
2. <i>mūnīris (-re)</i>	<i>mūnīminī</i>
3. <i>mūnītūr</i>	<i>mūnīuntūr</i>

**Present subjunctive.**  
*may be fortified.*

SINGULAR.
<i>mūnīar</i>
<i>mūnīāris (-re)</i>
<i>mūnīātūr, etc.</i>

**Imperfect indicative.**  
*was being fortified.*

SINGULAR.
<i>mūnīēbar</i>
<i>mūnīēbāris (-re), etc.</i>

**Imperfect subjunctive.**  
*might be fortified.*

SINGULAR.
<i>mūnīrēr</i>
<i>mūnīrēris (-re), etc.</i>

**Future indicative.**  
*shall be fortified.*

SINGULAR.
<i>mūnīar</i>
<i>mūnīēris (-re)</i>
<i>mūnīētūr, etc.</i>

**Imperative.**  
*mūnīre, be thou fortified*  
*mūnītūr, thou shalt be fortified,*  
*etc.*

**Present infinitive.**  
*mūnīrī, to be fortified*

### Gerundive.

*mūniendus, -a, -um, (worthy) to be fortified*

### 296. Synopsis of the perfect system, passive.—*Stem mūnīt.*

1. <i>Perfect indicative</i>	<i>mūnītus, -a, -um sum</i>
2. <i>Pluperfect indicative</i>	<i>mūnītus, -a, -um eram</i>
3. <i>Future-perfect indicative</i>	<i>mūnītus, -a, -um erō</i>
4. <i>Perfect subjunctive</i>	<i>mūnītus, -a, -um sim</i>
5. <i>Pluperfect subjunctive</i>	<i>mūnītus, -a, -um essem</i>
6. <i>Perfect infinitive</i>	<i>mūnītum, -am, -um esse</i>
7. <i>Future infinitive</i>	<i>mūnītum irī</i>
8. <i>Perfect participle</i>	<i>mūnītus, -a, -um</i>

Conjugate each tense of *cōsentīō* in both voices; repeat *mūniō* entire as given in (482, 483).

### 297.

### VOCABULARY.

#### Verbs 97–106 (450).

<i>tumultus, -ūs, mas.</i>	<i>uproar</i>
<i>īnsidiae, -ārum, fem.</i>	<i>ambush</i>
<i>lūx, lūcis, fem.</i>	<i>light</i>
<i>prīmā lūce,</i>	<i>at early dawn</i>
<i>lēgātus, -ī, mas.</i>	<i>lieutenant</i>
<i>prīmō, adv.</i>	<i>at first</i>

298. Comparison of adjectives.—There are three degrees of comparison: the *positive*, *comparative*, and *superlative*. The *comparative* is regularly formed by adding *ior* (*mascu-line* and *feminine*) and *ius* (*neuter*) to the *stem* of the *positive*, which loses its final vowel; the *superlative* is formed by adding *issimus, -a, -um*, to the *stem* of the *positive*. Adjectives of the *first* and *second* declensions, like nouns, form the *stem* in *o* or *a*. For the *stem* of *altus*, *altum* (*alto*), see (18); for the *stem* of *alta* (*alta*), see (2). Third-declension adjectives, like nouns, are *vowel* or *consonant stems*; *fortis* (*stem fortī*), see *collis* (131); *potēns* (*stem potent*), see *miles* (113) and *pūgnāns* (467).

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
altus, -a, -um	altior, -ior, -ius	altissimus, -a, -um
fortis, -is, -e	fortior, -ior, -ius	fortissimus, -a, -um
potēns, -ēns, -ēns	potentior, -ior, -ius	potentissimus, -a, -um

The meanings of the above are:

altus, tall	altior, taller	altissimus, tallest or very tall
fortis, brave	fortior, braver	fortissimus, bravest or very brave
potēns, powerful	potentior, more powerful	potentissimus, most or very powerful

## 299.

### EXERCISES.

I.—1. Eā rē cōnstitūtā hostēs secundā vigiliā tumultū māgnō ē castrīs contendērunt et in extrēmās Galliae partēs, ubi exercitūs nostrī adventum nōn timuērunt, fūgērunt. 2. Hāc rē ab explōrātōribus cōgnitā Caesar prīmā lūce equitātum omnem ut in novissimum agmen hostium impetum faceret praemīsit. 3. Quod vīcī omnēs ā nostrīs incēnsī erant, Sēquanī in Aeduōrum fīnīs sē recēpērunt, ubi in amīcitiam acceptī sunt agrōsque multōs possēdērunt. 4. Castra sub monte ab hostibus posita sunt ac prō mūnītiōnibus aciēs īstrūcta est, nē nostrī in eōs impetum facere possent, cum fīnitimōrum lēgātōs acciperent. 5. Caesar, ubi hostium fugam audīvit (*heard of*), in castra peditēs equitātumque redūxit et, quod īsidiās timēbat, iussit suōs nōn eō diē hostēs subsequī.

II.—1. The enemy at first fought (*contendō*) in a cavalry skirmish; then (*inde*), after our cavalry had been driven back, they suddenly led out their infantry which had been concealed in the forests next to the river. 2. After Caesar had determined (*cōnstituō*) to spare the rest of the enemy, towns were given to them in Gaul and their neighbours were ordered not to make an attack upon them. 3. A triple line of battle having been drawn up, Caesar directs his lieutenants to begin battle on the

right wing and to fight bravely for the sake of their commander.

## LESSON LVII.

### ŌRĀTIŌ OBLĪQUA, OR INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

**300. Irregular verb *eō*, *I go*.** Principal parts: *eō*, *īre*, *īvī* (*iī*), *ītum*.

*Learn the indicative mood of eō (six tenses), (486).*

**301. Direct and indirect discourse.**—In *direct discourse* (Ōrātiō rēcta) the exact words of the speaker or writer are given. In *indirect discourse* (Ōrātiō oblīqua) certain forms of words may be altered to suit the point of view of the new speaker, viz.: moods, tenses, persons. The more regular of such changes will be stated. *Indirect discourse* depends upon some verb of *saying*, *knowing*, *thinking*, *perceiving*, etc., the verb of the *main (declarative)* clause being put in the *infinitive* with its *subject* in the *accusative*, the verb of the *subordinate* clause becoming *subjunctive*.

**302. Statement in indirect discourse.**—In the following sentences, this much of the principle of ‘indirect discourse’ is employed, viz.: *verbs of saying, thinking, etc.*, are followed by the *accusative + infinitive*, to describe a *fact*. [See (392), ‘mood in indirect discourse.’]

The *infinitive* in *indirect discourse*, though representing a *finite verb* of *direct discourse*, does not admit of *number* and *person*.

- |                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| 1. Caesar dīcit lēgātūm dis- | <i>Caesar says that the ambassador</i> |
| cēdere,                      | <i>is departing [the ambassador</i>    |
|                              | <i>to depart]</i>                      |
| 2. Labiēnus exīstimat hostīs | <i>Labienus thinks that the enemy</i>  |
| discēdere,                   | <i>are departing [the enemy to</i>     |
|                              | <i>depart]</i>                         |

The infinitive **discēdere**, with no form to distinguish *number*, has a *singular subject* in (1) and a *plural subject* in (2): before the accusative and infinitive supply (in translation) ‘*that*,’ for which the Latin *has no word* in the sense of the English idiom, and change the *accusative subject* to the *nominative*, making the *infinitive* a *finite (declarative)* verb.

3. Caesar vīdit lēgātōs pācem    *Caesar saw that the ambassadors were seeking peace*

*Were seeking = petere, present infinitive.* The *time* of the action of the verb **petere** is *present relative* to the *time* of the action of the verb **vīdit**; that is, the action (of seeking) *was going on* at the *time* when Caesar *saw* the ambassadors, hence the *present infinitive petere* represents time *relatively present* with respect to the *time* of the verb of seeing (**vīdit**) upon which it depends.

## 303.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>opus, operis, neut.</b>	<i>work</i>
<b>interim, adv.</b>	<i>meanwhile</i>
<b>item, adv.</b>	<i>likewise</i>
<b>cursus, -ūs, mas.</b>	<i>speed</i>
<b>inter sē,</b>	<i>to one another</i>
<b>inter sē dare,</b>	<i>to exchange</i>
<b>opportūnus, -a, -um, adj.</b>	<i>convenient</i>
<b>Labiēnus, -ī, mas.</b>	<i>Labienus</i>
<b>citerior, -ior, -ius, adj.</b>	<i>hither, nearer</i>
<b>superior, -ior, -ius, adj.</b>	<i>former, higher</i>
<b>ex superiōre locō,</b>	<i>from a higher place</i>

## 304.

## EXERCISES.

- I.—1. Prīmā legiōne quam proximē cōnscripserat in castrīs relictā Caesar prō castrīs in aciē quīnque legiōnēs reliquās īstrūxit. 2. Caesar Belgās contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare audit. 3. Caesar, ubi hostēs in legiōnem prīmam impetum facere vīdit, ex castrīs exercitum omnem ēdūxit. 4. Galba, cum Belgās in fidem potestātemque populī Rōmānī sē suaque

omnia permettere vīdisset, iussit Gallōs (*accusative subject*) frūmentō commeātibusque Belgās iuvāre et in Ītaliā exercitum tōtūm redūxit. 5. Caesar sub monte altissimō proeliō locum dēlēgit, nē hostēs, cum aciem suam īstrūxisset, ab latere in legiōnēs Rōmānās impetum facere possent.

II.—1. The commander sees that the enemy are collecting all their bands into one place and are fortifying a camp. 2. When Caesar saw that the Germans were joining (*present*) themselves with these and were cutting off Galba's soldiers from supplies, he himself at once led his army thither. 3. While Caesar was collecting corn and supplies for the entire army, he saw that the Germans were leading (*present*) cavalry across the river. 4. When peace had been made, Caesar placed the legions in winter-quarters among the Belgians who were the bravest of all the Gauls.

## LESSON LVIII.

### INDIRECT DISCOURSE, CONTINUED.

#### **305. Learn the remainder of the verb *eō* (486).**

**The perfect infinitive in indirect discourse.**—The *perfect infinitive* shows time *absolutely past*, that is, time *completed* in the past.

The *present infinitive* denotes time *contemporaneous*, the *perfect infinitive* time *antecedent*.

1. **Caesar cōgnōscit lēgātūm iisse,** *Caesar finds out that the ambassador has gone* (action finished before he finds it out)

2. Caesar cōgnōvit hostīs dis-  
cessisse, Caesar found out that the  
enemy had departed (action  
completed before he found it  
out)

**306. Subordinate clause in indirect discourse.**—After verbs of *saying, thinking, hearing, etc.*, the verb of the principal clause is put in the infinitive, *that of the subordinate clause in the subjunctive.*

1. Caesar intellegit Germānōs  
exagitāre Belgās quī cis  
Rhēnum incolant, Caesar learns that the Germans  
are harassing the Belgians  
who live on this side of the  
Rhine
2. Explorātōrēs nūntiāvērunt  
Sēquanōs quōs nostrī  
pepulissent cum omnibus  
impedimentīs discēdere, Scouts announced that the  
Sequani whom our men had  
defeated were departing with  
all their baggage

In (1) **incolant** is present subjunctive, denoting time *contemporaneous relative to the time (tense) of intellegit*; see ‘rule of sequence’ (135). In (2) **pepulissent** (from *pellō*), the pluperfect, denotes time *antecedent (completed) with reference to the time (tense) of nūntiāvērunt*.

## 307.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 107–116 (450).

sinister, -tra, -trum, <i>adj.</i>	<i>left</i>
ab sinistrā parte;	<i>on the left side</i>
ipse, -a, -um, <i>emphatic pron.</i>	<i>he, self</i>
trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum,	<i>to cross</i>
senātus, -ūs, <i>mas.</i>	<i>senate</i>
septimus, -a, -um, <i>num. adj.</i>	<i>seventh</i>

- 308. Adjectives ending in er.**—Adjectives in **er** form the *superlative* by adding **rimus** to the nominative singular masculine of the *positive*. The comparative is *regular*.

miser, -era, -erum,	miserior, -ior, -ius	miserrimus, -a, -um
wretched		
ācer, ācris, ācre,	ācrior, -ior, -ius	ācerrimus, -a, -um
sharp		

## 309.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Hostēs, ubi nostrōs proeliō equestrī ā dextrō cornū contendere vident, celeritāte māgnā in oppidum sē recipiunt atque oppidō undique mūnitō ad<sup>1</sup> impetum nostrōrum sustinendum parant. 2. Hīs rēbus ab explōrātōribus cōgnitīs aciēs triplex prō castrīs īstrūcta est et omnēs cōpiae nostrae ēduetae sunt; sed, quod hostēs flūmen trānsire et in suōs fīnīs revertī (*were returning*) vīdit, Caesar in eōs impetum nōn fēcit ac cōpiās in castra redūxit. 3. Legiōne novā in citeriōre Galliā cōscriptā locō idōneō castrīs dēlēctō Caesar ipse cum secundā legiōne per agrōs Aeduōrum contendit et prō oppidō hostium cōpiās triplicē aciē īstrūxit.

II.—1. The chiefs of the Aedui will go into the territories of the Sequani to exchange hostages and cut off our men from supplies which<sup>2</sup> are being sent into our camp by the Remi. 2. After Caesar had seen (that) the enemy were leading a part of their forces across the bridge and were leaving a part on this side of the river, he determined to attack that part which had not yet crossed the river. 3. On account of the large number and the courage of the enemy the bravest soldiers are drawn up in the foremost (*primus*) line of battle by Caesar, in order that the enemy may not surround and take (*capiō*) our camp.

<sup>1</sup> Ad + gerundive, ‘to withstand.’

<sup>2</sup> Intermediate clause, subjunctive by *attraction*; see (276).

## LESSON LIX.

## RELATIVE OF PURPOSE. INDIRECT QUESTION.

**310.** Learn the entire passive of *faciō*, *I do or make* (493).  
**Principal parts:**

<i>Active,</i>	<i>faciō</i>	<i>facere</i>	<i>fēcī</i>	<i>factum</i>
<i>Passive,</i>	<i>fīō</i>	<i>fierī</i>		<i>factus sum</i>

**311.** Relative clause of purpose.—When *qui* = *ut* is (*so that he*, etc.) or *ut eī* (*so that they*, etc.), the verb in the relative clause is put in the *subjunctive* to denote *affirmative purpose*. The antecedent of the relative is expressed or implied in the main clause.

1. *Mittunt lēgātūm qui pācem petat*,<sup>1</sup> *They send an ambassador to ask for peace*
2. *Lēgātī vēnērunt qui obsidēs dēderent*, *Ambassadors came to surrender hostages*

Apply ‘rule of sequence’ (135).

## 312.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 117–124 (450).

<i>cōspectus, -ūs, mas.</i>	<i>sight</i>
<i>littera, -ae, fem.</i>	<i>letter (of the alphabet)</i>
<i>litterae, -ārum, fem.</i>	<i>a letter, an epistle</i>
<i>tribūnus, -ī, mas.</i>	<i>tribune</i>
<i>dīversus, -a, -um, adj.</i>	<i>different, separate</i>
<i>commūnis, -is, -e, adj.</i>	<i>common</i>
<i>et . . . et, conj.</i>	<i>both . . . and</i>
<i>interior, -ior, -ius, adj.</i>	<i>interior</i>

---

<sup>1</sup> Who may—so that he may—ask for peace.

**313. Indirect question.**—See declension of *quis* (465). A *direct question* takes the *indicative*; as,

**Quid (quae) hostēs gerunt?**      *What are the enemy doing?*

An *indirect question*, giving the interrogative (inquiry) in a dependent form, takes the *subjunctive*; as,

<b>Caesar reperit quid (quae) hostēs gerant (sequence),</b>	<i>Caesar finds out what the enemy are doing</i>
<b>Caesar repperit quid (quae) hostēs gererent (sequence),</b>	<i>Caesar found out what the enemy were doing</i>
<b>Caesar reperiet quid (quae) hostēs gesserint (sequence),</b>	<i>Caesar will find out what the enemy did (have done)</i>
<b>Caesar repperit quid (quae) hostēs gessissent (sequence),</b>	<i>Caesar found out what the enemy did (had done)</i>

**314. Adjectives in *ilis*.**—Six adjectives in *ilis* form the *superlative* by adding **limus** to the stem stripped of its final vowel; they are: **facilis**, *easy*; **difficilis**, *hard*; **similis** and **dissimilis**, *like* and *unlike*; **gracilis**, *slender*; **humilis**, *low*. **Facilis** is thus compared:

facilis, -is, -e      facilior, -ior, -ius      facillimus, -a, -um

### 315.

### EXERCISES.

- I.—1. Caesar hīs litterīs nūntiīsque commōtus est et in eiteriōre Galliā legiōnēs duās novās cōnscripsit atque Pedium lēgātūm, quī eās dēdūceret in interiōrem Galliam, mīsit. 2. Cum Caesar eō vēnisset, Rēmī quī proximī Belgīs sunt ad eum lēgātōs prīmōs cīvitātis mīsērunt, quī sē suaque omnia in fidem populī Rōmānī trādere<sup>1</sup> dīcerent. 3. Lēgātī in nostra castra vēnērunt, quī sē cum Belgīs reliquīs nōn cōnsēnsisse parātōsque esse obsidēs dare et Caesaris imperāta facere dīcerent. 4. Caesar, cum per

<sup>1</sup> In the sense of future time, *would hand over*.

Rēmōrum fīnēs iter faceret, omnēs reliquōs Gallōs in armīs esse Germānōsque cum hīs coniūrāvisse audīvit.

II.—1. An attack will be made upon the Germans in the sight of Caesar and the entire army, unless they surrender<sup>1</sup> themselves and all their (possessions) to our commanders. 2. The baggage having been left in camp, Caesar at early dawn sent forward scouts to find out those (things) which were being done<sup>2</sup> in the enemies' camp. 3. When the scouts returned and announced that the enemy had moved their camp and were hastening out of Gaul, Caesar commanded the tribunes of the soldiers not to lead their (men) out of camp.

## LESSON LX.

### AGREEMENT OF THE PARTICIPLE.

**316. Use and agreement of the perfect passive participle (p. p. p.).**—A common Latin construction is the *perfect passive participle*, which is used in preference to *relative clauses* or *conjunctions + indicative* or *subjunctive*. The perfect passive participle often modifies the *subject* or *object*, agreeing with the same in *gender*, *number*, and *case*.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>1. Dux commōtus discessit,</b><br><b>2. Nostrī hostēs circumventōs<br/>  undique interfēcērunt,</b> | <i>Having been alarmed (=because he was alarmed), the general withdrew</i><br><i>Our men killed the enemy surrounded (= who were surrounded or after they were surrounded) on all sides</i> |
|--|---|

<sup>1</sup> Write in two different tenses, explaining the *time-relation*; see (223).

<sup>2</sup> *Intermediate clause*; see (276).

3. Caesār in aciē suās cōpiās  
ē castrīs ēductās īstrū-  
xit,  
4. Hostēs (*nom.*) omnibus hīs  
rēbus adductī (*nom.*) ad  
Caesarem lēgātōs mīsē-  
runt,
- Caesar drew up in line of battle his forces (who were, after they were) led out of camp*  
*Influenced (=because they were influenced) by all these things, the enemy sent ambassadors to Caesar*

## 317.

## VOCABULARY.

Verbs 125–135 (450).

gēns, gentis, <i>fem.</i>	<i>tribe</i>
aestuārium, -ī, <i>neut.</i>	<i>marsh</i>
puerī, -ōrum, <i>mas.</i>	<i>children</i>
nōnnūllus, -a, -um, <i>adj.</i>	<i>some</i>
frūmentārius, -a, -um, <i>adj.</i> of corn	
rēs frūmentāria,	<i>supply of corn</i>

318. Tenses of the infinitive mood in indirect discourse.  
For further treatment of such infinitives, see (301, 302, 305).

1. Explōrātōrēs nūntiant hos-  
tēs ad nostra castra iter  
facere,  
2. Caesar intellēxit Germānōs  
Rhēnum trānsiisse,  
3. Caesar crēdit legiōnēs suās  
Gallōs victūrās esse,  
4. Galba audīvit hostīs prīmā  
lūce castra mōtūrōs esse,
- Scouts announce that the enemy are marching towards our camp*  
*Caesar learned that the Germans had crossed the Rhine*  
*Caesar believes that his legions will conquer the Gauls*  
*Galba heard that the enemy would break camp at early dawn*

In (1) *iter facere* denotes action *going on at the time* of the action in *nūntiant*; in (2) *trānsiisse* denotes action *completed before the time* of the action in *intellēxit*; in (3) and (4) *victūrās* and *mōtūrōs esse* denote action *which is to occur in the future at a time subsequent to the time of the action in crēdit and audīvit.*

## 319.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Germānī trāns Rhēnum trāductī in interiōre Galliā cōnsēdērunt et agrōs lātissimōs possidēbant. 2. Hostēs Caesarī sē suaque omnia dēdere iūssī,<sup>1</sup> quod sē nostrum exercitum sustinēre nōn posse vīdērunt, ex oppidō statim tēla armaque omnia trādidērunt. 3. Prīcipēs ad Caesarem ab cīvitāte mīssī<sup>2</sup> suam cīvitātem cum reliquīs Gallis nōn cōnsēnsisse atque parātam<sup>3</sup> esse et (*both*) obsidēs dare et in oppidīs eum accipere dīxērunt. 4. Hōc proeliō factō Caesar intellegit multās cīvitātēs liberōs prīcipūm obsidēs mīssūrās esse et exercituī nostrō frūmentum com-mēatūsque datūrās esse. 5. Hīs rēbus commōtus Caesar cum parte septimae legiōnis eīsque cōpiīs quae proximē cōnscrīptae erant in summum montem Labiēnum lēgātūm, quī hostium adventum exspectāret, praemīsit. 6. Caesar, cum vīdisset hostēs aciem īstruere nostrāsque mūnītiōnēs sine morā oppūgnātūrōs esse, lēgātōs legiōnēs distinēre, ut in hostēs undique impetum ūnō tempore facerent, iussit.

II.—1. Influenced by the power of Caesar, those states into whose boundaries the Roman army was preparing to march determined to seek peace and do the commands of the senate. 2. Alarmed by Caesar's arrival, the Belgians send ambassadors to say<sup>4</sup> (that) they have collected corn and (*que*) supplies for our army and will surrender hostages. 3. When Caesar found out (that) the enemy had collected large forces and were marching into Italy, he immediately led all his legions out of camp.

<sup>1</sup> p. p. p. modifies **hostēs**, the *subject* of the sentence.

<sup>2</sup> Modifies the *subject* **prīcipēs**.

<sup>3</sup> *Predicate adjective* limiting **cīvitātem**.

<sup>4</sup> *Not infinitive* in Latin; note the *sequence*.

## LESSON LXI.

## PURPOSE AND RESULT CLAUSES.

**320. Affirmative and negative purpose.**—As previously stated, clauses denoting *affirmative purpose* take *ut + subjunctive*; clauses of *negative purpose*, *nē + subjunctive*.

1. Caesar *legiōnēs cōscrībit*, *Caesar enrolls the legions to ut Galliam vincat* (*affirmative purpose*), *conquer Gaul*
2. *Gallī māgnās cōpiās coēgē-* *runt, nē ā Caesare pelle-* *The Gauls gathered large forces,* *that they might not (lest they rentur* (*negative purpose*), *should) be defeated by Caesar*

The relative clause may denote *affirmative purpose* (311).

**321. Affirmative and negative result.**—Affirmative result is expressed by *ut + subjunctive*, negative result by *ut . . . nōn + subjunctive*.

1. *Nostrī tam fortiter pū-* *gnant, ut Gallōs expellant* (*affirmative result*), *Our men fight so bravely that (as a result) they drive out the Gauls*
2. *Nostrī in hostīs impetum* *tam āriter fēcērunt, ut* *sustinēre diūtius nōn pos-* *sent (negative result—note the sequence),* *Our men made so fierce an attack upon the enemy, that they could not withstand any longer*

## 322.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 136–146 (450).

<i>spīritus, -ūs, mas.</i>	<i>breath, (plur.) arrogance</i>
<i>etiam, adv.</i>	<i>even</i>
<i>māximē, adv.</i>	<i>especially or very much</i>
<i>memoria, -ae, fem.</i>	<i>memory</i>
<i>lātitūdō, -dinis, fem.</i>	<i>width</i>

**323. Distinguish ablative absolute from participle agreeing with the subject or object.**—1. The enemy, *defeated* in many battles, surrendered hostages. In this sentence taken literally, *defeated*, the *past participle passive*, modifying the *subject*, *enemy*, becomes **pulsī** (*p. p. p.*), *nominative plural*, agreeing with the *subject* **hostēs**, and the sentence is written: **Hostēs multīs proeliīs pulsī obsidēs dēdidērunt**. By converting the participle into a *relative clause*, ‘*who had been defeated*,’ it is seen that *defeated* limits and describes the *subject*, *enemy*. Change the sentence to this form: 2. The enemy having been defeated, Caesar demanded hostages. The phrase ‘*the enemy having been defeated*’ contains an idea equivalent to that expressed by a subordinate clause, such as, ‘*after* or *because* the enemy had been defeated,’ but the *noun* in such a phrase cannot be the *same* as the *subject* or *object* of the main sentence, is placed in the *ablative case* with the participle *in agreement with it*, and such a phrase, called the *Ablative Absolute*, modifies the verb.

**324.****EXERCISE.**

1. Aeduī sibi tantōs spīritūs sūmēbant ut Caesar contrā eōs suum exercitum dūcere cōnstitueret. 2. Imperātōrēs nostrī tam multās cīvitātēs pepulērunt ut in Galliā māximē imperium Rōmānum amplificārent. 3. Germānī ā potentiōribus Rōmānīs multīs proeliīs repulsī sē ex Galliā cōpiās omnīs mīssis nūntiāvērunt. 4. Omnibus suīs agrīs vāstātīs oppidīsque incēnsīs ut comineātibus exercitum nostrum prohibērent, hostēs in extrēmās Galliae partēs sē recēpērunt. 5. Turrēs tantae altitūdinis prō mūrīs oppidi ā nostrīs positae sunt ut oppidānī māximē commōtī sē nostrīs ducibus obsidēs datūrōs esse suaque omnia Caesarī trāditūrōs esse nūntiārent. 6. Hōc bellō in Galliā cōflectō omnēs nostraē cōpiae trāns Rhēnum

trāductae sunt atque impetus in rēgem potentissimum ibi ab omnibus legiōnibus factus est, quod etiam nostrā memoriā Rēmōs, populi Rōmānī amicōs, māximē vexāverat et oppida multa incenderat.

## LESSON LXII.

### DEONENT VERB, FIRST CONJUGATION.

**325. The deponent verb *populor*, *I plunder*.**—The deponent verb has *passive forms with active meanings*.

*Principal parts:* *populor populārī populātus sum*

Each tense is conjugated *exactly like* the corresponding tenses of *portō* in the *passive*. For conjugation of forms, see (494).

**326. Synopsis of the present system.—*Present stem, populā.***

1. *populor*, *I plunder*
2. *populābar*, *was plundering*
3. *populābor*, *shall plunder*
4. *populer*, *may plunder*
5. *populārer*, *might plunder*
6. *populāre*, *plunder thou*
7. *populārī*, *to plunder*
8. *populandus*, (*worthy*) *to be plundered*

To these are added the *active forms*:

9. *populāns*, *plundering*
10. *populandī*, *of plundering*

**327. Synopsis of the perfect system.—*Supine stem, populāt.***

1. *populātus, -a, -um sum*, *I plundered*
2. *populātus, -a, -um eram*, *had plundered*
3. *populātus, -a, -um erō*, *shall have plundered*
4. *populātus, -a, -um sim*, *may have plundered*
5. *populātus, -a, -um essem*, *might have plundered*
6. *populātum, -am, -um esse*, *to have plundered*
7. *populātus, -a, -um*, *having plundered*

To these are added *four active forms*:

8. *populātūm, to plunder*
9. *populātū, to plunder*
10. *populātūrus, -a, -um, being about to plunder*
11. *populātūrum, -am, -um esse, to be about to plunder*

**328.** The *future infinitive* *populātūm īrī*, corresponding to *amātūm īrī*, is not found in the deponent verb; in its place a form like the *future infinitive active* is used (see 11).

The deponent verb has *six active forms*, two based upon the *present stem* (see 9, 10, *present system*); *four* upon the *supine or perfect-participle stem* (see 8, 9, 10, 11, *perfect system*).

### 329.

#### VOCABULARY.

#### Verbs 147–157 (450).

<b>cum prīmūm, conj.</b>	<i>as soon as</i>
<b>pābulum, -ī, neut.</b>	<i>fodder</i>
<b>negōtium, -ī, neut.</b>	<i>business</i>
<b>negōtium dare,</b>	<i>to employ</i>
<b>certus, -a, -um, adj.</b>	<i>certain</i>
<b>certiōrem facere,</b>	<i>to inform</i>

### 330. Use of *negōtium dare*, to employ.

**Negōtium dare**, *to employ*, takes the *indirect object* in the *dative*, denoting the person or persons employed. Like **imperō** and **mandō** it is followed by a *subjunctive clause* to denote what one is employed to do, the *subjunctive verb* being translated by the *present infinitive*; the rule of sequence prevails in the choice of tense.

1. **Explōrātōribus negōtium dat, ut hostium cōnsilia cōgnōscant,** *He employs scouts to find out the plans of the enemy*
2. **Gallis negōtium dedit, ut pontem interscinderent,** *He employed the Gauls to cut down the bridge*

### 331.

#### EXERCISES.

- I.—1. Castrīs mūnītīs et rē frūmentāriā comparātā Caesar Sēquanīs negōtium dedit, ut in Belgārum fīnēs īrent atque ea

quae hostēs facerent cōgnōserent. 2. Caesar, cum cōpiās in triplicī aciē prō castrīs īstrūxisset, omnēs suōs ut āriter in hostēs impetum faciant cohortātur et ipse sīgnō datō ā dextrō cornū proelium committit. 3. Hāc rē statim ab explōrātōribus cōgnitā omnibus cohortibus p̄mā lūce ēductis ac prō castrīs īstrūctis Caesar omnem equitātum, quī in novissimum agmen hostium impetum faceret, praemīsit, atque T. Labiēnum cum quīnque cohortibus subsequī iussit. 4. Proelium ā dextrō cornū tam āriter gestum est, ut equitātus<sup>1</sup> hostium sub monte īstrūctus p̄mō nostrōrum impetū<sup>2</sup> fugā salūtem peteret. 5. Cīvitātēs Rēmōrum et Aeduōrum multīs proeliīs repulsae<sup>3</sup> ad Caesarem suōs p̄mōs, quī sibi pācem salūtemque peterent, mīserunt.

II.—1. When this war was finished, Caesar ordered the remaining states to give a supply of corn to those forces for which he had chosen winter-quarters in Gaul. 2. Because the royal power (*plural of rēgnūm*) in Gaul was seized by the more powerful, who had many opportunities for inciting (*ad + gerundive*) men, Caesar led the army thither and ordered hostages to be sent to him. 3. Those whom Caesar employed to plunder the enemies' camp returned in about five days and announced (that) they had not been able to take the redoubts. 4. When scouts announced (that) the enemy were fortifying<sup>4</sup> a camp and would not surrender<sup>5</sup> hostages, Caesar directed his commanders to surround the camp on all sides.

<sup>1</sup> Nominative.      <sup>2</sup> *At the first attack.*      <sup>3</sup> p. p. limiting **cīvitātēs**.

<sup>4</sup> For mood and tense, see (318), 1.

<sup>5</sup> See (318), 4.

332.

## REVIEW VOCABULARY.

LESSONS XLI-LXII.

1. **circiter** (adv.), *about*
2. **dē mediā nocte**, *about midnight*
3. **cum** (conj.), *while or after*
4. **post** (prep. with the acc.), *after or behind*
5. **paene** (adv.), *almost*
6. **īnsidiae, īnsidiārum**, *ambush*
7. **que, atque** (conj.), *and*
8. **aciēs, aciēī** (fem.), *army or line of battle*
9. **adventus, adventūs** (mas.), *arrival*
10. **perveniō, pervenīre, pervēnī, peruentum**, *arrive (at)*
11. **spīritus, spīritūs** (mas.), *breath; (in the plur.) arrogance*
12. **prīmā lūce**, *at early dawn*
13. **prīmō** (adv.), *at first*
14. **sub monte**, *at the foot of the mountain*
15. **auxilia, auxiliōrum** (neut.), *auxiliaries*
16. **proelium committere**, *begin battle*
17. **sē recipere**, *betake one's self*
18. **inter** (prep. with the acc.), *between*
19. **et . . . et** (conj.), *both . . . and*
20. **sagittārius, sagittārī** (mas.), *bowman*
21. **puerī, puerōrum** (mas.), *children*
22. **veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum**, *come*
23. **commūnis, commūnis, commūne** (adj.), *common*
24. **fidēs, fideī** (fem.), *confidence*
25. **opportūnus, opportūna, opportūnum** (adj.), *convenient*
26. **concilium, concili** (neut.), *council of war*
27. **trānseō, trānsīre, trānsīvī or transīī, trānsitum**, *cross*
28. **cōnsuētūdō, cōnsuētūdinis** (fem.), *custom or habit*
29. **diēs, diēī** (mas.), *day*
30. **pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum**, *drive or defeat*
31. **poscō, poscere, poposcī**, [no supine], *demand*

32. **dīversus, dīversa, dīversum** (adj.), *different*  
 33. **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum**, *direct or advise*  
 34. **repellō, repellere, repulī, repulsum**, *drive back*  
 35. **aut . . . aut** (conj.), *either . . . or*  
 36. **tōtus, tōta, tōtum** (adj.), *entire*  
 37. **māximē** (adv.), *especially or very much*  
 38. **etiam** (conj.), *even*  
 39. **inter sē obsidēs dare**, *exchange hostages*  
 40. **quīnque** (indeclin. num. adj.), *five*  
 41. **longē** (adv.), *far*  
 42. **vadum, vadī** (neut.), *ford*  
 43. **superior, superior, superius** (adj.), *former or higher*  
 44. **mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnītum**, *fortify*  
 45. **ē superiōre locō**, *from a higher place*  
 46. **eō, īre, īvī or iī, itum, go**  
 47. **dēfēnsiō, dēfēnsiōnis** (fem.), *defence*  
 48. **contendō, contendere, contendī, contentum**, *hasten*  
 49. **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum**, *hear*  
 50. **is, ea, id** (personal pron. third person), *he or that*  
 51. **ipse, ipsa, ipsum** (intensive pron.), *he or se'f*  
 52. **sē** (reflexive pron. third person), *himself or themselves*  
 53. **impediō, impedīre, impedīvī, impedītum**, *hinder*  
 54. **citerior, citerior, citerius** (adj.), *hither*  
 55. **spēs, speī** (fem.), *hope*  
 56. **quantus, -a, -um** (adj.), *how great or how many*  
 57. **prōtinus** (adv.), *immediately*  
 58. **(in) proeliō equestrī**, *in a cavalry skirmish*  
 59. **interior, interior, interius** (adj.), *interior*  
 60. **quaerō, quaerere, quaeſīvī, quaeſītum**, *inquire*  
 61. **coniungō, coniungere, coniūnxī, coniūnctum**, *join*  
 62. **Labiēnus, Labiēnī** (mas.), *Labienus*  
 63. **proximē** (adv.), *lately*  
 64. **trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trāductum**, *lead across*  
 65. **sinister, sinistra, sinistrum** (adj.), *left*  
 66. **littera, litterae** (fem.), *letter*  
 67. **lēgātus, lēgātī** (mas.), *lieutenant*  
 68. **lūx, lūcis** (fem.), *light*  
 69. **expedītus, expedīta, expedītum** (adj.), *light-armed*

70. **item** (adv.), *likewise*  
 71. **vulgō** (abl. as adv.), *commonly or generally*  
 72. **iter, itineris** (neut.), *march*  
 73. **iter facere**, *to march*  
 74. **aestuārium, aestuārī** (neut.), *marsh*  
 75. **interim** (adv.), *meanwhile*  
 76. **memoria, memoriae** (fem.), *memory*  
 77. **medius, media, medium** (adj.), *middle of*  
 78. **propīnquitās, propīnquitātis** (fem.), *nearness*  
 79. **neque . . . neque** (conj.), *neither . . . nor*  
 80. **inde** (adv.), *after that, thence or then*  
 81. **equester, equestris, equestre** (adj.), *of cavalry*  
 82. **frūmentārius, frūmentāria, frūmentārium** (adj.), *of corn or grain*  
 83. **ūnus, ūna, ūnum** (num. adj.), *one*  
 84. **ā sinistrā parte**, *on the left side*  
 85. **ā dextrō cornū**, *on the right wing*  
 86. **in summō colle**, *on the top of the hill*  
 87. **Pediūs, Pediū** (mas.), *Pediūs*  
 88. **populor, populārī, populātus sum**, *plunder*  
 89. **potēns, potēns, potēns** (adj.), *powerful*  
 90. **celeriter** (adv.), *quickly*  
 91. **dexter, dextra, dextrum** (adj.), *right*  
 92. **senātus, senātūs** (mas.), *senate*  
 93. **septimus, septima, septimum** (num. adj.), *seventh*  
 94. **exiguitās, exiguitātis** (fem.), *shortness*  
 95. **cōspectus, cōspectūs** (mas.), *sight*  
 96. **funditor, funditōris** (mas.), *slinger*  
 97. **nōnnūllus, -a, -um** (adj.), *some, (plur. as noun)*  
 98. **cursus, cursūs** (mas.), *speed*  
 99. **rēs frūmentāria, reī frūmentāiae** (fem.), *supply of corn or grain*  
 100. **palūs, palūdis** (fem.), *swamp*  
 101. **suus, sua, suum** (possessive adj. pron. third person),  
     *his or their, with reflexive force*  
 102. **tum** (adv.), *then*  
 103. **rēs, reī** (fem.), *thing*  
 104. **hīc, haec, hōc** (adj.), *this*

105. *eō* (adv.), *thither or there*
106. *ad sē*, *to him, to them* (reflexive)
107. *ad eum, ad eos*, *to him, to them* (not reflexive)
108. *summus, summa, summum* (adj.), *top of, highest*
109. *gēns, gentis* (fem.), *tribe*
110. *tribūnus, tribūnī* (mas.), *tribune*
111. *triplex, triplex, triplex* (adj.), *triple*
112. *duo, duae, duo, two*
113. *sub* (prep. with the *acc.* and *abl.*), *under*
114. *cōsentīō, cōsentīre, cōsēnsī, cōsēnsum, unite*
115. *nisi* (conj.), *unless*
116. *tumultus, tumultūs* (mas.), *uproar*
117. *lātitūdō, lātitūdinis* (fem.), *width*
118. *sēcum, with themselves or himself*
119. *ubi* (adv.), *where*
120. *opus, operis* (neut.), *work*
121. *vulnus, vulneris* (neut.), *wound*
122. *eōrum, eārum* (possessive pron. third person), *their,*  
without *reflexive force*: compare no. (101)

## LESSON LXIII.

### THE PHRASE CERTIŌREM FACERE, TO INFORM.

**333. *Certiōrem, -ēs facere.***—When the verb *facere* (any form) is *active*, the adjective **certior** modifies the *direct object*; as,

1. *Lēgātūs Galbam certiōrem facit,* *The ambassador informs Galba [makes Galba more certain]*
2. *Caesar nūntiōs certiōrēs fēcit,* *Caesar informed the messengers*

As a verb of ‘*saying*,’ **certiōrem facere** is followed by the *accusative* and *infinitive* to describe a *fact*.

1. Caesar lēgātūm certiōrem  
facit sē pācem factūrum  
esse      *Caesar informs the ambassador  
that he will make peace*
2. Hostēs nostrōs tribūnōs cer-  
tiōrēs fēcērunt sē suōs  
fīnīs dēfēnsūrōs esse      *The enemy informed our tri-  
bunes that they would defend  
their territories*

## 334.

## VOCABULARY.

Review words 1–62 in 'review vocabulary' (332).

dē imprōvīsō	<i>unexpectedly</i>
regiō -ōnis, fem.	<i>region</i>
diūtius, adv.	<i>longer</i>
passus -ūs, mas.	<i>pace</i>
longē, adv.	<i>far</i>
ad, apud, prep. with the acc.	<i>near</i>
paulisper, adv.	<i>for a little while</i>
quantus, -a, -um, adj.	<i>how great, how many</i>

**335. Conditionals. Less vivid future.**—In the *more vivid* future condition (223) the supposition of a future case is *positive* and *distinct*, the *apodosis* stating what *will be* the result; the mood in both clauses is *indicative*. In a *less vivid* future condition the supposition (in the *protasis*) is in suspense and is *less distinct*, the *apodosis* stating what *would be* the result: in both protasis and apodosis the *present* (rarely the *perfect*) *subjunctive* is used. The verb in the *protasis* is usually translated 'should' or 'were to,' that in the *apodosis* 'would.' Example of the *less vivid* future condition:

Caesar cīvitātem cōservet, sī      *Caesar would spare the state, if*  
hostēs sē dēdant,      *the enemy should surrender*

## 336.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Sī Germānī vīcōs agrōsque Aeduōrum populē-  
tur, Caesar in eōrum fīnēs omnibus cōpiis iter faciat.

2. Cum Caesar eō dē imprōvīsō pervēnisset, explōrātōrēs eum certiōrem fēcērunt hostēs (*accusative subject*) ē castrīs discessisse et in (*upon*) proximum montem omnēs cōpiās impedimentaque cōgere. 3. Sēquānī erant sōlī quibus Gallī negōtium dedērunt ut ex hīs regiōnibus cōpiās ēdūcerent atque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrārent. 4. Caesar dīxit sē hostēs cōservātūrum esse neque eōrum oppida dēlētūrum esse, quod prīmōs cīvitātis ad sē lēgātōs, quī peterent pācem, mīssissent (*mīssissent*, why *subjunctive?*). 5. Caesar ubi vīdit quantō in perīculō mīlitēs septimae legiōnis essent,<sup>1</sup> ipse ad eōs cum parte peditum fortissimōrum contendit.

II.—1. Scouts inform our leaders (that) the Aedui will conspire with the rest of the Gauls (*not genitive*) so as to<sup>2</sup> plunder those towns which have been left<sup>3</sup> by our men. 2. Caesar will employ the chiefs of many states to collect fresh cavalry and choose places suitable for winter-quarters. 3. When these facts (*rēs*) had been found out,<sup>4</sup> Caesar commanded his leaders not to lead their men<sup>5</sup> out of camp on that day. 4. At early dawn Caesar drew up in line of battle all the legions, after they were led forth<sup>6</sup> from camp.

## LESSON LXIV.

### COMPOUND VERBS WITH THE DATIVE.

**337.** Learn the deponent verb *vereor*, second conjugation (495).

**Dative with compound verbs.**—Many verbs compounded

<sup>1</sup> Were, see (313), ‘indirect question.’

<sup>2</sup> ‘So as to,’ etc. = *ut + subjunctive* denoting *affirmative purpose*.

<sup>3</sup> Subjunctive by *attraction*. see (276).

<sup>4</sup> Render clause by the *ablative absolute*.

<sup>5</sup> ‘Their men’ = *sūōs*; see (258).

<sup>6</sup> ‘After they were led forth’—render by *one word* in Latin (p. p. p.).

with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *sub*, and *super* take the *dative* of the *indirect object*; if transitive, these verbs may take a *direct object* in the *accusative*.

**Titūrius castellō** (*dative*) *prae-* *erat*      *Titurius was in command of the redoubt*

**Praeficiō**, *to place (one) in command of*, takes the *person placed in command* in the *accusative*.

**Caesar novīs mūnītiōnibus Galbam praeficiet,** *Caesar will place Galba in command of the new fortifications*

**338. Certior factus, certiōrēs facti** (*passive*).—When the form of *facere* is *passive*, *certior* agrees with the *subject* of the verb, and is placed in the *nominative*; as,

1. **Caesar per explorātōrēs certior fīebat** (*factus est*), *Caesar was informed by means of scouts*
2. **Lēgātī certiōrēs fīunt Caesarem pācem nōn faciūrum esse,** *The ambassadors are informed that Caesar will not make peace*

### 339.

### VOCABULARY.

Review words 63–122 in ‘review vocabulary’ (332).

<b>passus, -a, -um, adj.</b>	<i>outstretched</i>
<b>manus, -ūs, fem.</b>	<i>hand</i>
<b>plūrimum posse,</b> {	<i>to be very powerful, or</i>
<b>plūrimum valēre,</b> {	<i>to have very great influence</i>
<b>mille,<sup>1</sup> indeclin. num. adj.</b>	<i>a thousand</i>
<b>octō, indeclin. num. adj.</b>	<i>eight</i>

**340. Perfect participle of the deponent.**—The Latin has no perfect *active* participle, but the perfect participle of a *deponent verb* has an *active* meaning; as,

<sup>1</sup> **Mille**, in the singular is an indeclinable numeral adjective. In the plural it is used and declined as a neuter substantive (459).

1. Caesar veritus īnsidiās in castrīs suōs continuit, Having feared—fearing—an ambush, Caesar kept his men in camp
2. Hostēs paulisper ad Cae-saris castra morātī sē in suōs fīnīs recēpērunt, Having delayed a little while near Caesar's camp, the enemy retreated into their own boundaries

If the verb is *not* a deponent, the clause containing the perfect active participle may be recast and expressed by the *ablative absolute* or by a *subordinate clause*. See (372).

## 341.

## EXERCISES.

- I.—1. Hīs rēbus per<sup>1</sup> explōrātōrēs cōgnitīs equitātus, cui Caesar Labiēnum praeſēcerat, ā dextrō cornū īstrūctus est atque sīgnō datō impetus in hostium aciēs ab omnibus nostrīs āriter factus est. 2. Item cum Caesar ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, hostēs ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre ab Rōmānīs pācēm petīvērunt. 3. Aeduī ab latere nostrōs peditēs fortissimōs circumvenīre cōnātī multīs vulneribus acceptīs pulsī sunt ac sē in cīvitātēs proximās recēpērunt. 4. Rēmī quī auxiliō ad nostra castra veniēbant hāc pūgnā nūntiātā coepērunt revertī in suōs fīnēs ē quibus ā Germānīs expulsī erant. 5. Caesar Sēquanīs nē per nostrām prōvinciam in Galliam iter faciant imperat atque sē eōs, sī cōnentur,<sup>2</sup> prohibitūrum esse nūntiat.

- II.—1. Scouts are sent forward to find out the plans of the enemy and to inform Caesar with respect to these things. 2. Galba directed the tribunes of the soldiers not to begin battle on the right wing, because he saw (that) the enemy had drawn up their bravest infantry in that place and had<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> per = by means of.

<sup>2</sup> If they try (to do so).

<sup>3</sup> Pres. infin.

very great power there. 3. An attack will not be made, unless Caesar places Galba in command of the infantry of the first legion. 4. Having attempted to destroy our new fortifications, the brave forces of the enemy were quickly driven back and some, surrounded by our cavalry, were brought (*addūcō*) to Caesar.

## LESSON LXV.

### ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT IN SPACE OR TIME.

342. Learn *ūtor*, *I use*, deponent of the third conjugation (496).

**Accusative of extent in space or time.**—Extent in space and duration of time are expressed by the *accusative without a preposition*; as,

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <b>Caesar ab oppidō duo mīlia passuum cōsēdit,</b> | <i>Caesar encamped two thousands of paces (two miles) from the town</i> |
| 2. <b>Hostēs cis Rhēnum multōs diēs morābantur,</b>   | <i>The enemy delayed many days on this side of the Rhine</i>            |

343. **Verbs of fearing.**—Verbs of fearing are followed by a *subjunctive* clause introduced by *nē* = *that* or *lest* and *ut* = *that not*. Note *sequence of tense* in the following:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <b>Hostēs verentur nē Caesar ad eōs suum exercitum addūcat,</b> | <i>The enemy fear that Caesar will lead his army against them</i>              |
| 2. <b>Caesar verēbātur ut Aeduī sustinēre Germānōs possent</b>     | <i>Caesar feared that the Aedui would not be able to withstand the Germans</i> |

## 344.

## VOCABULARY.

## Irregular verbs 1–8 (452).

<i>parvulus</i> , -a, -um, <i>adj.</i>	<i>slight</i>
<i>excursiō</i> , -ōnis, <i>fem.</i>	<i>sally</i>
<i>crēber</i> , -bra, -brum, <i>adj.</i>	<i>frequent</i>
<i>vadum</i> , -ī, <i>neut.</i>	<i>ford</i>
<i>tegimentum</i> , -ī, <i>neut.</i>	<i>covering</i>
<i>necessārius</i> , -a, -um, <i>adj.</i>	<i>necessary</i>
<i>decimus</i> , -a, -um, <i>num. adj.</i>	<i>tenth</i>
<i>vesper</i> , -perī, <i>mas.</i>	<i>evening</i>
<i>sub vesperum</i>	<i>towards evening</i>
<i>magistrātus</i> , -ūs, <i>mas.</i>	<i>officer</i>

345. Construction with *persuādeō*, *I persuade*.—*Per-*  
*suādeō* takes its object in the *dative* (like *imperō* and  
*mandō*) and is followed by an *ut* or *nē* clause, translated  
by an *infinitive*. Note *sequence* in the following:

1. *Belgae Gallis reliquīs ut coniūrent contrā populum Rōmānum persuādent,* *The Belgians persuade the remaining Gauls to conspire against the Roman people*
2. *Caesar Rēmīs persuāsit nē Senōnibus auxilium darent,* *Caesar persuaded the Remi not to give aid to the Senones*

## 346.

## EXERCISE.

1. Cum Caesar ab potentissimō Rēmōrum oppidō octō mīlia passuum abesset, lēgātī ad eum vēnērunt, quī pācem peterent obsidēsque trāderent. 2. Caesar, cum auxiliīs Q. Titūrium praeſēcisset, suō mōre ē castrīs expeditōs mīlitēs ēdūxit. 3. Cum prīma legiō pervēnisset ac castra mūnīre coepisset atque legiōnēs reliquae circiter duo mīlia passuum abessent, hostēs triplicī aciē īstrūctā māgnō cum tumultū ad nostrās mūnītiōnēs accessērunt. 4. Aeduī

adventū nostrōrum commōtī māgnō exercitū coāctō mīscērunt ad Caesarem lēgātōs, quī sē neque obsidēs datūrōs neque ab eō (*of him*) pācem petītūrōs esse nūntiārent. 5. Hostēs vadīs ibi repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūccre cōnātī sunt eō cōnsiliō, ut, sī possent, castellum cui Q. Titūrius lēgātus praeerat expūgnārent. 6. Nostrī oppidum expūgnāre cōnātī, quod audīvērunt facilem adītum habēre, ad mūrōs oppidī accēdere propter aestuāria palūdēsque nōn poterant. 7. Caesar amīcitiāe causā sē in fidem cōs receptūrum et cōservātūrum esse dīxit; sed quod erat cīvitās māgnā<sup>1</sup> inter Belgās auctōritāte atque multitūdine hominum plūrimū valēbat, multōs obsidēs poposcit: hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidīs collātīs (*from cōférō*) Caesar ab eō locō in fīnis Suessiōnum quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēcidērunt pervēnit.

## LESSON LXVI.

### VERBS OF COMMANDING. CAUSAL CUM.

#### 347. Learn *potior* (497).

**Use of cohortor, I urge, encourage.**—Cohortor takes the accusative of direct object and an *ut or nē clause*; as,

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Caesar suōs cohortātūr ut<br>fortiter impetum hostium<br>sustineant,<br>2. Caesar suōs cohortātūs nē<br>animō perturbārentur sī-<br>gnum proelī dedit, | <i>Caesar encourages his men to<br/>         withstand bravely the enemies'<br/>         attack</i><br><i>Having urged his men not to<br/>         become discouraged at heart,<br/>         Caesar gave the signal for<br/>         battle</i> |
|---|---|

---

<sup>1</sup> māgnā auctōritāte = *of great influence*; see (376), ‘*ablative of quality*’ and example.

**348. Dative with special verbs.**—Most verbs signifying to *yield* and *resist*, *bid* and *forbid*, *please* and *displease*, *desire*, *favor*, *trust*, *persuade*, *obey*, *command*, *serve*, *envy*, *harm*, *threaten*, and *pardon*, apparently transitive in English, are *intransitive in Latin* and take an *indirect object in the dative*; so with many phrases having similar meanings.

As previously stated in exercises, *imperō*, *mandō*, and *persuādeō* take the *dative* and an *ut* or a *nē clause*; *iubeō*, the *accusative and infinitive*; *cohortor*, the *accusative and an ut or a nē clause*.

## 349.

## VOCABULARY.

### Verbs 9–16 (452).

<i>mercātor, -ōris, mas.</i>	<i>merchant</i>
<i>condiciō, -ōnis, fem.</i>	<i>terms</i>
<i>captīvus, -ī, mas.</i>	<i>captive</i>
<i>centuriō, -ōnis, mas.</i>	<i>centurion</i>
<i>complūrēs, -rēs, -r(i)a, adj.</i>	<i>very many</i>
<i>iniūria, -ae, fem.</i>	<i>injury</i>
<i>dēfēnsor, -ōris, mas.</i>	<i>defender</i>
<i>ita . . . utī, adverbs</i>	<i>thus, accordingly . . . as</i>
<i>suprā, adv.</i>	<i>above</i>

**350. Causal and concessive *cum*.**—*Cum* meaning *since* or *although* takes the *subjunctive*: choice of *tense* is regulated by the *rule of sequence*.

#### *Causal cum:*

*Caesar cum hostēs trānsīre flūmen cōnārentur (time contemporaneous), imperāvit suīs ut pontem interscinderent,*

*Since the enemy were attempting to cross the river, Caesar commanded his men to cut down the bridge*

#### *Concessive cum:*

*Cum legiōnēs Rōmānae fortissimae sint, Gallī nōn dubitābunt cum eīs proelium committere,*

*Although the Roman legions are very brave, the Gauls will not hesitate to begin battle with them*

## 351.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Nostrī hostēs in flūmine impeditōs (*modifies hostēs*) aggressī māgnūm eōrum numerū interfēcērunt.  
 2. Caesar id oppidum quod sine dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat oppūgnāre cōnātus propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinē expūgnāre nōn potuit. 3. Caesar, quod verētur nē cīvitātēs Galliae contrā sē coniūrent, suōs imperātōrēs certiōrēs facit sē pīmā lūce castra mōtūrum et eō iter factūrum esse. 4. Conciliō commūnī convocātō Germānī exercitūs nostrī adventū veritī pontē interscindere cōstituērunt, nē nostrī in suōs fīnīs trādūcerentur. 5. Gallī, cum verērentur nē Caesar in Galliam omnīs legiōnēs dūceret, fīnitimīs persuādēre cōnātī sunt, nē exercituī Rōmānō frūmentum aut commeātūs darent.

II.—1. Our men killed the foremost who had crossed after they had been surrounded<sup>1</sup> by the cavalry. 2. When the matter had been investigated<sup>2</sup> by means<sup>3</sup> of scouts at early dawn, Caesar sent forward all the cavalry to delay<sup>4</sup> the rear of the enemy. 3. Fearing (having feared) that they could not withstand the attack of our men, the enemy, after burning<sup>5</sup> all their towns and villages, retreated into the territories next to the Germans. 4. Since his infantry could not approach the enemy's camp on account of swamps, Caesar sent forward scouts to find out the plans of the enemy and to inform him with respect to those matters.

<sup>1</sup> Render the entire clause by one Latin word.

<sup>2</sup> *Ablative absolute.*

<sup>3</sup> *per + acc.*

<sup>4</sup> *Deponent.*

<sup>5</sup> Recast in the passive, *having been burned.*

## LESSON LXVII.

## DOUBLE DATIVE. AFFIRMATIVE PURPOSE.

**352.** Learn the active voice of *ferō*, *I bear* (490).

**Double dative.**—A dative of *purpose*, *end*, or *service* often accompanies the dative of the *person* or *thing interested* or *concerned*; as,

1. *Haec ūsuī nostrīs sunt*,      *These things are useful (for a use) to our men*

Here *ūsuī* is the *dative of purpose, end, or service*, *nostrīs* the *dative of the persons interested*.

2. *Caesar subsidiō nostrīs de-*      *Cæsar sent the tenth legion as a cimam legiōnem mīsit*,      *help (for a help) to our men*

**353. Deponent verbs governing the ablative.**—The following deponent verbs take the *ablative*: *ūtor*, *to use*; *abūtor*, *misuse*; *fruor*, *enjoy*; *fungor*, *perform*; *potior*, *capture*; *vescor*, *eat*.

*Labiēnus impedimentīs hosti-      Having captured the enemies' um potītus in castra suōs      baggage, Labienus led his men redūxit*,      *back into camp*

**354.****VOCABULARY.**

## Verbs 17–26 (452).

<i>deinde</i> , <i>adv.</i>	<i>then</i>
<i>rūrsus</i> , <i>adv.</i>	<i>again</i>
<i>nōn modo</i>	<i>not only</i>
<i>sed etiam</i>	<i>but also</i>
<i>īnsigne</i> , <i>-is</i> , <i>neut.</i>	<i>badge</i>
<i>minus</i> , <i>adv.</i>	<i>less</i>
<i>minus facile</i>	<i>less easily</i>
<i>posteā</i> , <i>adv.</i>	<i>afterwards</i>
<i>ūsus</i> , <i>-ūs</i> , <i>mas.</i>	<i>use</i>

**355. How to express affirmative purpose.**—1. *Ut + subjunctive.* 2. *Qui + subjunctive.* 3. *Ad + gerundive,* agreeing with a noun in the *accusative.* 4. *First supine,* with verbs of motion.

Example of *ad + gerundive*:

**Hostēs ad suōs fīnēs dēfendēn-** *The enemy assemble to defend*  
**dōs cōveniunt,** *their territories*

First supine:

**Caesar vēnit postulātum ob-** *Caesar came to demand hos-*  
**sidēs,** *tages*

### 356.

### EXERCISES.

I.—1. Duābus legiōnibus praesidiō castrīs (*dat.*) relictīs Caesar reliquās, quae in hostium cōpiās impetum facerent, praemīsit. 2. Temporis fuit tanta brevitās hostiumque animus ad dīmicandum tam parātus, ut nōn modo ad īsignia accommodanda sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtīisque (*from their shields*) tegimenta dētrūdenda tempus deesset. 3. Caesar mīlitēs (*acc. obj.*) cohortātus ut suae prīstīnae virtūtis memoriam retinērent, quod hostēs nōn longē aberant, proelī committendī sīgnū dedit. 4. In alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus (*from proficīscor*) Caesar intellēxit fortissimōs mīlitēs secundae legiōnis vīribus (*from vīs*) redintegrātīs in prīmā aciē fortiter pūgnāre. 5. Duābus cohortibus in castrīs relictīs praesidiō impedīmentīs Caesar cum equitātū omnī prīmā lūce profectus in fīnēs Aeduōrum quōrum agrōs Germānī populābantur dē imprōvīsō pervēnit.

II.—1. Since<sup>1</sup> the enemy feared (*imperf. subjunc.*) that their infantry might be defeated by our men, they ordered their commanders to close all the gates and restrain their soldiers from battle. 2. Dumnorix employed scouts to go

---

<sup>1</sup> Order: ‘the enemy, since,’ etc.

(imperf. *subjunc.*) to the nearest states and inform the chiefs that Caesar was collecting large bands and would march into their territories on the next day. 3. While our infantry were making an attack upon the enemy's forces on the opposite hill, Caesar ran down to the river with slingers and (*que*) bowmen and drove back those who were trying<sup>1</sup> to cross.

## LESSON LXVIII.

### DATIVE OF POSSESSION.

#### 357. Learn *ferō* in the passive (491).

**Dative of possession.**—The *dative* is used with forms of *sum* to denote possession. Instead of saying ‘*the boy has a horse*’ the Romans frequently expressed the idea thus: ‘*a horse is to the boy*,’ *equus est puerō*. The *thing possessed* is put in the *nominative* (*accusative* in *indirect discourse*), and the *possessor* in the *dative*.

Proelium cum hostibus erit Our men will have a battle  
nostrīs, with the enemy

Which word denotes the *thing possessed*, which the *possessor*? Observe that the forms of *sum* are translated by the *corresponding tenses of the verb ‘have’*.

**358. Temporal clauses with the indicative.**—*Ubi* and *postquam*, *when*; *ut*, *when or as*; *ut semel*, *as soon as*; *simulac*, *simulatque*, *as soon as*, usually take the *perfect or historical present in the indicative* (203).

**359. Cum clauses.**—*Cum temporal*, *when*, takes the *indicative* (like *ubi*, etc.) merely to *define the time of the action*.

*Cum historical*, *when* (in the sense of ‘*while*’), takes the

---

<sup>1</sup> Render ‘*who were trying*’ by the *present participle*.

*imperfect subjunctive to describe the circumstances of the action.*

**Cum** historical, *when* (in the sense of ‘*after*’), takes the *pluperfect subjunctive to describe the circumstances of the action.*

**Cum** causal, *since*, takes the *subjunctive, all tenses.*

**Cum** concessive, *although*, takes the *subjunctive, all tenses.*

### 360.

#### EXERCISES.

I.—1. Quod oppidō sunt altissimī mūrī, Caesar ad oppidum multōs diēs morābitur et commeātibus oppidānōs prohibēre cōnābitur. 2. Nam cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs ac tēla cōnicerent, in mūrō cōsistēndī potestās erat nūllī (*possession*). 3. Eō (*adverb*) dē mediā nocte Caesar servīs<sup>1</sup> ducibus (*apposition*) ūsus (*participle*) sagittāriōs et funditōrēs subsidiō oppidānīs mīsit. 4. Prīmō adventū exercitūs nostrī hostēs crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant<sup>2</sup> parvulīsque proeliīs cum nostrīs contendēbant; posteā vallō māgnō crēbrīisque castellīs mūnitī in oppidō sē continēbant. 5. Ibi vadīs repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trāns flūmen trāducere cōnātī, ut castellum cui praecesset<sup>3</sup> Q. Titūrius lēgātus expūgnārent, omnēs hostēs ā nostrō equitātū circumventī (*participle*) interficiēbantur.

II.—1. Having feared an ambush, Caesar decided to keep all of his infantry<sup>4</sup> and cavalry in camp. 2. The enemy were informed by scouts that Caesar’s army was advancing towards their camp and was then about five thousand paces distant. 3. Having set out from camp in the second watch, Caesar hastened with the auxiliaries, which were of great use to our men, and cut down the bridge

<sup>1</sup> Ablative object of ūsus; see (353).

<sup>2</sup> Kept making; [see (101), meanings of the imperfect.]

<sup>3</sup> See (276).

<sup>4</sup> Not genitive.

that the enemy might not be able to cross the river.  
 4. Since the Belgians are attempting to drive Galba's men out of winter-quarters, Caesar will command Titurius to march into their borders at once with two new legions.

## LESSON LXIX.

### PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION. IMPERSONAL VERBS.

**361. Periphrastic conjugation.**—Learn the periphrastic conjugation of *amō*, both voices (498, 499).

The *active periphrastic* is formed by annexing parts of *sum* to the *future participle*, and is used to express what is likely—is going—to happen; as,

1. **Caesar hīs in regiōnibus** *Caesar is going to wage war in these regions*  
**bellum gestūrus est,**
2. **Hostēs impetum factūrī** *The enemy were about to make an attack upon our men*  
**erant in nostrōs,**

The *passive periphrastic* is composed of the *gerundive* and parts of *sum*, and implies *obligation* or *necessity*; as,

1. **Karthāgō dēlenda est,** *Carthage must be (has to be, ought to be) destroyed*
2. **Omnia ūnō tempore facienda** *All things had to be done at one time*  
**erant,**

**362. Dative of personal agent.**—The *dative* is used with the *gerundive* (*periphrastic passive*) to denote the *personal agent*; as, *hōc faciendum est mihi*, (literally) *this must be done by me*; it is better to recast the English sentence in the *active voice*, changing the *personal agent* to the *nominative subject*; thus, ‘I must do this.’ The idea of *necessity*, *duty*, or *obligation*, conveyed usually in English in the *active voice*, is expressed by the Latin *periphrastic passive* with the *agent* in the *dative*.

**363. Examples of the periphrastic verb.** (See Caesar's text, Book II, Chapter XX.)

1. **Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda,** *Caesar had to attend to everything at one time*
2. (Again in line 3:) **Caesarī ab opere revocandī (erant) mīlitēs,** *Caesar had to recall the soldiers from their work*
3. (Chapter XVII, last sentence—see text.) *Since the advance (march) of our column was checked (would be checked) by these circumstances, the Nervii concluded that they (sibi) ought not to disregard the advice [literally, that the advice ought not to be disregarded (**omittendum esse**, indirect discourse) by them]*

**364. Ablative absolute.**—The *ablative absolute* may be expressed by (1) a *noun* or *pronoun* and the *perfect passive participle*, as given in (287); (2) by a *noun* and an *adjective*; as, **locō idōneō**, *since the place was suitable*; (3) by a *noun* and the *present participle*; as, **nostrīs pūgnāntibus**, *while or although our men were fighting*; (4) by two *nouns*; as, **duce Caesare**, *under Caesar's leadership* (literally, *Caesar being the leader*).

**365. Impersonal verbs.**—These are so called because they do not have a person for their subject, the word *it* being used as subject in the translation.

Examples of the *impersonal* verb in the *passive, third singular*:

1. **Āriter eō locō pūgnātum est,** *A fierce battle occurred in that place (literally, it was fought fiercely, etc.)*
2. **Hostēs, ad quōs ventum erat, cōstitērunt,** *The enemy, whom we (they) overtook, halted (literally, the enemy to whom it had been come, etc.)*
3. **Eō ex proximīs castellīs celeriter concursum est,** *(Our men) rushed thither quickly from the nearest redoubts (it was rushed thither, etc.)*

## 366.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Sēquani, quod Caesarem cum exercitū ad sē iter facere audiēbant, omne frūmentum praeter (*except*) id quod sēcum portātūrī erant incendērunt et ex suīs fīnibus discessērunt. 2. Caesar vult (*wishes*) manūs hostium distinērī nē cum tantā multitūdine sibi ūnō tempore cōfligendum sit (*impersonal*). 3. Ubi neutrī (*nom. plur.*) flūminis trānseundi initium faciunt, secundiōre' equitum proeliō' nostrīs, Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. 4. Oppidum oppūgnāre cōnātus quod vacuum ab defēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mīrīque altitūdinem paucis dēfēndentibus<sup>2</sup> expīgnāre nōn potuit. 5. Caesar equitātū praemīsō omnibus cōpīis subsequēbātur et, quod ad hostēs appropīnquābat, suā cōsuētūdine ipse sex legiōnēs expedītās dūcēbat; post eās tōtius exercitūs impedīmenta conlocāvit atque duae legiōnēs quae proximē cōnscrīptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praeſidiōque impedīmentis erant.

II.—1. Greatly alarmed<sup>3</sup> by the approach of our army, the Suessiones sent ambassadors to Caesar to ask for<sup>4</sup> peace. 2. Caesar placed Galba in command of (those) forces which had been sent<sup>5</sup> to him by the Aedui and he himself, after encouraging<sup>6</sup> his men, drew up a triple line of battle. 3. After the enemy's camp had been burned and their army routed, Caesar concluded that he ought<sup>7</sup> to demand many hostages.

<sup>1</sup> See *ablative absolute*, example (2).

<sup>2</sup> See *ablative absolute* (3).

<sup>3</sup> Modifies the subject.

<sup>4</sup> See (355), 'how to express purpose.'

<sup>5</sup> Not *relative clause*, but *p. p. p.*

<sup>6</sup> = 'having encouraged.'

<sup>7</sup> See 'dative of agent,' example (3)—literally 'that many hostages ought to be demanded by him.'

## LESSON LXX.

## THE RELATIVE PRONOUN AS AN INTRODUCTORY WORD.

**367. Learn the verb *volō*, *I wish* (487).**

*Learn the comparison of ‘irregular adjectives and adverbs’ (472, 473).*

**Relative as a connective.**—Frequently in Latin independent sentences are connected by the *relative*, which is usually translated by a conjunction (*and*, *now*, etc.) + a *demonstrative pronoun*; as,

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Quae omnia ab his dili-<br>genter ad diem facta<br>sunt ( <i>Caesar</i> , Book II,<br>chapt. v, line 3),                           | <i>Now all these things were done<br/>by the latter carefully to the<br/>day</i>   |
| 2. Qui cum sē suaque omnia<br>in oppidum Bratuspan-<br>tium contulissent (chapt.<br>xiii, line 4),                                    | <i>Now after they (those) had taken<br/>refuge with all their posses-<br/>sions in the town of Bratus-<br/>pantium</i>   |
| 3. Cūius adventū spē illatā<br>(from īferō) mīlitibus<br>... paulum hostium im-<br>petus tardātus est (chapt.<br>xxv, last sentence), | <i>And hope being inspired in the<br/>soldiers on account of his<br/>arrival (the arrival of that<br/>one), the charge of the enemy<br/>was checked a little</i> |

**368. Relative of cause or concession.**—When *qui* = *cum* *is*, *cum eī* (*since* or *although he, they*), expressing *cause* or *concession*, the verb in the relative clause is in the *subjunctive*; as,

*Aduatuci dixérunt: nōn exīsti-  
māre Rōmānōs sine ope-  
dīvinā bellum gerere, qui  
tantās māchinātiōnēs prō-  
movēre possent,*

*The Aduatuci said they did not  
think the Romans waged war  
without divine assistance,  
since (causal *qui*) they could  
move forward such machines  
of war*

In the *direct discourse* this relative clause takes the *subjunctive*.

**369. Ablative with the comparative.**—The comparative degree is followed by the *ablative*, signifying *than*; as,  
**Rōmānī erant fortiorēs Gallīs,** *The Romans were braver than the Gauls*

The comparative may be followed by **quam**, ‘*than*,’ the following noun taking the case required by the context. After **minus**, **amplius**, and the like, **quam** is often omitted without affecting the construction.

**370. Verbs of hindering.**—Verbs of *hindering*, *preventing*, and the like, *when negated*, are followed by **quīn** or **quōminus** and the *subjunctive*; by **nē** (sometimes **quōminus**) *when not negated*. **Prohibēre** usually has *accusative + infinitive*. **quīn**, etc. + *subjunctive* may be translated by ‘*from*’ and the *gerund* (ending in ‘*ing*’); as,

**Nōn poterant dēterrēre Aeduōs** *They were not able to prevent quīn cum Belgīs cōsentīrent* *the Aedui from conspiring with the Belgians*

### 371.

### EXERCISE.

- When Caesar learned that all the states had been subdued, he decided to place his men in winter-quarters: [translate *when* by **ubi** or **cum** with attention to mood of *learned*—see (203, 358, 359)—and explain *difference in meaning*.]
- Unless Caesar sends help to the Remi, they will not be able to hold out against the Gauls: [write ‘*sends*’ in *two tenses*, see (223), and explain relation of the *time of its action* to the *time of the action of the principal verb ‘will not be able.’*]
- If the enemy should attempt to cross, our men would attack (*aggredivor*) and drive them back: [see (335).]
- The enemy fear that Caesar will not accept hostages. Caesar feared that the enemy would capture (*potior*) Galba’s

camp: [*'verbs of fearing,'* see (343); for case of the *object* of *potior*, see (353).] 5. Since the Roman soldiers excel (*praestō*) all in courage, they will easily conquer many tribes: [*cum*, '*since*,' see (350); '*all*,' for use and meaning of, see (258); for its *case*, see (337).]

## LESSON LXXI.

### ADVERBIAL ACCUSATIVE. ABLATIVE OF QUALITY.

#### 372. Learn the verb *nōlō*, *I am unwilling* (488).

**Substitutions for the perfect active participle.**—In place of the *perfect active participle* (lacking in Latin) the *perfect participle of a deponent verb* may be used (340); in case the Latin verb is *not a deponent*, the participial clause must be *recast* in the *passive* and expressed by the *Ablative Absolute*; thus, *having killed a large number of the enemy the cavalry retreated into camp*. Since *interficiō* is *not a deponent*, recast in the *passive*: '*a large number . . . having been killed*,' etc.; *māgnō hostium numerō interfectō nostrī in castra sē recēpērunt*.

The ablative absolute may be translated like a *subordinate clause* introduced by *cum*, *quod*, *ubi*, etc.; as, *cum māgnus hostium numerus interfectus esset, nostri in castra sē recēpērunt*, *when (after) a large number . . . had been killed*, etc.

**373. Relative pronoun agreeing with a predicate word.**—Sometimes the relative agrees with the *predicate noun in its own clause* instead of its *antecedent*; as,

*Rōma quod est caput<sup>1</sup> Italiae, Rome which is the capital of Italy*

**374. Adverbial accusative.**—A neuter pronoun or adjective is often used in the accusative with an adverbial force;

---

<sup>1</sup>**Caput**, genitive **capitis**, literally '*head*,' is a *neuter noun of the third declension*.

as, *quid possum*, *what can I?* *what power or strength do I possess?* *hōc tē moneō*. *I give you this advice.*

**375. Perfect participle passive with *habeō* or *teneō*.**—The p. p. p. (with *habeō* or *teneō*) modifying a noun in a predicate sense denotes *the continued effect of the action of its verb* and is translated with an *active meaning*; as, **Caesar habuit māgnum exercitum coāctum**, *Caesar had a large army all collected.* Here *habuit coāctum* almost equals *coēgerat*.

**376. Ablative of quality.**—*Quality* is expressed by the *ablative* accompanied by an adjective; this is often called the ‘*Descriptive Ablative*.’ **Vir, homō**, or some such word is sometimes to be supplied with this ablative: **est māgnā auctōritāte**, *he is (a man) of great influence.*

### 377.

### EXERCISE.

1. The chiefs knew how great a calamity they had brought upon their state: [‘*had brought*’; see (313) for mood of ‘*indirect question*’; see (337) for the case of ‘*state*.’] 2. Caesar informs the Gauls that he will not make war upon those states that give hostages: [‘*informs*, *certiōrem facere*, see (333); ‘*will make*,’ see (318), *example 3*; ‘*give*,’ see (276), ‘*intermediate clauses in indirect discourse*.’] 3. The enemy came to Caesar to excuse (*excūsō*) themselves: [write the purpose clause in *four ways* as given in (355)]. 4. Although the Germans were departing from (*ex*) Gaul, Caesar decided that he ought to check (*impediō*) their departure: [‘*although*,’ concessive *cum*, see (350); ‘*that he ought*,’ see (362, 363), ‘*dative of personal agent*,’ and *example (3) of periphrastic verb*.] 5. The Belgians will persuade the Germans to cross the Rhine: [*persuādeō*, see (345).]

## LESSON LXXII.

PARTITIVE GENITIVE. ABLATIVE WITH **OPUS**  
AND **ŪSUS**.

378. Learn *mālō*, *I prefer* (489).

**Partitive genitive.**—Words denoting a *part* are followed by a *genitive of the whole* from which the part is taken; as, *nihil vīnī*, *no wine (nothing of wine)*. *Exceptions:* Cardinal numerals (one, two, three, etc.) regularly take ē (*ex*) or dē + ablative instead of the *partitive genitive*; so usually *quidam (certain)*; as, *ūnus ex iīs*, *one of those*; *quidam ex militibūs*, *certain (some) of the soldiers*.

379. **Ablative with *opus* and *ūsus*.**—*Opus* and *ūsus*, meaning *need*, take the *ablative* of the *thing needed* or *wanted* and the *dative* of the *person who needs*; as, *mihi est opus virtūte*, *I have need of courage*. *Opus* is sometimes in the *predicate* with the *thing needed* as *nominative subject*: *sī quid opus est*, *if there is any need*.

380. **Persuādeō in the passive construction.**—Intransitive verbs governing the *dative* (see 348) are used *impersonally* in the *passive* and *retain the dative*. The *dative* of the *active* does *not* become the *subject of the passive*; as,

*Active:*

*Hīs* (dative) *persuādēre* *nōn* *They could not persuade these poterant*, *(people)*

*Passive:*

*Hīs* (dative) *persuādērī* (pas- *These (people) could not be per- sive) nōn poterat,<sup>1</sup>* *suaed*

381. **Perfect participle passive translated as a finite (co-ordinate) verb.**—The p. p. p. limiting and describing a

<sup>1</sup> Literally, *it was not able to be (could not be) persuaded—made sweet—to these.*

noun is often used in Latin, where English would make use of a *co-ordinate verb*; as,

**Caesar suās cōpiās ē castrīs ēductās īstrūxit,** *Caesar led his forces out of camp and drew them up (in battle array)*

**Nostrī hostēs circumventōs interfēcerunt,<sup>1</sup>** *Our men surrounded and killed the enemy*

**382. Substitution for the future infinitive.**—The *future infinitive* in supineless verbs and usually in the *passive voice* of any verb is expressed by the periphrasis **futūrum esse** (or *fore*) **ut + subjunctive**. This periphrasis is sometimes used in the *active voice* of a regular verb. When the sentence *Caesar said that he would demand hostages* is written in Latin, ‘*would demand*’ is placed in the *infinitive* according to the rule of *indirect discourse*, since it depends upon ‘*said*’; but **poscō**, which has no supine, lacks the *future infinitive*. The sentence, therefore, must be turned thus: *Caesar said it would be that he would demand hostages*.

In the following sentences notice carefully *sequence of tenses* in the periphrases:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>1. Caesar dīxit futūrum esse ut obsidēs posceret,</b>                            | <i>Caesar said it would be that he would demand hostages</i>                           |
| <b>2. Caesar exīstimat futūrum esse ut hostēs vincantur,</b>                        | <i>Caesar thinks the enemy will be conquered</i>                                       |
| <b>3. Dīxērunt futūrum esse ut reliquae legiōnēs contrā cōsistere nōn audērent,</b> | <i>They declared that the rest of the legions would not dare to stand against them</i> |

### 383.

### EXERCISE.

- Having delayed near the town a few days and (*omit*) having destroyed many fortifications, Caesar decided to lead his army against the Bellovaci: [‘*having delayed*,’ see (340); ‘*having destroyed*,’ see (372).] 2. The Nervii who

---

<sup>1</sup> See (316), ‘use and agreement of participle,’ example 2.

had been sent as an aid to Caesar could not be deterred by the Gauls from marching into Italy: [*'who had been sent,'* render by one Latin word (p. p. p.), see (316); *'as an aid,'* = *for an aid*, see (352); *'from marching,'* see (370).] 3. Because Caesar kept hearing that the enemy's forces had been collected and were coming towards him, he decided that he ought to begin battle on the next day: [Order: *'Caesar because he kept,'* etc.; *'had been collected,'* render by the p. p. p., see (381), and omit *'and'*; *'he ought to begin,'* recast in the passive, see (362) and (363), example 3.]

## LESSON LXXIII.

### RELATIVE CLAUSE OF RESULT.

#### 384. Review words 1–42 (399).

**The ablative *quō* (= *ut eō*) with the comparative.** — The ablative *quō* (*ut eō, so that thereby, by it*) is used to introduce *purpose clauses containing a comparative*; as,

Tenerīs arbōribus incīsīs atque īflexīs, quō facilius fīnitimōrum equitātum impedīrent, (see chapt. xvii, line 16,)

Young trees being notched and bent down so that they could thereby (by it) more easily check the cavalry of their neighbours

Caesar manipulōs laxāre ius- sit, quō facilius gladiīs ūtī possent, (chapt. xxv, *ad finem*,)

Caesar ordered them to open out their ranks so as to handle their swords with better effect

#### 385. How to express 'ought' or 'must.'

*I ought to do this* may be rendered:

1. By *dēbeō* + *infinitive*: *hōc facere dēbeō*.
2. By *oportet* (*impersonal verb*): (a) With *accusative* + *infinitive*: *mē hōc facere oportet*; [*'it behooves me to do this.'*] (b) With *subjunctive*: *hōc faciam oportet*; [*note sequence; compare (c) below.*]

3. By *gerundive (periphrastic passive)*: *hōc faciendum est mihi*; [what literally? see (362), ‘*dative of personal agent.*’]

*Past action* of these verbs may be expressed by placing *dēbeō* or *oportet* in the *tense required*, the *infinitive remaining present*; as,

- (a) *Hōc facere dēbūi,*
  - (b) *Mē hōc facere oportuit*
  - (c) *Hōc facerem<sup>1</sup> oportuit,*
  - (d) *Hēc mihi faciendum erat,*
- } *I ought to have done this*

**386. Place to which (end of motion); place from which.—**  
 The place to which is expressed by *ad* or *in + accusative*; but the names of *towns* or *small islands* together with *domus* (*home*) and *rūs* (*country*) are put in the *accusative without a preposition*; as, *domum revertit*, *he returned home*; *rūs* (*neut.*) *ibit*, *he will go to the country*. The place *from which* is denoted by *ab*, *dē*, or *ex + ablative*; but with the names of *towns* or *small islands*, and also *domus* and *rūs*, the *ablative is used without a preposition*; as, *Romā abiit*, *he went from Rome*; *domō profectī sunt*, *they set out from home*.

**387. Relative clauses of result.—***Relative clauses of result* are introduced by the relative *qui* or the adverbs *unde*, *ubi*, *quō*, etc., with the antecedent expressed or implied in the main clause; as,

**Effēcerant ut īinstar mūrī hae  
saepēs mūnimenta praebebē-  
rent, quō nōn modo nōn in-  
trārī sed nē perspicī quidem  
posset**, (chapt. xvii, *ad finem*,)

*They had caused these hedges to  
furnish fortifications like a  
wall into which (whither, as  
a result) one could not only  
not enter, but not even see*

<sup>1</sup> Observe that *facerem* is *imperfect*, depending upon *oportuit*, a verb of *past time*.

## 388.

## EXERCISE.

1. Our men with the cavalry surrounded and killed the foremost (men) who had crossed the river: [*'surrounded,'* render by the p. p. p., see (381), and omit *'and'*; *'foremost,'* see (258).] 2. If the enemy should not surrender, Caesar would not prevent his (men) from burning their town: [The *'less vivid future condition,'* see (335); *'would prevent,'* write in two ways with **impediō** and **prohibeō**; see (370).] 3. If hostages are given to Caesar so that he may know that the enemy will do those (things) which they are promising, he will make peace with them: [*'are given,'* write in two tenses; see (223); what kind of a condition is this? *'will do,'* future infinitive; *'those things,'* see (258); *'are promising,'* subjunctive by attraction; see (276). Observe the *sequence of tenses.*] .

## LESSON LXXIV.

## COMMANDS AND EXHORTATIONS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

## 389. Review words 43–84 (399).

*See imperative of nōlō (488).*

Commands and exhortations are put in the imperative, negative *nē* (never *nōn*); as,

1. Affirmative command: **Ad Belgās adī et eōs in officiō continē**, *Go to the Belgians and keep them in allegiance.*
2. Negative command: **Nōlī hōc facere**, *Do not do this*, (literally, *'be unwilling to do this'*). **Nōlī + infinitive** is preferred to **nē + present imperative**, *nē* being generally used with the *perfect subjunctive* in a direct address or command; as, *nē hōc fēceris, thou shalt not do this.* When the phrase **nōlī facere**, *'do not do this,'* is changed to *indirect discourse*, as, *he told him not to do this*, the nega-

*tive adverb **nē** must be used in place of **nōiī** (see following rule).*

**390. Commands and exhortations in indirect discourse.—**  
The imperative of the *direct discourse* becomes *subjunctive of the indirect, negative nē*. The application of the *rule of sequence* may be aided by a study of the following tables:

Indicative mood.		Subjunctive mood.	
Tenses			
not	{ <i>Present</i>	followed	{ <i>Present</i> (referring to act
com-	{ <i>Future</i>	by	not completed)
pleted	{ <i>Future-perfect</i>		{ <i>Perfect</i> (referring to act
			completed)
Tenses			
com-	{ <i>Imperfect</i>	followed	{ <i>Imperfect</i> (referring to
pleted	{ <i>Perfect</i>	by	act not completed)
	{ <i>Pluperfect</i>		{ <i>Pluperfect</i> (referring to
			act completed)

391.

## EXAMPLES.

- (a) Veniet ut obsidēs postulet,  
                   *He will come to demand hostages (purpose)*

(b) Rogat cur vēneris,  
                   *He asks why you came (indirect question)*

(c) Cum esset Caesar in Gallia, vēnērunt lēgātī,  
                   *While Caesar was in Gaul, legates came (cum temporal)*

(d) Non dubitāvit quin hostēs portiter pugnāvissent  
                   *(quīn clause),*  
                   *He didn't doubt that the enemy had fought bravely*

392. Mood in *Oratio Oblīqua*. [See 301, 302, 305, 306.]—

In changing from *direct* to *indirect discourse*, if the main clause contains a *statement (indicative)*, the verb of this clause is turned into an *infinitive*; if the main clause contains an *imperative*, the verb is turned into a *subjunctive*; all subordinate verbs are put in the *subjunctive*; as,

1. (a) Statement in O. R.:

**Caesar dicit: 'In officiō Gallōs continēbō,'** *Caesar says: 'I will keep the Gauls in allegiance'*

(b) Statement in O. O.:

**Caesar dicit sē in officiō Gallōs** *Caesar says that he will keep, contentūrum esse,* etc.

(c) Statement in O. O.:

**Caesar dīxit sē in officiō Gallōs** *Caesar said that he would keep, contentūrum esse,* etc.

2. (a) Affirmative command in O. R.:

**Caesar respondet : 'Continēte Gallōs in officiō'** *Caesar replies : 'Keep the Gauls in allegiance'*

(b) Affirmative command in O. O.:

**Caesar respondet in officiō Gallōs contineant,** *Caesar replies that they must<sup>1</sup> keep the Gauls in allegiance*

(c) Affirmative command in O. O.:

**Caesar respondit in officiō Gallōs continērent,** *Caesar replied that they should keep, etc.*

3. (a) Negative command in O. R.:

**'Nōlīte īferre quam iniūriam hīs,'** *'Do not inflict any harm upon these people'*

(b) Negative command in O. O.:

**Caesar dīcit nē hīs quam in-iūriam īferant,** *Caesar says that they must not inflict, etc.*

(c) Negative command in O. O.:

**Caesar dīxit nē hīs quam in-iūriam īferrent,** *Caesar said that they must not, etc.*

393. Compare (1) *a* and *b*: the *first person*, 'I,' becomes *third person*, 'he'; the *indicative* becomes *infinitive*, time remaining *future*. Compare (2) *a*, *b*, and *c*: when *a* is changed to *b*, the *mood* of the *verb* changes, but the *tense* remains *present*; when *a* becomes *c*, though both *mood* and *tense* are changed, the imperfect *continērent* denotes the *same time* (in its new relation) as is indicated by the verb *keep* in *a*. (See *table* and *rule of sequence*.)

---

<sup>1</sup> should.

## 394.

## EXERCISE.

1. Caesar says: ‘I cannot (present indicative of **possum**) cross the river because the enemy have destroyed the bridge’: [write again in O. O. *twice*: *first* after ‘Caesar says,’ and *second* after ‘Caesar said.’] 2. ‘Give me a large number of hostages’: [write again in O. O. *two ways*: first, Caesar informs the enemy that they must give *him*, etc.; second, Caesar *informed*, etc.] 3. ‘Do not deprive the Aedui of their arms’ (*ablative* of separation): [put in O. O.: Caesar *tells* and *told* his generals *not to*, etc.]

## LESSON LXXV.

## HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE.

**395. Hortatory subjunctive.**—The simple *subjunctive of exhortation or command*, called the ‘Hortatory Subjunctive’ (from **hortor**, *I urge*), is used in the *present tense* and in the *first* or *third persons*. It is usually translated by ‘*let*’ placed before the meaning of the verb; as, **contendamus**, *let us hasten*; **retineant memoriam virtutis**, *let them retain the memory of (keep in mind) their courage*.

When turned into O. O. (indirect discourse) the hortatory subjunctive *remains subjunctive*, being *present* in form after a verb of saying, etc., whose tense does *not* indicate *past time*, but *imperfect* when the tense of the verb of saying *does* indicate *past time*; as,

‘ <b>Hostēs congregantur!</b> ’	‘ <i>Let the enemy engage!</i> ’
<b>Caesar dicit hostēs congregantur,</b>	<i>Caesar says, let the enemy engage</i>
<b>Caesar dīxit hostēs congrede-rentur,</b>	<i>Caesar said, let the enemy engage</i>

**396. Conditions in indirect discourse.**—In O. O. all difference in form between the *more vivid* and the *less*

*vivid future condition* is effaced, the verb of the apodosis in both being rendered by the *future infinitive*, and that of the protasis going into the *subjunctive*.

1. O. R. *If hostages are given to me, I will make peace.* This (the more vivid future) is written in *two ways*: see (223).

(a) **Sī obsidēs mihi dabuntur, pācem faciam;** [dabuntur = future, *unfinished time*.]

(b) **Sī obsidēs mihi datī erunt, pācem faciam;** [datī erunt = future-perfect, time *finished in the future before another future action*.]

When written after *dīcit*, (a) becomes [O. O.]:

(c) **Caesar dīcit, sī obsidēs sibi dentur, sē pācem factūrum esse.**

Written after *dīxit*, (a) becomes [O. O.]:

(d) **Caesar dīxit, sī obsidēs sibi darentur, sē pācem factūrum esse.**

Written after *dīcit*, (b) becomes [O. O.]:

(e) **Caesar dīcit, sī obsidēs sibi datī sint, sē pācem factūrum esse.**

Written after *dīxit*, (b) becomes [O. O.]:

(f) **Caesar dīxit, sī obsidēs sibi datī essent, sē pācem factūrum esse.**

2. O. R. *If hostages should be given to me, I would make peace* (less vivid future): see (335).

(a) **Sī obsidēs mihi dentur, pācem faciam** (*present subjunctive*).

Written after *dīcit*, it is:

(b) **Caesar dīcit, sī obsidēs sibi dentur, sē pācem factūrum esse.**

Written after *dīxit*, it is:

(c) **Caesar dīxit, sī obsidēs sibi darentur, sē pācem factūrum esse.**

Compare (b) and (c) in the *less vivid* with (c) and (d) in the *more vivid*.

397. Subordinate clauses depending upon *infinitive verbs* in *indirect discourse* get their *sequence* usually from the *main verb of saying, telling, etc.*, rather than from the *infinitive*; as,

**Caesar dicit sē fīnitimīs im-**  
**perātūrum nē Aeduīs iniū-**  
**riam īferant** (*present*),

**Caesar dīxit sē fīnitimīs im-**  
**perātūrum nē Aeduīs iniū-**  
**riam īferrent** (*imperfect*),

*Caesar says that he will com-*  
*mand—Caesar said that he*  
*would command—their neigh-*  
*boors not to do violence to the*  
*Aedui*

## 398.

## EXERCISE.

1. If the scouts sent forward during (in) the first watch inform Caesar in what direction the enemy are fleeing, Caesar will pursue without delay with all his forces: [*'sent forward,' p. p. p. agreeing with the subject; 'inform,' render by future indicative; 'in what direction,' quam in partem; 'are fleeing,' subjunctive, see (313).*]
2. Write the above sentence after **Caesar dīxit** thus: Caesar said that, if the scouts . . . informed him in what direction . . . were fleeing, *he would pursue . . . , etc.*

## 399.

## REVIEW VOCABULARY.

## LESSONS LXIII—LXXV.

1. **suprā** (adv.), *above*
2. **successus, successūs** (mas.), *advance*
3. **posteā** (adv.), *afterwards*
4. **rūrsus** (adv.), *again*
5. **sōlus, sōla, sōlum** (adj.), *alone or only*
6. **in** (prep. with the *abl.*), *among*
7. **diūtius** (adv.), *longer*
8. **ut** (**utī**) (conj.), *as or so that*
9. **cum prīmum**, *as soon as*
10. **ünō tempore**, *at one and the same time*
11. **īnsīgne, īnsīgnis** (neut.), *badge*
12. **praesum, praeesse, praefuī**, *be in command of*

13. **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, bear**
14. **coepī, coepisse, coeptus sum** (defective verb), *begin*
15. **post** (prep. with the *acc.*), *behind or after*
16. **audācter** (adv.), *boldly*
17. **addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductum, bring (to)**
18. **negōtium, negōtī** (neut.), *business*
19. **sed etiam** (conj.), *but also*
20. **captīvus, captīvī** (mas.), *captive*
21. **potior, potīrī, potītus sum**, *capture*
22. **centuriō, centuriōnis** (mas.), *centurion*
23. **certus, certa, certum** (adj.), *certain*
24. **tegimentum, tegimentī** (neut.), *covering*
25. **dēfēnsor, dēfēnsōris** (mas.), *defender*
26. **dēspērō, dēspērāre, dēspērāvī, dēspērātum, despair, cease to hope**
27. **octō** (indeclin. num. adj.), *eight*
28. **negōtium dare, employ**
29. **cohortor, cohortārī, cohortātus sum** (depon.), *encourage*
30. **hostis, hostis** (mas.), *enemy*
31. **longē** (adv.), *far*
32. **vereor, verērī, veritus sum** (depon.), *fear*
33. **pābulum, pābulī** (neut.), *fodder*
34. **nam** (conj.), *for*
35. **vīs, vīs** (fem.), *force or vigor*
36. **vadum, vadī** (neut.), *ford*
37. **superior, superior, superius** (adj.), *former*
38. **crēber, crēbra, crēbrum** (adj.), *frequent*
39. **manus, manūs** (fem.), *hand or band*
40. **plūrimum posse, plūrimum valēre, have very great power**
41. **prōgressus, -a, -um** (perf. particip. of **prōgredior**), *having advanced*
42. **adortus, -a, -um** (perf. particip. of **adorior**), *having attacked*
43. **collātus, -a, -um** (perf. particip. of **cōferō**), *having been collected*
44. **subsecūtus, -a, -um** (perf. particip. of **subsequor**), *having followed after, having pursued*

45. **impeditus, -a, -um** (perf. particip. of **impediō**), *hindered*  
 46. **ego** (personal pron. first person), *I*  
 47. **auctōritās, auctōritātis** (fem.), *influence*  
 48. **certiōrem facere** (followed by the *acc.* and *infin.*), *inform*  
 49. **iniūria, iniūriae** (fem.), *injury*  
 50. **ita utī** (adv.), *just as*  
 51. **minus** (adv.), *less*  
 52. **minus facile** (adv.), *less easily*  
 53. **mercātor, mercātōris**, *merchant*  
 54. **ad** (prep. with the *acc.*), *near*  
 55. **necessārius, necessāria, necessārium** (adj.), *necessary*  
 56. **nōn modo** (conj.), *not only*  
 57. **magistrātus, magistrātūs** (mas.), *officer*  
 58. **adversus, adversa, adversum** (adj.), *opposite*  
 59. **passus, passa, passum** (adj.), *outstretched*  
 60. **passus, passūs** (mas.), *pace*  
 61. **persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsum, persuade**  
 62. **praeficere** (with *acc.* and *dat.*), *place in command over*  
 63. **populor, populārī, populātus sum** (depon.), *plunder*  
 64. **regiō, regiōnis** (fem.), *region*  
 65. **opīniō, opīniōnis** (fem.), *report*  
 66. **cēterī, cēterae, cētera** (adj.), *the rest*  
 67. **excursiō, excursiōnis** (fem.), *sally*  
 68. **videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, see**  
 69. **ipse, ipsa, ipsum** (intensive pron.), *he or self*  
 70. **brevitās, brevitātis** (fem.), *shortness*  
 71. **cum** (conj.), *since*  
 72. **parvulus, parvula, parvulum** (adj.), *slight*  
 73. **tam** (adv.), *so, such*  
 74. **Suessiōnēs, Suessiōnum** (mas.), *Suessiones*  
 75. **decimus, decima, decimum** (num. adj.), *tenth*  
 76. **condiciō, condiciōnis** (fem.), *terms*  
 77. **tum, inde, deinde** (adverbs), *then*  
 78. **mīlle** (indecl. adj.; noun in plur.), **mīlia, mīlīum**, *thou-  
sand*  
 79. **sub vesperum**, *towards evening*  
 80. **dē imprōvīsō**, *unexpectedly*

81. *ūsus, ūsūs* (mas.), *use*  
 82. *ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum*, *to use*  
 83. *complūrēs, complūrēs, complūra (-ia)* (adj.), *very many*  
 84. *incrēdibilis, incrēdibilis, incrēdibile* (adj.), *incredible*

### SPECIMENS OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

**400. O. O.** (Caesar, Book II, Chapt. 32.)—Ad haec Caesar respondit: ‘Sē magis cōnsuētūdine suā quam meritō eōrum cīvitātem cōservātūrum, sī, prius quam mūrum ariēs attigisset, sē dēdidissent; sed dēditiōnis nūllam esse condiciōnem nisi armīs trāditīs. Sē id quod in Nerviīs fēcisset factūrum, fīnitimīsque imperātūrum nē quam dēditiīciīs populī Rōmānī iniūriam īferrent.’

**401. O. R.**—‘Magis cōnsuētūdine *meā* quam meritō *vestrō* cīvitātem *cōservābō*, sī, prius quam mūrum ariēs *attigerit, vōs dēdideritis*; sed dēditiōnis *nūlla est condiciō* nisi armīs trāditīs. Id quod in Nerviīs *fēcī faciam*, fīnitimīsque *imperābō* nē quam dēditiīciīs populī Rōmānī iniūriam *īferant*.’

**402. O. O.** (Caesar, Book I, Chapt. 13.)—Is respondit: ‘Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōstituisset atque esse voluisset: sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, reminīscerētur et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod im-prōviō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum eī qui flūmen trānsīssent suīs auxiliū ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae māgnopere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs dēspiceret: sē ita ā patribus māiōribusque suīs didicisse ut magis virtūtē contendērēt quam dolō aut īsidiīs nīterērēt. Quā rē nē committeret ut is locus ubi cōnstitiſſent ex calamitātē populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.’

**403. O. R.**—‘Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiis fuciet, in eam partem ibunt atque ibi erunt Helvētiī, ubi eōs cōnstitueris<sup>1</sup> atque esse volueris: sīn bellō persequī persevērabit, reminiscere (*imperative*) et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō nūnum pāgum abortus es, cum cī quī flūmen trānsierant suīs auxiliū ferre nōn possent, nōlī ob eam rem aut tuae māgnopere virtūtī tribuere [*nē tribueris*], aut nōs dēspicere [*dēspexeris*]: nōs ita ā patribus māiōribusque nostrīs didicimus ut magis virtūte contendāmus quam dolō aut īsidiīs nītāmur. Quā rē nōlī committere ut is locus ubi cōstitimus ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen capiat aut memoriam prōdat.’

**404. O. O.** (Caesar, Book I, Chapt. 35.)—Hīs respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs, iterum ad Ariovistum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit: (line 7) ‘haec esse quae ab eō postulāret: prīmum, nē quam multitūdinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde, obsidēs quōs habēret ab Aeduīs redderet, Sēquanīsque permitteret ut quōs illī habērent voluntāte cīus reddere illīs licēret; nēve Aeduōs iniūriā lacerret, nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum īferret. Sī id ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuam grātiām atque amīcitiam cum eō futūram; sī nōn impetrāret, sēsē (..... line 25) Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum.’

**405. O. R.**—‘Haec sunt quae ab eō postulō: prīmum, nē quam multitūdinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum trādūcat; [*let him not lead across*]—hortatory subjunc.] deinde, obsidēs quōs habeat ab Aeduīs reddat, [*let him*

<sup>1</sup> In the treatment of this passage in direct discourse, we regard Caesar as addressed in person and place the main verbs in the second pers. sing.; thus, ‘Where thou, O Caesar, shalt place us,’ etc. In order to retain the second person of the verb, the form **reminiscere** is given, rather than **reminisceat**.

return,'] Sēquanīsque permittat ut quōs illī habeant voluntāte ēius reddere illīs liceat; nēve Aeduōs iniūriā laccessat, nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum īferat. Sī id ita fēcerit, mihi populōque Rōmānō perpetua grātia atque amīcītia cum eō erit; sī nōn impetrābō, . . . . Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglegam.'

**406. O. O.** (Caesar, Book II, Chapt. 14.)—Prō hīs Dīvi-tiācus . . . facit verba: ‘Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcītī cīvitātī Aeduāe fuisse: impulsōs ā suīs pīncipībus, quī dīcerent Aeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnīs indīgnitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Aeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī ēius cōnsilī pīncipēs fuissent, quod intellegērent quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgisse. Petere nōn sōlum Bellovacōs sed etiam prō hīs Aeduōs ut suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod sī fēcerit (perf. subj.) Aeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum, quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōnsuērint.’

**407. O. R.**—‘Bellovacī omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcītī cīvitātī Aeduāe fuērunt: impulsī ā suīs pīncipībus, quī dīcēbant Aeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnīs indīgnitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Aeduīs dēfēcērunt et populō Rōmānō bellum intulērunt. (Eī) quī ēius cōnsilī pīncipēs fuerant, quod intellegēbant quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgērunt. Petunt nōn sōlum Bellovacī sed etiam prō hīs Aeduī ut tuā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtāris. Quod sī fēceris (fut. perf. indic.) Aeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificābis, quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua bella incidērunt, sustentāre cōnsuērunt.’

## LESSON LXXVI.

## CAESAR, BOOK II, CHAPTER I, ADAPTED AND SIMPLIFIED.

*The Belgae conspire against Caesar.*

**408.**—Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Gallia<sup>1</sup> in hibernis,<sup>2</sup> ita utī<sup>3</sup> suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, litterīs<sup>4</sup> Labiēnī certior<sup>5</sup> fīēbat omnēs Belgās<sup>6</sup> contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē<sup>7</sup> dare. Belgae coniūrabant pīmum, quod verēbantur nē<sup>8</sup> omnī Galliā pācātā<sup>9</sup> ad<sup>10</sup> eōs exercitūs noster addūcerētur; deinde,<sup>11</sup> quod sollicitābantur ab<sup>12</sup> nōnnūllīs Gallīs quī, ut nōluerant<sup>13</sup> Germānōs<sup>14</sup> diūtius in Galliā versārī, ita<sup>15</sup> exercitūm<sup>16</sup> populī Rōmānī hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā nōlēbant.

**409.**—After Caesar had come<sup>1</sup> into hither Gaul, Labienus informed<sup>2</sup> him that all the Belgians had been incited<sup>3</sup> by the Gauls<sup>4</sup> and had conspired<sup>5</sup> against the Roman people. Some Gauls who feared that<sup>6</sup> all Gaul would be subdued<sup>7</sup> by our army<sup>8</sup> incited the Belgians with whom<sup>9</sup> they conspired against Caesar.

**408.**—<sup>1</sup> Adverbial phrases, modifying *esset*. <sup>2</sup> *ita nti*, 'just as.' <sup>3</sup> 'Abl. of means'; see (43 b). <sup>4</sup> *certior + pass.* (see 338); notice the force of the *imperf.*, 'he was being informed.' <sup>5</sup> Acc. subj. (indir. disc.) of *coniurare* and *dare*; see (301, 302, 318). <sup>6</sup> *inter se dare*, 'were exchanging.' <sup>7</sup> With verb of *fear*; see (343). <sup>8</sup> Abl. absol. <sup>9</sup> 'against them.' <sup>10</sup> Mod. *coniurabant*; 'in the second place they kept conspiring.' <sup>11</sup> Pers. agent; see (237). <sup>12</sup> *ut + indic.* = 'as'; note the force of the pluperf., 'as they had been unwilling.' <sup>13</sup> Acc. subj. of *versari*; 'that the Germans should remain.' <sup>14</sup> *ita nolabant*; see the force of the *imperf.*, 'were also unwilling.' <sup>15</sup> Acc. subj. of the two following infinitives, 'that the army of . . . should winter,' etc.

**409.**—<sup>1</sup> *cum + pluperf. subjunc.*; see (263). <sup>2</sup> *certiore + act.*; see (333); why *cum*, not *se?* see (214). <sup>3</sup> Notice that the voice is *pass.*; *indir. disc.*; see (301, 302, 305, 318). <sup>4</sup> Pers. agent; see (237). <sup>5</sup> The *active* voice, *indir. disc.* <sup>6</sup> Verbs of *fear*; see (343). <sup>7</sup> Sequence of tense; see (135). <sup>8</sup> Abl. of means without a preposition; see (43 b). <sup>9</sup> *cum*, 'with,' is post-positive with the *personal*, *reflexive*, and *relative pronouns*; **quibuscum**.

## LESSON LXXVII.

## CHAPTER I, CONTINUED.

*Additional reasons for the conspiracy. Caesar's preparations.*

**410.**—Belgae sollicitabantur partim ab eis qui mōbilitātē<sup>1</sup> et levitātē<sup>1</sup> animī novīs imperiīs<sup>2</sup> studēbant: partim ab nōnnūllīs etiam, quod<sup>3</sup> in Galliā vulgō rēgna<sup>4</sup> ā potentiōribus<sup>5</sup> atque eis<sup>6</sup> qui ad condūcendōs<sup>6</sup> hominēs facultatēs habēbant occupābantur. Hīs nūntiis litterisque commōtus<sup>7</sup> Caesar duās legiōnēs novās in citeriōre Galliā cōscrīpsit et Pedium lēgātum qui<sup>8</sup> initā<sup>9</sup> aestatē eās legiōnēs in interiōrem Galliam dēdūceret<sup>10</sup> mīsit.

**411.**—Those<sup>1</sup> by<sup>2</sup> whom the Belgians were incited desired a revolution.<sup>3</sup> By hiring<sup>4</sup> men the more powerful<sup>1</sup> generally seized sovereignty<sup>5</sup> in Gaul. These messages alarmed Caesar, by<sup>2</sup> whom two new legions were quickly enrolled. Pedius his lieutenant *is sent*<sup>6</sup> to lead<sup>7</sup> those legions into Gaul.

## LESSON LXXVIII.

## CHAPTER II.

*Caesar leads his army into the country of the Belgae.*

**412.** Ipse [Caesar], cum prīmū<sup>1</sup> cōpia pābulī esse inciperet,<sup>2</sup> ad exercitū vēnit. Dat<sup>3</sup> negōtium Senonibus<sup>4</sup> reli-

---

**410.**—<sup>1</sup> Ablatives of cause; see (210); 'on account of fickleness,' etc. <sup>2</sup> Dat. indir. obj. of **studebant**; see 'dat. with special verbs' (348). <sup>3</sup> Goes with **occupabantur**. <sup>4</sup> Neut. plur. subj. of **occupabantur**; 'sovereignty was being seized.' <sup>5</sup> 'Adjs. as substantives'; see (258). <sup>6</sup> 'Gerundive construction'; see (253). <sup>7</sup> See (316): begin the translation with this word, 'alarmed greatly by . . . Caesar enrolled.' <sup>8</sup> 'Rel. clause of purpose'; see (311). <sup>9</sup> From **ineo**, p. p. p. abl. absol. with **aestate**. <sup>10</sup> Sequence? see (135).

**411.**—<sup>1</sup> 'Adjectives used as substantives'; see (258). <sup>2</sup> a. <sup>3</sup> **novis imperiis**; see note 2, (410). <sup>4</sup> Gerundive construction; see (253). <sup>5</sup> See note 4, (410).

<sup>6</sup> Note the change of tense. <sup>7</sup> 'Rel. clause of purpose'; see (311) and (355).

**412.**—<sup>1</sup> 'as soon as.' <sup>2</sup> 'began': **cōpia** the subj. <sup>3</sup> Historical present. <sup>4</sup> See **negotium do** (330).

quīsque Gallis quī erant iinitimī<sup>5</sup> Belgīs, uti<sup>6</sup> (=ut) ea<sup>7</sup> quae apud eōs gerantur<sup>8</sup> cōgnōscant sēque<sup>9</sup> dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā<sup>10</sup> castra movet diēbusque<sup>11</sup> circiter quīndecim ad fīnēs Belgārum pervenit.

**413.**—Caesar himself<sup>1</sup> will come to the army because there<sup>2</sup> is a supply of fodder. He *employed* the Senones to find out<sup>3</sup> those things which the Belgians were doing.<sup>4</sup> Caesar informed his<sup>5</sup> men that he would obtain<sup>6</sup> a supply of corn and would break camp within five days.<sup>7</sup>

## LESSON LXXIX.

### CHAPTER III.

*The Remi refuse to enter the league against Caesar.*

**414.**—Eō<sup>1</sup> cum Caesar vēnisset, Rēmī quī proximī Galliae<sup>2</sup> ex Belgīs sunt ad eum lēgātōs pīmōs<sup>3</sup> cīvitātis mīsērunt, quī dīcerent:<sup>4</sup> ‘sē<sup>5</sup> suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere,<sup>6</sup> neque<sup>7</sup> sē cum Belgīs reliquīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāvisse.’ Lēgātī,<sup>8</sup> cum pērvēnissent, nūntiāvērunt cīvitātem parātam<sup>9</sup> esse et<sup>10</sup> obsidēs dare et imperāta

<sup>5</sup> Nom. predicate. <sup>6</sup> uti . . . cognoscant, faciant following dat **negotium**; see (330); note the sequence. <sup>7</sup> Obj. of **cognoscant**; see (258). <sup>8</sup> ‘Intermediate rel. clause, subjunc. by *attraction*'; see (276). <sup>9</sup> Reflexive; refers to the subj. of the main verb **dat** (**negotium**); position of **que**, see (215), page 82.

<sup>10</sup> Abl. absol. <sup>11</sup> Abl. of time within which; see (65).

**413.**—<sup>1</sup> Intensive pron. **ipse**. <sup>2</sup> Omit. <sup>3</sup> Be careful as to *sequence*; ‘employed’ is *past*; see notes 4 and 6, (412). <sup>4</sup> Subjunc. by *attraction*; notice that this verb is in the *active voice*. <sup>5</sup> Omit ‘men’ and use the proper form of **sūns**. <sup>6</sup> Fut. infin. act., with subj. **se** (‘he’); see (318), example 3. <sup>7</sup> Abl. of time within which; see (65).

**414.**—<sup>1</sup> ‘thither.’ <sup>2</sup> See ‘dat. with adjs.’; (126). <sup>3</sup> See (258); ‘the foremost men.’ <sup>4</sup> Not ‘who said,’ but ‘*who should (were to) say*'; see (311). <sup>5</sup> Acc. obj. of **permittere**; the subj. of **permittere** is **se** understood. <sup>6</sup> Equivalent to a *fut.*; ‘that they would place themselves . . . under the protection,’ etc. <sup>7</sup> ‘and not,’ ‘and that they had not united . . . nor (**neque**) had they conspired.’ <sup>8</sup> ‘After (**cum**) the ambassadors had arrived, *they announced*.’ <sup>9</sup> Acc. pred. after **esse**. <sup>10</sup> ‘Both.’

facere et oppidis eum accipere ac frumento ceterisque rebus iuvare.

**415.**—The foremost<sup>1</sup> men of their state will be sent to Caesar as ambassadors<sup>2</sup> by the Remi to say<sup>3</sup> that they<sup>4</sup> will receive him<sup>5</sup> in their towns. Because they had not conspired and were<sup>6</sup> ready to give up themselves and all their possessions,<sup>7</sup> the Remi aided Caesar with the corn<sup>8</sup> which they had brought from<sup>9</sup> the fields of the Sequani.

## LESSON LXXX.

### CHAPTER III, CONTINUED.

*The Remi inform Caesar concerning the number of the enemies' forces.*

**416.**—Rēmī dixērunt reliquōs<sup>1</sup> omnēs in armīs esse,<sup>2</sup> Germānōsque<sup>3</sup> quī cis Rhēnum incolant<sup>4</sup> sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse, tantumque<sup>5</sup> esse eōrum omnium furōrem, ut<sup>6</sup> nē Suessiōnēs quidem,<sup>7</sup> frātrēs cōsanguineōsque suōs, dēterrēre potuerint quīn cum hīs cōsentīrent.<sup>8</sup> Cum Caesar ab<sup>9</sup> hīs quaereret quae cīvitātēs quantaeque in armīs essent et quid<sup>10</sup> in bellō possent,<sup>11</sup> sīc reperiēbat.

**417.**—When<sup>1</sup> the Germans united<sup>2</sup> with the Belgians, the Remi sent ambassadors to Caesar, who said<sup>3</sup> that they were

**415.—**<sup>1</sup> See (258) and note 3, (414). <sup>2</sup> Appositive. <sup>3</sup> Affirmative purpose. <sup>4</sup> se. <sup>5</sup> eum. <sup>6</sup> Imperf. indic. <sup>7</sup> Omit. <sup>8</sup> Abl. of means; see (43 b). <sup>9</sup> ex.

**416.—**<sup>1</sup> Used as a substantive, subj. of esse. <sup>2</sup> 'were.' <sup>3</sup> Acc. subj. of coniunxisse; 'and that the Germans . . . had united.' <sup>4</sup> Subjunc. because a subord. verb in *indir. disc.*: *incolunt* in the direct; see (306). <sup>5</sup> Connects coniunxisse and the esse following. <sup>6</sup> ut . . . potuerint, affirmative result; in clauses of result, the *perf. subjunc.* is very often used after *past tenses*: 'that they (the Remi) could not hinder even the Suessions.' <sup>7</sup> ne . . . quidem, 'not even'; emphasize the word *between them*. <sup>8</sup> quin + subjunc. (clause of result) following *deterrire*; see (370). <sup>9</sup> 'of these.' <sup>10</sup> essent, possent; subjunctives of *indir. quest.*; see (313): essent = 'were.' <sup>11</sup> quid; adverbial accusative with possent; see (374): quid . . . possent = 'what they could do,' or 'how much power they had.'

**417.—**<sup>1</sup> Use ubi; see (203, 358). <sup>2</sup> se coniungo. <sup>3</sup> dixerunt.

not able<sup>4</sup> to prevent their own brothers and kinsmen from conspiring.<sup>5</sup> Caesar finds out<sup>6</sup> what and how great states are<sup>7</sup> under arms and what<sup>8</sup> they can do<sup>7</sup> in war.

## LESSON LXXXI.

### CHAPTER IV.

#### *The origin and power of the Belgae.*

**418.**—Caesar reperiēbat plērōsque<sup>1</sup> Belgās ab Germānīs ortōs esse<sup>2</sup> Rhēnumque<sup>3</sup> antiquitus trāductōs<sup>4</sup> propter locī fertilitatēm ibi cōnsēdisse Gallōs<sup>5</sup>que<sup>6</sup> quī ea loca incolerent<sup>7</sup> expulisse. Caesar reperiēbat Belgās sōlōs<sup>8</sup> esse quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexatā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs fīnīs ingredi<sup>9</sup> prohibuerint.<sup>10</sup>

**419.**—The Gauls were driven<sup>1</sup> out of those places which<sup>2</sup> they were inhabiting by the Belgians<sup>3</sup> whose fathers were descended from<sup>4</sup> the Germans. The Belgians were led across<sup>5</sup> the Rhine in olden times and<sup>6</sup> drove out the Gauls who could not prevent<sup>7</sup> them from seizing<sup>8</sup> a large part of Gaul.

<sup>4</sup> ‘they were not able’ = *se non posse*. <sup>5</sup> *quin + impf. subjunc.*; see (370). <sup>6</sup> Pres. indic. of *reperio*. <sup>7</sup> Indir. quest.: for mood, see (313); for tense, see (135). <sup>8</sup> *quid*; see note 11 (416): note the change in the *tense*.

<sup>418</sup> —<sup>1</sup> ‘that most of the Belgians.’ <sup>2</sup> ‘were descended.’ <sup>3</sup> Connects *ortos* *esse* and *cōnsēdisse*, with *Belgas* as the subj. <sup>4</sup> p. p. p. mod. *Belgas*; see (316).

<sup>5</sup> Dir. obj. of *expulisse*. <sup>6</sup> Connects *cōnsēdisse* and *expulisse*, having *Belgas* as the subj. <sup>7</sup> Subord. verb in O. O.; see (306). <sup>8</sup> ‘were the only ones’: after *solutus sum*, even in O. R., the mood of the relative clause is generally *subjunc.*

<sup>9</sup> ‘from entering’; see (370). <sup>10</sup> *Subjunc.*; subord. clause in indir. disc.: strictly speaking it is a *rel. clause of characteristic*, which takes the *subjunc.*; see note 8. Observe that the *perf. subjunc.* is here used after the *past tense*; see (416), note 6.

**419.**—<sup>1</sup> Perf. indic. pass. <sup>2</sup> For *gend. of the rel.* see (39), foot-note 1. <sup>3</sup> Person. agent; see (237). <sup>4</sup> a or ab. <sup>5</sup> Change to p. p. p.; see (381), and text above.

<sup>6</sup> Omit. <sup>7</sup> ‘could not prevent,’ *impedire non poterant*. <sup>8</sup> *quin + subjunc.*; see (370) and text.

## LESSON LXXXII.

## CHAPTER V.

*The Remi surrender hostages and give aid to Caesar.*

**420.**—Caesar Rēmōs cohortātūs<sup>1</sup> līberāliterque<sup>2</sup> ḍrātiōne prōsecūtūs<sup>3</sup> omnem senātūm<sup>4</sup> ad sē convenīre pīncipūmque līberōs<sup>5</sup> obsidēs<sup>6</sup> ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae<sup>7</sup> omnia ab hīs dīligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse<sup>8</sup> Dīvitiācum Aeduum māgnopere cohortātūs docet<sup>9</sup> sē manūs hostiū distentūrum<sup>10</sup> esse, nē<sup>11</sup> cum tantā multitudine ūnō tempore cōflīgendum sit.<sup>12</sup>

**421.**—Caesar urged<sup>1</sup> the Remi to bring<sup>2</sup> their children as hostages and to do<sup>3</sup> all those<sup>4</sup> things which they had promised.<sup>5</sup> After<sup>6</sup> Caesar had addressed the Remi kindly, all their senate was ordered<sup>6</sup> to gather together before<sup>7</sup> him. Caesar will not join<sup>8</sup> in battle, unless the bands of the enemy are kept apart.<sup>9</sup>

**420.—1** Depon. perf. participles mod. **Caesar**; see (340): **prosecutus** = 'having addressed.' **2** Connects **cohortatus** and **prosecutus**. **3** Acc. subj. of **convenire**, clause depending upon **iussit**; 'he ordered their whole senate to assemble before him.' **4** Acc. subj. of **adduci**. **5** Apposition with **liberos**. **6** Relative at the beginning of the sent.; 'now (and) all of these things'; see (367). **7** Intensive pron., 'Caesar himself.' **8** 'states,' verb of saying or declaring followed by **acc. + infin.** **9** Subject is **se**, 'that he will keep apart.' **10** Neg. purpose clause; see (320). **11** Pres. subjunc. **pass.** of the periphrastic conjugation; see (361); here an *impersonal verb*, see (365): 'so that it may not have to be fought'; more freely, 'that he may not have to fight.'

**421.—1** Perf. indic. of **cohortor**; see (347). **2** Be careful as to the sequence; at the *time* he urged them, the *action* implied in 'bringing the children' and 'doing the things' was *incomplete, unfinished* and as yet in the *future*. **3** See (258). **4** Subjunc. by *attraction*; note the sequence, the action in 'had promised' being completed; see (276). **5** Historical **cum**; see (203, 263, 359). **6** Perf. indic. pass. of **inubeo**. **7** **ad** + **acc.** **8** Use the phrase **proelium committere**, **proelium** being **accus.** **9** 'are kept apart,' verb in the *protasis* of a *more viv. fut. condition*; write this in *two tenses*; see (223).

## LESSON LXXXIII.

## CHAPTER V, CONTINUED.

*Caesar hastens forward to meet the Belgae.*

**422.**—*Sī Aeduī in fīnēs Bellovacōrum suās cōpiās intrōdūixerint<sup>1</sup> et eōrum agrōs populārī cooperint,<sup>2</sup> id fierī poterit. Caesar postquam<sup>2</sup> omnīs<sup>3</sup> Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās<sup>4</sup> ad sē venīre vīdit, et ab<sup>5</sup> eīs explōrātōribus quōs mīserat et ab<sup>6</sup> Rēmīs eās cōpiās iam nōn longē abesse<sup>6</sup> cōgnōvit, flūmen Axonam quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum fīnibus exercitūm trādūcere mātūrāvit.*

**423.**—If the forces of the Aedui are led<sup>1</sup> into the boundaries of the Bellovaci, these<sup>2</sup> things will be done.<sup>3</sup> When<sup>4</sup> scouts informed<sup>5</sup> Caesar that the forces of the Belgians were being collected,<sup>6</sup> he prepared to cross the river. While the Belgians were gathering all their forces into one place, Caesar led his army across the river. After<sup>7</sup> all the forces of the Belgians had been gathered together, Caesar led his army into the farthest territories of the Remi.

**422.—<sup>1</sup>** More vivid fut.; see (223). **<sup>2</sup>** Introduces *vīdit* and *cōgnōvit*, joined by *et*; see (358); ‘when C. saw that . . . and found out that . . .’ **<sup>3</sup>** *omnīs*: acc. plur. = *omnes*. **<sup>4</sup>** p. p. p. mod. *cōpiās*, translated by a *finite verb*, ‘had been collected and were coming; see (381). **<sup>5</sup>** Adverbial phrases mod. *cōgnōvit*; ‘when he found out from those scouts,’ etc. **<sup>6</sup>** Indir. disc. depend upon *cōgnōvit*; ‘that those forces were now . . . distant.’ **<sup>7</sup>** Does *quod* refer to and agree with *Axonam* or *flūmen*, and why?

**423.—<sup>1</sup>** Place in two tenses; see (223). **<sup>2</sup>** Neut. plur. as noun, omit *things*. **<sup>3</sup>** The *pass.* of *facio* is *fīo*: place in the fut. indic. **<sup>4</sup>** *ubi* + *indic.*; see (203). **<sup>5</sup>** *certiōrem* + *act.*; see (333). **<sup>6</sup>** Indir. disc. (main verb) after *certiōrem fece-runt*, which is taken as a verb of *saying*; what *voice* and *time* are indicated? **<sup>7</sup>** Render by abl. absol.; see (287), example 3.

## LESSON LXXXIV.

## CHAPTER VI.

*The Belgae attack a town of the Remi. Mode of attack.*

**424.**—Ab his<sup>1</sup> castris oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia<sup>2</sup> passuum octō. Id ex itinere<sup>3</sup> māgnō impetū<sup>4</sup> Belgae oppūgnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est.<sup>5</sup> Ubi, multitūdine<sup>6</sup> hominum tōtis moenibus<sup>7</sup> circumiectā,<sup>8</sup> undique in mūrum lapidēs iaci<sup>9</sup> coepti sunt mūrusque dēfēnsōribus<sup>10</sup> nūdātus est, testūdine<sup>11</sup> factā portās succēdunt mūrumque subrunnt. Quod<sup>12</sup> tum facile fīebat. Nam cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs ac tēla cōnicerent,<sup>13</sup> in mūrō cōsistendī potestās erat nūlli.<sup>14</sup>

**425.**—While the Belgians were attacking the town which<sup>1</sup> had<sup>2</sup> tall fortifications, a testudo was made so that they might draw near<sup>3</sup> the wall. After stones and javelins had been thrown<sup>4</sup> from all sides upon the wall and the wall had been stripped<sup>4</sup> of defenders, the townsmen<sup>1</sup> did not have<sup>5</sup> the power of holding out any longer. Since<sup>6</sup> the townsmen saw (were seeing) that so great a multitude were throwing stones and javelins upon the wall and<sup>7</sup> that they<sup>8</sup> could not<sup>9</sup> hold out longer, they surrendered themselves and all their possessions<sup>9</sup> to the Belgians.<sup>10</sup>

**424.**—<sup>1</sup> 'from *this camp*'; adverbial phrase limits aberat. <sup>2</sup> Acc. of extent in space; see (342). <sup>3</sup> *ex itinere*, 'turning aside from the march'; making an attack immediately after a march without preparation. <sup>4</sup> Abl. of manner, mod. *oppugnare coeperunt*; see (210). <sup>5</sup> Impers. verb; see (365). <sup>6</sup> Abl. absol., 'a multitude of men being thrown around all the walls.' <sup>7</sup> Dat. indir. obj. of *circumiecta*. <sup>8</sup> Pres. pass. infin. of *iacio*; with a *pass.* infin. *coepti* is put in the *pass.* <sup>9</sup> Abl. of sep. mod. *nudatus est*; 'of defenders'; see (221). <sup>10</sup> Abl. absol.: a *testudo* was a covering for the soldiers' heads made by overlapping the shields like shingles on a roof, and used in approaching and storming walls. <sup>11</sup> See (367): 'and *this* thing.' <sup>12</sup> Plur., agreeing with **multitudo** taken collectively. <sup>13</sup> See (357): 'power was to no one'—'no one had the power.'

**425.**—<sup>1</sup> Dat. of possession; see (357). <sup>2</sup> *erant*. <sup>3</sup> Observe the *sequence*. <sup>4</sup> Render both clauses by *abl. absol.*; see (287). <sup>5</sup> *erat*. <sup>6</sup> See 'causal *cum*', (350). <sup>7</sup> 'and not' = *neque*. <sup>8</sup> *se*, acc. subj. <sup>9</sup> Omit. <sup>10</sup> Dat.

## LESSON LXXXV.

## CHAPTERS VI AND VII.

*The Remi ask aid from Caesar, who sends relief.*

**426.**—Cum finem oppugnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus summā nobilitātē<sup>1</sup> et grātiā<sup>1</sup> inter suōs,<sup>2</sup> quī tum oppidō<sup>3</sup> praefuerat, unus<sup>4</sup> ex eīs quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, ad eum nūntium quī<sup>5</sup> auxilium peteret mīsit. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar īsdem<sup>6</sup> ducibus<sup>7</sup> ūsus quī nūntiī ab Iccīo vēnerant, sagittāriōs et funditōrēs sub-sidiō<sup>8</sup> oppidānīs<sup>9</sup> mittit; quōrum adventū<sup>9</sup> et<sup>10</sup> Rēmīs<sup>11</sup> cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpūgnandī accessit, et hostibus<sup>12</sup> eādem dē causā spēs potiundi<sup>13</sup> oppidī discessit.

**427.**—Because of the hope<sup>1</sup> of driving<sup>2</sup> the Belgians out of their territories, the Remi ordered Iccius to go<sup>3</sup> to Caesar as an ambassador and to ask for help. Because Iccius whom<sup>4</sup> the Remi had put in command of their town<sup>4</sup> was friendly to the Roman people,<sup>5</sup> Caesar said he would send<sup>6</sup> archers and slingers as a relief<sup>7</sup> to the town.<sup>7</sup> Now<sup>8</sup> upon the arrival of these<sup>8</sup> the townsmen fought with great courage<sup>9</sup> and<sup>10</sup> the enemy could not<sup>10</sup> storm their town.

**426.**—<sup>1</sup> Ablatives of *quality*; supply **vir** (a man) and translate the *abl.* like the *gen.*; see (376). <sup>2</sup> Adj. used as noun; see (258). <sup>3</sup> See ‘dat. with compound verbs’; (337). <sup>4</sup> See (378), ‘partitive genitive—exceptions.’ <sup>5</sup> Rel. clause of purpose; see (311). <sup>6</sup> Adj. used as noun, obj. (*abl.*) of **usus**; ‘using (making use of) the same men’; see (353). <sup>7</sup> Apposition: ‘as guides.’ <sup>8</sup> Doub. dat.; see (352). <sup>9</sup> Abl. of *cause* mod. **accessit** and **discessit**; ‘on account of whose arrival.’ <sup>10</sup> ‘both.’ <sup>11</sup> Dat. indir. obj. of **accessit**; ‘eagerness to fight was inspired in the Remi.’ <sup>12</sup> Dat. with a verb of *taking away* (**discessit**) instead of the abl. of separation; ‘fr̄m the enemy.’ <sup>13</sup> **potiundi** = **potiendi**: gerundive construction; see (253).

**427.**—<sup>1</sup> spe, an *abl.* of *cause*. <sup>2</sup> Use **de** and the *abl.* of the gerundive; see (253). <sup>3</sup> ‘Iccius to go’ = acc. + infin., if **iubeo** is used; *what, if* **impero**? <sup>4</sup> **praeficio** takes *acc.* and *dat.*; ‘whom’ to be turned into the *acc.*, ‘town’ into the *dat.*; see (337). <sup>5</sup> See ‘dat. with adjs.’; (126). <sup>6</sup> Indir. disc.; what *time* is indicated? <sup>7</sup> Doub. dat.; see (352). <sup>8</sup> ‘now these’: render both words by the relative pron.; see (367). <sup>9</sup> Abl. of *manner*; see (210). <sup>10</sup> ‘and not’ = **neque**.

## LESSON LXXXVI.

## CHAPTER VII, CONTINUED.

*The Belgae abandon the siege and turn against Caesar.*

**428.**—Itaque paulisper apud<sup>1</sup> oppidum morātī<sup>2</sup> agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī,<sup>2</sup> omnibus<sup>3</sup> vīcīs aedificiīsque quōs<sup>4</sup> adīre potuerant incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ab<sup>5</sup> mīlibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt. Quae<sup>6</sup> castra, ut<sup>7</sup> fūmō atque īgnibus sīgnificābātur, amplius<sup>8</sup> mīlibus<sup>9</sup> passuum octō in lātitūdinem patēbant. Caesar pīmō et propter multitūdinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis<sup>10</sup> proeliō<sup>11</sup> supersedērē statuit; cotīdiē tamen equestrībus proeliīs<sup>12</sup> hostium virtūtem perīclitābātur.

**429.**—The Belgians will delay<sup>1</sup> many days<sup>2</sup> near the town whose<sup>3</sup> walls they cannot storm so as to lay waste<sup>4</sup> the fields of the Remi and burn<sup>4</sup> their buildings. Because he saw<sup>6</sup> that the multitude of the enemy was so great,<sup>6</sup> Caesar commanded the leaders<sup>7</sup> of the infantry to refrain<sup>7</sup> from battle. Fearing<sup>8</sup> the power and courage of the

428.—<sup>1</sup> 'near.' <sup>2</sup> Depon. perf. participles mod. **hostes**, the subj. implied in **contenderunt**; see (340). <sup>3</sup> **omnibus . . . incensis**: abl. absol. of *time*, mod. **contenderunt**. <sup>4</sup> **quos**: has two antecedents, **vici**s and **aedificiis**. When the gender of two or more antecedents is different, the relative takes the gender sometimes of the *strongest* or *most important* word, sometimes that of the *nearest* word; **quos** in this sentence takes the gender of **vici**s, the more important noun. <sup>5</sup> **ab . . . duobus**: **ab** is used adverbially, 'off,' i.e., distant from the Roman camp. **mīlibus duobus**: abl. of *degree of difference*, 'by two thousand,' the abl. being used without reference to the comparative **minus**, which does not affect the construction; the force of **minus** is seen in the translation, 'by two thousand [and] less.' The entire phrase is best translated 'less than two miles off.' <sup>6</sup> 'now this'; see (367). <sup>7</sup> **ut**, 'as.' <sup>8</sup> Accus. of extent in space: see (342). <sup>9</sup> Abl. with the comparative **amplius**; see (369). See the other construction for these neuter comparatives, note 5 above (**minus**). <sup>10</sup> 'for valor.' <sup>11</sup> 'from battle.' <sup>12</sup> Abl. of means mod. **periclitabatur**.

429.—<sup>1</sup> Deponent verb. <sup>2</sup> See (342). <sup>3</sup> Why *gen. sing. neut.*? <sup>4</sup> See (320, 355). <sup>5</sup> Imperf. indic. <sup>6</sup> Pred. adj. after *esse*. <sup>7</sup> See (134, 135, 145). <sup>8</sup> Perf. particip. (depon.).

Belgians who<sup>9</sup> had large forces, Caesar ordered his leaders not to begin battle on that day.

## LESSON LXXXVII.

### CHAPTER VIII.

*Caesar protects his camp with strong defences.*

**430.**—Is collis,<sup>1</sup> ubi<sup>2</sup> castra Caesaris posita erant, paululum ex plānitē ēditus<sup>3</sup> in lātitūdinem tantum<sup>4</sup> locī<sup>5</sup> patēbat quantum aciēs īstrūcta<sup>6</sup> occupāre poterat. Caesar<sup>7</sup> ubi nostrōs nōn esse īferiōrēs<sup>8</sup> intellēxit, locō<sup>9</sup> prō castris ad aciem īstruendam<sup>10</sup> nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō, ab<sup>11</sup> utrōque latere ēius collis<sup>12</sup> trānsversam fossam obdūxit. Ad extrēmās fossās<sup>13</sup> castella cōnstituit ibique tormenta collocāvit, nē,<sup>14</sup> cum aciem īstrūxisset, hostēs ab lateribus suōs<sup>15</sup> pūgnantēs circumvenīre possent.

**431.**—A place suitable for<sup>1</sup> setting up<sup>2</sup> redoubts and engines of war is chosen by<sup>3</sup> those scouts whom Caesar sent forward during the second watch.<sup>4</sup> Unless Caesar should dig<sup>5</sup> a ditch, the enemy would surround<sup>6</sup> our infantry on their flanks and kill them while (as) they were fighting.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>9</sup> Dat. of possession; see (357).

**430.**—<sup>1</sup> *is collis*: ‘that hill,’ subj. of *patebat*. <sup>2</sup> ‘where.’ <sup>3</sup> Limits *collis*; ‘sloping upward gradually from the plain.’ <sup>4</sup> Accus. of extent in space; see (342). <sup>5</sup> Partitive gen. with *tantum*; ‘as much ground as (*quantum*).’ <sup>6</sup> Mod. *aciēs*; ‘an army drawn up for battle.’ <sup>7</sup> Order: ‘when Caesar perceived . . . he dug,’ etc. <sup>8</sup> Adj. in the pred. accus. after *esse*; ‘that our men were not inferior (in courage).’ <sup>9</sup> *loco . . . idoneo*; see (364), example 2. <sup>10</sup> See (253). <sup>11</sup> *ab . . . latere*: adverbial phrase (*latus*, *lateris*), mod. *obduxit*. <sup>12</sup> Gen. depend. upon *latere*. <sup>13</sup> ‘at the ends of the ditches.’ <sup>14</sup> *ne . . . possent*: neg. purpose; see (320). <sup>15</sup> *suos*: adj. used as a substantive modified by *pugnantes* (pres. particip.); *pugnans* is declined in (467). Translate, ‘his men while (as) they were fighting.’ The pres. particip. is translated, ‘as (while) they are or were —ing.’

**431.**—<sup>1</sup> *ad.* <sup>2</sup> Gerundive in agreement with the *acc.*; see (253). <sup>3</sup> Pers. agent; see (237). <sup>4</sup> Abl. of *time*, without prep. <sup>5</sup> See ‘less viv. fut. condition’ (335). <sup>6</sup> ‘while they were fighting’: render by the pres. particip.; why *acc.*?

Caesar drew up his line of battle upon a hill<sup>7</sup> fortified by nature, in order that<sup>8</sup> his infantry as they were fighting<sup>9</sup> might not<sup>10</sup> be surrounded by the enemy.

## LESSON LXXXVIII.

### CHAPTERS VIII AND IX.

*The Belgae encamp opposite Caesar's camp across a marsh.*

**432.**—Hoc factō duābus legiōnibus quās<sup>1</sup> proximē cōscrīps̄erat in castrīs relictīs, ut<sup>2</sup> sī quō<sup>3</sup> opus esset<sup>4</sup> subsidiō<sup>5</sup> dūcī possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ē castrīs ēductās<sup>6</sup> īstrūxerant. Palūs erat nōn<sup>7</sup> māgna inter nostrum<sup>8</sup> atque hostium exercitum. Hostēs exspectābant sī<sup>9</sup> hanc nostrī trānsīrent; nostrī autem in armīs erant paratī ut impedītōs<sup>10</sup> aggredierentur, sī ab illīs trānseundī initium fieret.<sup>11</sup> Interim proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur.<sup>12</sup> Ubi neutrī initium trānseundī faciunt proeliō<sup>13</sup> equitum nostrīs secundiōre<sup>14</sup> Caesar in castra suōs redūxit.

**433.**—If Caesar leaves<sup>1</sup> the two legions, which<sup>2</sup> were

<sup>7</sup> Abl. of place where with in. <sup>8</sup> 'in order that . . . not': neg. purpose; see (320). <sup>9</sup> 'as they were fighting'; render by the pres. particip.; why nom? <sup>10</sup> Why 'which he had eurolled,' and not 'which had been enrolled'? <sup>11</sup> Why 'which he had eurolled,' and not 'which had been enrolled'? <sup>12</sup> ut . . . possent: shows the purpose of and derives its sequence from relictis. <sup>13</sup> quo = adv., 'anywhere'; translate the clause, 'if they were needed anywhere.' <sup>14</sup> subjunc. by attraction; see (276). <sup>5</sup> Dat. of purpose, end or service; 'as (for) a relief.' <sup>6</sup> 'had led out . . . and arranged in order'; see (381). <sup>7</sup> A negative with large = 'small.' <sup>8</sup> Mod. exercitum. <sup>9</sup> Indir. quest. introduced by si, 'whether'; 'kept waiting to see (exspectabat) whether our men would cross'; for mood in 'indir. quest.' see (313). <sup>10</sup> p. p. p. mod. eos (hostes), obj. of aggredierentur; 'to attack them placed at a disadvantage.' <sup>11</sup> si . . . fieret: depends upon aggredierentur, hence subjunc. (see note 4); bear in mind that fieret is the passive of facio. <sup>12</sup> Impersonal; see (365). <sup>13</sup> Abl. absol.; see (364), example 2.

**433.—1** Fut. or fut. pf. indic. (223, 335). <sup>2</sup> Why nominative? Compare this with note 1 (432).

recently enrolled, as a defence<sup>3</sup> to the camp,<sup>4</sup> the enemy will not lead out their forces. If the enemy should try<sup>4</sup> to cross the swamp, our cavalry would surround<sup>5</sup> them on all sides and attack<sup>4</sup> (them). After drawing up<sup>6</sup> all their forces in front of their camp the enemy sent forward cavalry who were to<sup>7</sup> attack the two legions that were left<sup>8</sup> in our camp.

## LESSON LXXXIX.

### CHAPTER IX, CONTINUED.

*The enemy attempt to cross the river and surprise Titurius.*

434.—Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod<sup>1</sup> esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadīs repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnāti sunt, eō cōnsiliō,<sup>2</sup> ut<sup>3</sup> sī possent<sup>4</sup> castellum cui<sup>5</sup> praeerat Titūrius lēgātus expūgnārent pontemque intercinderent; sī minus<sup>6</sup> potuissent,<sup>7</sup> (ut) agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur<sup>8</sup> quī ad<sup>9</sup> bellum gerendum māgnō ūsuī<sup>10</sup> nobīs<sup>10</sup> erant comēatūque<sup>11</sup> nostrōs prohibērent.<sup>8</sup> Caesar ab Titūriō certior factus<sup>12</sup> omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae<sup>13</sup> Numidās,

<sup>3</sup> Doub. dat.; see (352). <sup>4</sup> Pres. subjunc. in a less viv. fut. condition; see (335). <sup>5</sup> 'would surround'; change to p. p. p., omit *and*, and make *attack* the verb of the apodosis; order, 'would attack (them) surrounded on all sides'; see text (432) and note 10. <sup>6</sup> Render by abl. absol.: 'all their forces having been,' etc.; see (287). <sup>7</sup> 'who were to attack': *rel. clause of purpose*; be careful about the sequence; see (311). <sup>8</sup> 'that were left'; render by the p. p. p.

434.—<sup>1</sup> Nom. subj. of *demonstratum est*; 'which has been shown to be in the rear of.' <sup>2</sup> 'with this design (in view).' <sup>3</sup> *ut . . . expugnarent, intercinderent*: affirmative purpose and explanatory of *eo consilio*; 'with this design, viz., to storm,' etc. <sup>4</sup> Subjunc. by attraction, time *unfinished* (see *potuissent*, note 7). <sup>5</sup> Dat. with comp. verb. <sup>6</sup> *minus = non*. <sup>7</sup> 'if (having made the attempt) they should not have been (should not be) able'; *potuissent* is *pluperf.* to show time finished: since *conati sunt traducere* denotes *past time*, the depend. subjunctives appear in either the *imperf.* or *pluperf.* <sup>8</sup> Introduced by *ut*, explaining *eo consilio* (see note 3). <sup>9</sup> 'for.' <sup>10</sup> Doub. dat.; 'were very useful to us.' <sup>11</sup> Abl. of separation. <sup>12</sup> 'Upon being informed (as to this) by Titurius, Caesar leads.' <sup>13</sup> Gen. depend. upon *Numidas*; 'of light equipment.'

funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit.

**435.**—After<sup>1</sup> the enemy had reached<sup>2</sup> that river on whose banks<sup>3</sup> our camp had been pitched, they attempted to find<sup>4</sup> fords so that they might lead across a part of their forces. By destroying<sup>5</sup> the bridge and storming the redoubts over which<sup>6</sup> Caesar had placed his lieutenant Titurius in command, the enemy will be able to cut off<sup>7</sup> our men from supplies. The enemy will try to cross the river so as to storm the redoubt and cut down the bridge, if they can.<sup>8</sup>

## LESSON XC.

### CHAPTER X.

*The Belgae are defeated in a fierce battle.*

**436.**—Āriter in eō locō pūgnātum est.<sup>1</sup> Hostēs<sup>2</sup> in flūmine impeditōs<sup>3</sup> nostrī aggressī<sup>4</sup> māgnum eōrum numerū occidērunt; reliquōs<sup>5</sup> per eōrum corpora audācissimē trānsire cōnantēs<sup>6</sup> nostrī multitūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt; prīmōs,<sup>7</sup> quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs<sup>8</sup> interfēcerunt. Hostēs ubi<sup>9</sup> et dē expūgnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem<sup>10</sup> sē fefellisse intellēxērunt, neque<sup>11</sup>

**435.—<sup>1</sup> cum.** Order: ‘the enemy, after they had reached,’ etc. **<sup>2</sup> pervenio** ad + acc. **<sup>3</sup> in + abl.** **<sup>4</sup> Complementary infin.** following *attempted*; verbs which imply another action of the same subject to complete their meaning take the complementary infin. without a subj. acc. **<sup>5</sup> Gerundive;** see (253). **<sup>6</sup> Dat.**; why? **<sup>7</sup> Pres. infin. act. of prohibeo.** **<sup>8</sup> Subjunc.** by attraction.

**436.—<sup>1</sup> Impersonal;** see (365). **<sup>2</sup> Acc. obj. of aggressi.** **<sup>3</sup> Mod. hostes;** ‘the enemy placed at a disadvantage in the river.’ **<sup>4</sup> Mod. the subj. nostrī:** ‘having attacked . . . our men slew.’ **<sup>5</sup> Acc. obj. of reppulerunt,** whose subj. is **nostrī.** **<sup>6</sup> Pres. particip. acc. plur. mod. reliquos** (used as noun); ‘the rest as they were trying.’ **<sup>7</sup> Acc. obj. of interfecerunt.** **<sup>8</sup> Mod. primos,** but translated by a coordinate verb; see (381). **<sup>9</sup> ubi:** see (203, 358); **ubi** introduces **intellēxerunt, viderunt, and coepit.** **<sup>10</sup> Acc. subj. of fefellisse.** **<sup>11</sup> ‘and that our men were not advancing’ (*progredi*).**

nostrōs in locum iniquiōrem prōgredī pūgnandī causā vīdērunt, atque ipsōs<sup>12</sup> rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, concilium convocabārunt.

**437.**—The enemy hindered in the river were driven back by our men and the foremost were surrounded<sup>1</sup> by the cavalry and killed by the darts of our men. Because<sup>2</sup> hope with respect to crossing the river kept failing<sup>3</sup> the enemy, they decided after calling<sup>4</sup> a council of war to surrender themselves and all their possessions to Caesar. Since<sup>5</sup> the enemy saw<sup>6</sup> that our men had killed<sup>7</sup> the foremost, who had tried<sup>8</sup> very boldly to cross, and were driving back<sup>7</sup> the rest, they sent ambassadors to Caesar with respect to peace.

## LESSON XCI.

### CHAPTER X, CONTINUED.

*The Belgae decide to return home.*

**438.**—Conciliō convocātō Belgae cōnstituērunt optimum<sup>1</sup> esse quemque<sup>2</sup> domum<sup>3</sup> suam revertī et undique convenire ad<sup>4</sup> eōs dēfendendōs quōrum in fīnīs pīnum Rōmānī<sup>5</sup> exercitum intrōdūxissent,<sup>6</sup> ut potius in suis quam in aliēnīs

<sup>12</sup> ‘themselves,’ as distinguished from our men; it is the object of *deficere*.

**437.**—<sup>1</sup> Change thus: ‘the foremost surrounded . . . were killed.’ <sup>2</sup> See (276). <sup>3</sup> Imperfect. <sup>4</sup> Recast and render by abl. absol.: ‘a council having been called, they decided.’ <sup>5</sup> Causal *cum*; see (350). <sup>6</sup> *viderent*. <sup>7</sup> For ‘tenses of the infinitive in indir. disc.,’ see (301, 302, 305, 318). <sup>8</sup> Subord. verb. in indir. disc.; see (306).

**438.**—<sup>1</sup> Superlative of *bonus*; see (472), acc. sing. neut. pred. adj. with *esse* limiting the *verbal phrase*, *quemque . . . reverti et convenire*, which phrase is the subject of *esse*: ‘An infin. may have another verb or a verbal phrase for its subject being *neuter*.’ Translate: ‘that it was best for each one to return.’

<sup>2</sup> From *quisque*; subj. of *reverti* and *convenire*. <sup>3</sup> Acc. of end or limit of motion *without ad.* <sup>4</sup> ‘to defend;’ see (355) and example. <sup>5</sup> Subj. of *introdūxissent*. <sup>6</sup> Subjunc. mood because it is a subordinate verb in indir. disc., depending indirectly upon *constituerunt*; notice the sequence. This pluperf. subjunc. was *fut. perf. indic.* in the original sentence, conveying the same *time relation* as that of a verb in the protasis of a more vivid fut. condition; see (223, 396).

fīnibus dēcertārent; praetereā<sup>7</sup> cōgnōverant Dīvitiācum atque Aeduōs fīnibus Bellovacōrum appropīnquāre.<sup>8</sup> Hīs<sup>9</sup> persuādērī ut diūtius morārentur<sup>10</sup> neque<sup>11</sup> suīs<sup>12</sup> auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

**439.**—The Belgians will assemble from all sides to defend<sup>1</sup> those<sup>2</sup> states into which<sup>2</sup> the Romans first lead<sup>3</sup> an army: [Ōrātiō Rēcta]. Scouts inform Caesar that the Belgians will assemble<sup>4</sup> from all sides to defend those states into which the Romans first lead<sup>5</sup> an army: [Ōrātiō Oblīqua].

## LESSON XCII.

### CHAPTER XI.

*The Romans pursue and kill many Belgae.*

**440.**—Eā rē cōnstitūtā, secundā vigiliā māgnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castrīs ēgressī,<sup>1</sup> cum<sup>2</sup> sibi quisque prīmum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenīre proprāret, fēcērunt<sup>3</sup> ut profectiō cōnsimilis fugae<sup>4</sup> vidērētur. Hāc rē per<sup>5</sup> speculātōrēs statim cōgnitā, Caesar īnsidiās

<sup>7</sup> ‘and besides.’ <sup>8</sup> ‘were drawing near to.’ <sup>9</sup> *his*: explained in (380).  
<sup>10</sup> *ut . . . morarentur*: ‘to delay.’ <sup>11</sup> ‘and not.’ <sup>12</sup> Indir. object, ‘to their friends.’

**439.**—<sup>1</sup> *ad + gerundive*; why does the *ending* of this gerundive differ from that of the gerundive in the text above? <sup>2</sup> Why feminine? <sup>3</sup> Fut. perf. indic. representing action *completed in the future* before another fut. action; see (223), for tense required to express such time relation in the protasis. If considered an indir. quest., the mood would be subjunc.; what tense (subjunc.) would here represent the fut. perf. indic.? Why not the *pluperf.*, as in the text (438)? <sup>4</sup> Principal verb in O. O. following ‘inform’; see (306). <sup>5</sup> Subordinate verb in O. O.; this verb is *fut. perf. (indic.)* in the direct disc.; to what tense is it changed in the indir.? see (306).

**440.**—<sup>1</sup> Depon. particip.; mod. the *subj. hostes* contained in *fecerunt*; see (340). <sup>2</sup> Causal *cum*; with *peteret* and *properaret* (*subj. quisque*); these clauses mod. *fecerunt*; ‘since each man sought for himself;’ see (350). <sup>3</sup> *fecerunt ut profectio videretur*; ‘(the enemy) made their departure seem; literally, ‘caused it so that,’ etc. <sup>4</sup> See ‘dat. with adjs.’; (126). <sup>5</sup> ‘by means of.’

veritus,<sup>6</sup> quod<sup>7</sup> nōndum perspēxerat quā dē causā hostēs discēderent,<sup>8</sup> exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuit. Rē ab explōrātōribus cōgnitā, prīmā lūce omnem equitātum quī novissimum agmen morārētur mīsit. Hīs Q. Pedium et L. Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit. T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequī iussit. Hī<sup>9</sup> novissimōs adortī et multa mīlia passuum prōsecūtī māgnam multitūdinem eōrum fugientium<sup>10</sup> concidērunt, cum<sup>11</sup> ab extrēmō agmine,<sup>12</sup> ad quōs ventum erat,<sup>13</sup> cōsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum mīlitum sustinērent.

**441.**—Because Caesar did not know<sup>1</sup> for what reason the enemy had departed,<sup>2</sup> he decided that he ought<sup>3</sup> to keep his army in camp. By seeking<sup>4</sup> the foremost place on (of) the road they will make their departure seem<sup>5</sup> very much like flight. Caesar informed Labienus that scouts would be sent forward<sup>6</sup> at early dawn.

## LESSON XCIII.

### CHAPTER XII.

*Caesar attacks Noviodunum, which surrenders.*

**442.**—Postrīdiē Caesar in finēs Suessiōnum quī proximī<sup>1</sup> Rēmīs erant exercitum dūxit et māgnō itinere cōfectō<sup>2</sup> ad

<sup>6</sup> ‘fearing.’ <sup>7</sup> The *quod* clause mod. *continuit*. <sup>8</sup> Indir. question; ‘for what reason the enemy *were departing*?’ <sup>9</sup> ‘the latter;’ meaning Labienus and his troops. <sup>10</sup> Pres. particip. mod. *eorum*, ‘of them as they were fleeing.’ <sup>11</sup> Causal *cum* with *cōsisterent* and *sustinerent*. <sup>12</sup> ‘those in (from) the extreme rear.’ <sup>13</sup> Impersonal: ‘whom they (our men) overtook,’ literally, ‘to whom it had been come’; see (365), example 2.

**441.**—<sup>1</sup> Imperf. indic. <sup>2</sup> Why a *different tense* from that in the text? <sup>3</sup> Recast in the *pass.*, ‘that his army ought to be kept by him’; this is explained fully in (361, 362, 363); look up the Latin text for example 3 under, ‘dat. of personal agent.’ <sup>4</sup> Gerundive; see (253). <sup>5</sup> Why a *different tense* from that in the text? <sup>6</sup> This fnt. infin. *pass.* (in O. O.) is expressed by the periphrasis ‘it would be that scouts would be sent’; see (382).

**442.**—<sup>1</sup> Adj. in the pred. nom. followed by the *dat.*; see (126). <sup>2</sup> \* by making a forced march.’

oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id<sup>3</sup> ex itinere oppūgnāre cōnātus, quod<sup>4</sup> vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinem paucis<sup>5</sup> dēfēndēntib⁹ expūgnāre nōn potuit. Castris mūnītis vīneās agere<sup>6</sup> quae<sup>7</sup> que ad oppūgnandum ūsuī<sup>8</sup> erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā<sup>9</sup> Suessiōnum multitūdō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vīneās ad oppidum āctis,<sup>10</sup> aggere<sup>11</sup> iactō turribusque cōstītūtis, māgnitūdine<sup>12</sup> operum quae Gallī neque vīderant ante neque audierant et celeritatē Rōmānōrum permōtī<sup>13</sup> lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēdītiōne mittunt.

**443.**—Although<sup>1</sup> Caesar had heard that the town<sup>2</sup> had<sup>3</sup> a few defenders, the townsmen were able to prevent<sup>4</sup> him from taking<sup>5</sup> it by storm. When<sup>6</sup> the Suessiones came into the town on the next night and<sup>7</sup> saw the agger and the towers, they were greatly alarmed and decided that they ought to<sup>8</sup> ask for peace. Certain of<sup>9</sup> the Gauls said they feared<sup>10</sup> that they could not persuade<sup>11</sup> Caesar to make peace.

<sup>3</sup> **id (oppidum):** obj. of **oppugnare**, 'having tried to attack that town immediately after the march.' <sup>4</sup> Acc. subj. of **esse**, 'which he heard was free.' <sup>5</sup> See 'abl. absol.', (364), example 3; 'although (only) a few were defending it.' <sup>6</sup> **agere** and **comparare** joined by **que**, follow **coepit**: 'he began to bring up the vineae and to procure.' <sup>7</sup> Subj. of **erant**; its anteced. is **ea**, the obj. of **comparare**. <sup>8</sup> Dat. of purpose; 'useful' ('for a use'). <sup>9</sup> **ex fuga**: 'in their flight.' <sup>10</sup> 'after the vineae had been quickly brought up.' <sup>11</sup> Noun from **agger**; abl. absol. with **iacto** (from **iacio**). <sup>12</sup> **māgnitūdine et celeritatē**: abls. of **cause** mod. **permotī**; 'being greatly alarmed by the greatness of the works and by the speed.' <sup>13</sup> P. p. mod. the subject implied in **mittunt**.

**443.—1** Concessive **cum**; see (350). <sup>2</sup> Dat. of possession; see (357). <sup>3</sup> **esse**. <sup>4</sup> **deferrere**. <sup>5</sup> See (370); will you use **ne** or **quin**? 'taking (it) by storm' = one word, **expugno**. <sup>6</sup> **postquam**; see (358). <sup>7</sup> Position of **que**? <sup>8</sup> Recast in the pass., 'peace ought to be asked for by them'; see (361, 362, 363). <sup>9</sup> See (378), 'partitive gen., exceptions.' <sup>10</sup> **se vereri**. <sup>11</sup> 'that not—after verbs of fear', see (343), (sequence following **dixerunt**): 'could persuade', use proper mood and tense of **possum** with the infin. **persuadere**; also see (345).

## LESSON XCIV.

## CHAPTER XIII.

*Hearing of Caesar's approach, the Bellovaci surrender.*

**444**—Caesar obsidibus<sup>1</sup> acceptis primis civitatis atque ipsius<sup>2</sup> Galbae regis duobus filiis, armisque omnibus ex oppidō traditis, in deditionem Suessiones accēpit exercitumque in<sup>3</sup> Bellovacos dūcit. Qui<sup>4</sup> cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitu circiter milia<sup>5</sup> passuum quinque abesset, omnēs māiōrēs<sup>6</sup> natū ex oppidō ēgressī<sup>7</sup> manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significare<sup>8</sup> coepérunt, sēsē in eius fidem ac potestatē venire<sup>9</sup> neque<sup>10</sup> contrā populum Rōmānum armis contendere. Item cum<sup>11</sup> ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, pueri mulierēsque ex mūro passis manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānis<sup>12</sup> petiērunt.

**445.**—Caesar received the foremost men of the state as hostages and did not put to death<sup>1</sup> the people. Then he started<sup>2</sup> for<sup>3</sup> the territories of the Bellovaci, who, having learned<sup>4</sup> that Caesar was coming, gathered<sup>5</sup> in the town (of)

**444.**—<sup>1</sup> Apposition with **primis** and **filiis**, the two main words forming the basis of the abl. absol., ‘the foremost... and two sons... having been received’; translate, ‘after receiving as hostages the foremost men of,’ etc. <sup>2</sup> Intensive pron. emphasizing Galbae, ‘of King Galba himself.’ <sup>3</sup> ‘against.’ <sup>4</sup> Rel. at the begin. of the sent. as a connective; incorporate **qui** in the **cum** clause, ‘now after these had carried... and while Caesar was distant.’ <sup>5</sup> ‘Acc. of extent in space,’ see (342). <sup>6</sup> **maiores natū**, literally, ‘greater by birth,’ ‘all the elders (older men).’ <sup>7</sup> Although modifying **maiores** (*nom. subj.*), it is translated by a co-ordinate verb, ‘came forth and began.’ <sup>8</sup> **vōce significare**: ‘to declare.’ <sup>9</sup> In a fut. sense: ‘that they would put themselves under his protection,’ etc. <sup>10</sup> ‘and not.’ <sup>11</sup> ‘after he had come near... and while he was pitching;’ see note 4. <sup>12</sup> **ab Romanis petierunt**, ‘asked the Romans for peace,’ ‘begged peace of the Romans.’

**445.**—<sup>1</sup> ‘put to death’ = **interficio**: ‘and not’ = one word in Latin. <sup>2</sup> **proficiscor**. <sup>3</sup> **in** + acc. <sup>4</sup> Recast (why?) in the pass.; ‘the arrival of C. having been learned of.’ <sup>5</sup> **confero** + **se**.

Bratuspantium. The older men came<sup>6</sup> out of the town and placed their state under<sup>7</sup> Caesar's protection; likewise the women and children<sup>8</sup> extended<sup>9</sup> their hands from (off) the wall and begged peace *of* him.

## LESSON XCV.

### CHAPTER XIV.

*Divitiacus pleads in behalf of the Bellovaci.*

**446.**—Prō<sup>1</sup> hīs Dīvitiācū dīcit: ‘Bellovacī omnī tempore<sup>2</sup> in fidē atque amīctiā cīvitātis Aeduāe fuērunt; impulsī<sup>3</sup> ā suīs pīncipibūs, quī dīcēbant<sup>4</sup> Aeduōs omnīs indīgnitātēs contumēliāsque perferre,<sup>5</sup> et<sup>6</sup> ab Aeduīs dēfēcērunt et populō Rōmānō<sup>7</sup> bellum intulērunt. Eī quī ēius cōnsiliī pīncipēs fuērunt, quod cīvitātī māgnam calamitātēm intulerant, in Britanniā profūgērunt. Petunt<sup>8</sup> nōn sōlum Bellovacī sed etiam prō hīs Aeduī ut<sup>9</sup> tuā clēmentiā<sup>10</sup> ac mānsuētūdine in eōs utāris. Quod<sup>11</sup> sī fēceris,<sup>12</sup> Aeduōrum auctōritātēm apud omnēs Belgās amplificābis, quōrum auxiliis<sup>13</sup> atque opibus, sī qua<sup>14</sup> bella incidērunt, sustentārē cōnsuērunt.’

**447.**—The Bellovaci had been urged<sup>1</sup> on by their chiefs to make<sup>2</sup> war upon the Roman people. Those who were

<sup>6</sup> Turn into a particip. (see text) and omit ‘and.’ <sup>7</sup> in + acc. <sup>8</sup> pueri.

<sup>9</sup> Perf. indic. act. of tendo.

**446.**—<sup>1</sup> ‘in behalf of.’ <sup>2</sup> ‘always.’ <sup>3</sup> P. p. p. *nom. plur.*: mod. the subject contained in **defecērunt** and **intulerunt**: ‘being urged on, they (the Bellovaci) both revolted.’ <sup>4</sup> ‘kept saying.’ <sup>5</sup> ‘that the Aedui were enduring.’ <sup>6</sup> ‘both.’ <sup>7</sup> See (337). <sup>8</sup> Note the emphatic position of the verb. <sup>9</sup> **ut** . . . **utaris**; following **petunt**; ‘not only the Bellovaci beg . . . *you to exercise*.’ <sup>10</sup> Abl. with the depon. **utor**; see (353). <sup>11</sup> **quod**: obj. of **fēceris**; ‘now . . . this,’ see (367). <sup>12</sup> Fut. perf. in a more viv. fut. condition; ‘if you do (shall have done), see (223). <sup>13</sup> Abl. of means, mod. **sustentare**; ‘by whose aid and assistance.’ <sup>14</sup> quis (465) is used as the indef. pron. ‘any—some,’ *after si, nisi, ne, num* (226).

**447.**—<sup>1</sup> **impello.** <sup>2</sup> **ut** + subjunc. (sequence?): **inferre bellum + dat.**

the chiefs in (of) this design brought<sup>3</sup> great disaster upon their state. Divitiacus informed Caesar that those who were<sup>4</sup> the leaders in this design had brought great disaster upon the state. Because Caesar knew for what reason<sup>5</sup> they had done<sup>6</sup> these things, he exercised<sup>7</sup> his usual clemency toward<sup>8</sup> the Bellovaci.

---

<sup>3</sup> Again **iinferre**, which takes the *acc.* and *dat.* <sup>4</sup> In a *past* sense = 'had been'; the subord. verb in O. O. goes in what mood? see (306). <sup>5</sup> 'for what reason,' **qua de causa**. <sup>6</sup> 'indir. quest.'; verb in what mood? see (313); sequence? <sup>7</sup> **utor** + abl. <sup>8</sup> **in** + *acc.*

C. IULI CAESARIS  
DĒ BELLŌ GALLICŌ.

LIBER SECUNDUS.

*Formation by the Belgae of a league against Caesar.*

I. CUM esset Caesar in citeriore Galliā in hibernis, ita utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur, litterīsque item Labiēnī certior fīebat omnēs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dīxerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare. 5 Coniūrandī hās esse causās: prīmum quod verērentur nē omnī pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde quod ab nōnnūllīs Gallīs sollicitārentur, partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā 10 molestē ferēbant, partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs imperiīs studēbant; ab nōnnūllīs etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque eīs quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant vulgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōnsequī poterant. 15

*Caesar strengthens his force by the addition of two legions and marches against them.*

II. Hīs nūntiīs litterīsque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriore Galliā novās cōnservīpsit et initā aestāte, in interiōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Quīntum Pedium lēgātum mīsit. Ipse, cum prīmum pābulī cōpia esse inciperet,

5 ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquīsque Gallīs quī fīnitimī Belgīs erant, utī ea quae apud eōs gerantur cōgnōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn 10 exīstīmāvit quīn ad eōs proficīserētur. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad fīnēs Belgārum pervenit.

*The Remi refuse to enter the league against the Romans  
and surrender to Caesar.*

III. Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque omni opīniōne vēnisset, Rēmī quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt ad eum lēgātōs Iecium et Andecumborium, prīmōs cīvitātis, mīsērunt, quī dīcerent sē suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere; neque sē cum Belgīs reliquīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterīsque rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque quī cis 10 Rhēnum incolant sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem, ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōsanguineōsque suōs, quī eōdem iūre et īsdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs habeant, dēterrēre potuerint quīn cum hīs cōsēntīrent.

*Through the Remi Caesar obtains information as to the number, etc., of the enemies' forces.*

IV. Cum ab hīs quaereret quae cīvitātēs quantaeque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sīc reperiēbat: plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ab Germānīs, Rhēnumque antiquitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōsēdisse, Gallōs-

que quī ea loca incoherent expulisse, sōlōsque esse quī 5 patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā fīnīs suōs ingredī prohibuerint; quā ex rē fierī utī eārum rērum memoriā māgnam sibi auctōritātem māgnōsque spīritūs in rē militārī sūmerent. Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explōrāta Rēmī dīcēbant, 10 proptereā quod propīnquitātibus affīnitātibusque coniūncēti, quantam quisque multitūdinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit, cōgnōverint. Plūri-  
mum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et homi-  
num numerō valēre; hōs posse cōnficere armāta mīlia cen- 15 tum, pollicitōs ex eō numerō ēlēcta sexāgintā, tōtīusque bellī imperium sibi postulāre. Suessiōnēs suōs esse fīnitī-  
mōs; fīnīs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Dīvitiācum, 20 tōtīus Galliae potentissimum, quī cum māgnae partis hārum regiōnum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse rēgem Galbam: ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque suam summam tōtīus bellī omnium volun-  
tāte dēferrī; oppida habēre numerō XII, pollicērī mīlia armāta quīnquāgintā; totidem Nerviōs, quī māximē ferī 25 inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint; quīndecim mīlia Atrebātēs, Ambiānōs decem mīlia, Morinōs XXV mīlia, Menapiōs VII mīlia, Caletōs X mīlia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Aduatucōs decem et novem mīlia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caeroesōs, Paemānōs, quī ūnō 30 nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrārī ad XL mīlia

*After receiving hostages from the Remi Caesar crosses the Axona on his way to meet the Belgae.*

V. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus līberāliterque ḍrātiōne prō-  
secūtus, omnem senātum ad sē convenīre pīncipumque  
līberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs

dīligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Dīvitiācum Aeduum  
 5 māgnopere cohortātus docet quantō opere reī pūblicae  
 commūnisque salūtis intersit manūs hostium distinērī, nē  
 cum tantā multitūdine ūnō tempore cōflīgendum sit. Id  
 fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Aeduī in fīnēs Bellovacōrum  
 intrōdūixerint et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. Hīs  
 10 mandātīs eum ā sē dīmittit. Postquam omnīs Belgārum  
 cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre vīdit, neque  
 iam longē abesse ab eīs quōs mīserat explōrātōribus et ab  
 Rēmīs cōgnōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rē-  
 mōrum fīnibus, exercitū trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi  
 15 castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs  
 flūminis mūniēbat et post eum quae essent tūta ab hostibus  
 reddēbat, et commeātūs ab Rēmīs reliquīsque cīvitātibus  
 ut sine perīculō ad eum portārī possent efficiēbat. In eō  
 flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte  
 20 flūminis Quintum Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex  
 cohortib⁹ relinquit; castra in altitūdinē pedum duode-  
 cim vāllō fossāque duodēvīgintī pedum mūnīre iubet.

*The Belgae attack Bibrax. The way in which the Belgae lay siege to a town.*

VI. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax  
 aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id ex itinere māgnō impetū  
 Belgae oppūgnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum  
 est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppūgnātiō est  
 5 haec. Ubi circumiectā multitūdine hominū tōtīs moeni-  
 bus undique in mūrum lapidēs iacī coeptī sunt mūrusque  
 dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā portās succēdunt  
 mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fīēbat. Nam cum  
 tanta multitūdō lapidēs ac tēla cōnicerent, in mūrō cōn-  
 10 sistēdī potestās erat nūllī. Cum fīnēm oppūgnandī nox  
 fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus summā nōbilitātē et grātiā inter-

suōs, quī tum oppidō praefuerat, ūnus ex eīs quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.

15

*When Caesar sends aid to the Remi, the Belgae abandon the siege and turn against him.*

VII. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar īisdem ducibus ūsus qui nūntiī ab Ieciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētās sagittāriōs et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānīs mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpūgnandī accessit, et hostibus eādem dē causā spēs potiundī 5 oppidī discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque quōs adīre potuerant incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ab mīlibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque īgnibus 10 sīgnificābātur, amplius mīlibus passuum octō in lātitūdinem patēbant.

*Caesar prepares strong defences upon a hill near the Axona and awaits the enemies' attack.*

VIII. Caesar prīmō et propter multitūdinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit: cotidiē tamen equestribus proeliīs quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent perīclitābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse īferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castrīs ad 5 aciem īstruendam nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō,—quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex plānitiē ēdītus tantum adversus in lātitūdinem patēbat, quantum locī aciēs īstrūcta occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et in frontem lēniter fastīgā- 10 tus paulātim ad plānitiēm redībat,—ab utrōque latere ēius

collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum quadrin-  
gentōrum et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōnstituit ibique  
tormenta collocāvit, nē, cum aciem īstrūxisset, hostēs,  
15 quod tantum multitūdine poterant, ab lateribus pūgnantēs  
suōs circumvenīre possent. Hōc factō duābus legiōnibus  
quās proximē cōserīpserat in castrīs relictīs, ut, sī quō  
opus esset, subsidiō dūci possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō  
castrīs in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex  
20 castrīs ēductās īstrūxerant.

*The enemy attempt to cross the river in an effort to surprise Titurius.*

IX. Palūs erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium trānseundī fieret, ut impētōs aggredierentur parātī in armīs erant. Interim 5 proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum proeliō nostrīs Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadīs 10 repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, eō cōsiliō ut, sī possent, castellum cui praeerat Quīntus Titurius lēgātus expūgnārent pontemque interscinderent; sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī māgnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque 15 nostrōs prohibērent.

*A fierce battle ensues in which the Belgae are defeated and dispersed.*

X. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Āriter in eō

locō pūgnātum est. Hostēs impedītōs nostrī in flūmine aggressī māgnum eōrum numerū occīdērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsīre cōnāntēs multitūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt; prīmōs, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē expūgnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānsēundō spēm sē fefellisse intellexērunt, neque nostrōs in locum īnīquiōrem prōgredī pūgnandī causā vīdērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō cōstituērunt optimum esse domum suam quemque revertī, et, quōrum in sīnēs prīmū Rōmānī exercitū intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendōs undique convenīrent, ut potius in suīs quam in aliēnīs sīnībus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiīs reī frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquīs causīs haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Dīvitiācum atque Aeduōs sīnībus Bellovacōrum appropīnquāre cōgnōverant. Hīs persuādērī ut diūtius morārentur neque suīs auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

*The Romans pursue and slaughter large numbers of the Belgae.*

XI. Eā rē cōnstitūtā secundā vigiliā māgnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castrīs ēgressī nūllō certō ūrdine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque prīmū itineris locum peteret et domum pervenīre properāret, fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāe rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cōgnitā, īnsidiās veritus, quod quā dē causā discēderent nōndum perspēxerat, exercitū equitātumque castrīs continuuit Prīmā lūce cōnfīrmātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum quī novissimum agmen morārētur praemīsit. Hīs Quīntūm Pedium et Lūciūm Aurunculēū Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit; Titum Labiēnum lēgātūm cum legiōni-tribus subsequī iussit. Hī novissimōs adortī et multa

mīlia passuum prōsecūtī māgnam multitūdinem eōrum fugientium concidērunt, cum ab extrēmō agmine, ad quōs 15 ventum erat, cōsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum mīlitum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā perīculō vidērentur neque ūllā necessitāte neque imperiō continērentur, exaudītō clāmōre perturbātīs ūrdinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praeſidium pōnerent. Ita sine ūllō perīculō tantam eōrum 20 multitūdinem nostrī interfēcērunt, quantum fuit diēi spatium, sub occāsumque sōlis sequī dēstitērunt, sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

*After a forced march Caesar attacks Noviodunum and the town surrenders.*

XII. Postrīdiē ēius diēi Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā recipērent, in fīnīs Suessiōnum quī proximī Rēmīs erant exercitum dūxit et māgnō itinere cōflectō ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppūgnāre 5 cōnātus, quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, prop̄ter lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinem paucis dēfēndentibus expūgnāre nōn potuit. Castrīs mūnītīs vīneās agere quaeque ad oppūgnandum ūsuī erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitūdō in 10 oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vīneīs ad oppidum āctīs, aggere iactō turribusque cōnstitūtīs, māgnitūdine operum, quae neque vīderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mittunt et potentibus Rēmīs ut 15 cōnservārentur impetrant.

*When the Belloraci learn of Caesar's approach, they too submit.*

XIII. Caesar obsidibus acceptīs prīmīs cīvitātis atque ipsīus Galbae rēgis duōbus filiīs, armīsque omnibus ex

oppidō trāditīs, in dēditiōnem Suessionēs accēpit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō 5 oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs māiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce sīgnificāre coepērunt sēsē in cīus fidem et potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum 10 accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

*Divitiacus pleads in behalf of the Bellovaci.*

XIV. Prō hīs Divitiācus (nam post discessum Belgārum dīmissīs Aeduōrum cōpiīs ad eum reverterat) facit verba: Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis Aeduāe fuisse; impulsōs ab suīs prīncipib⁹, quī dīcerent Aeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnīs indīgnitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Aeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī ēius cōsiliī prīncipēs fuissent, quod intellegerent quantā calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgisse. Petere nōn sōlum Bellovacōs sed etiam prō hīs Aeduōs ut suā clē- 10 mentiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod sī fēcerit, Aeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātū- rum, quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōnsuērint.

*Caesar spares the Bellovaci and demands hostages.*

*Character and habits of the Nervii.*

XV. Caesar honōris Dīvitiācī atque Aeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidē receptūrum et cōservātūrum dīxit; quod erat cīvitās māgnā inter Belgās auctōritātē atque

hominum multitūdine praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs popo-  
 seit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō collatīs,  
 ab eō locō in fīnīs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque  
 omnia sine morā dēdidērunt. Eōrum fīnīs Nerviī attin-  
 gēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cūm quae-  
 reret, sīc reperiēbat: Nūllum aditum esse ad eōs mercā-  
 tōrībus; nihil patī vīnī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriām  
 pertinentium īferrī, quod eīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs  
 et remittī virtūtem exīstīmārent; esse hominēs ferōs mā-  
 gnaeque virtūtis; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs  
 Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque vir-  
 tūtem prōiēcissent; cōfīrmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs mīssūrōs  
 neque ūllam condicōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

*The Nervii encamp on the Sabis and await the approach  
 of Caesar.*

XVI. Cum per eōrum fīnēs trīlūm iter fēcisset, inve-  
 niēbat ex captīvīs Sabim flūmen ab castrīs suīs nōn amplius  
 mīlia passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nerviōs  
 cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā  
 cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, fīnitimīs suīs (nam hīs  
 utrīsque persuāserant utī eandem bellī fortūnam experi-  
 rentur); exspectārī etiam ab hīs Aduatuēōrum cōpiās  
 atque esse in itinere: mulierēs quīque per aetātem ad  
 pūgnām inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum coniēcisse, quō  
 propter palūdēs exercituī aditus nōn esset.

*Urged on by deserters from the Roman army the Nervii  
 plan to attack Caesar's advanced guard.*

XVII. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque  
 praemittit quī locum idōneum castrīs dēligant. Cum ex  
 dēditīciīs Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs complūrēs Caesarem

secūtī ūnā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut posteā ex captīvīs cōgnitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine itineris 5 nostrī exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervenērunt atque hīs dēmōstrārunt inter singulās legiōnēs impedimentōrum māgnūm numērūm intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnūm spatiū abessent, hanc sub 10 sarcinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedimentīsque dīreptīs futūrum ut reliquae contrā cōsistere nōn audērent. Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōsiliū quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nerviī antiquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hōc tempus eī reī student, sed quicquid possunt, 15 pedestribus valent cōpiīs), quō facilius fīnitimōrum equitātū, sī praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedīrent, tenerīs arboribus incīsīs atque īflexīs crēbrīsque in lātitūdinem rāmīs ēnātīs et rubīs sentibusque interiectīs effēce-  
rant, ut īstar mūrī hae saepēs mūnīmenta praebērent, 20 quō nōn modo nōn intrārī sed nē perspicī quidem posset. Hīs rēbus cum iter agminis nostrī impedīrētur, nōn omit-  
tendum sibi cōsiliū Nerviī exīstīmāvērunt.

*Location of Caesar's camp. Position of the two armies.*

XVIII. Locī nātūra erat haec quem locum nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequāliter dēclīvis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclīvitāte collis nāscēbātur adversus hnic et contrārius, passūs circiter ducentōs īfīmus apertus, ab superiōre 5 parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae statiōnēs equitū vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō circiter pedum trium.

*The Romans surprised by the unexpected attack skilfully carried out by the Nervii.*

XIX. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbatur omnibus cōpiis; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac Belgae ad Nerviōs dētulerant. Nam quod ad hostiis appropinquābat, cōnsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expedītās dūcēbat; post eās tōtius exercitūs impedimenta collocārat; inde duae legiōnēs quae proximē cōscrīptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedimentis erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittariisque flūmen trānsgressi cum hostiū equitātū proelium commīsērunt.  
 10 Cum sē illī identidem in silvās ad suōs reciperent et rūrsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostrī longius quam quem ad fīnem porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant cēdentēs īsequī audērent, interim legiōnēs sex quae prīmae vēnerant opere dīmēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt.  
 15 Ubi prīma impedimenta nostrī exercitūs ab eīs, qui in silvās abditī latēbant, vīsa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendī proeliī convēnerat, ut intrā silvās aciem ōrdinēsque cōstituerant atque ipsī sēsē cōfīrmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiis prōvolāvērunt impetumque in  
 20 nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. His facile pulsīs et prōturbātīs, incrēdibilī celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine et iam in manib⁹ nostrīs hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs quī in opere occupātī erant  
 25 contendērunt.

*Conduct of Caesar's soldiers and lieutenants in an emergency.*

XX. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum prōpōnendum, quod erat īsigne cum ad arma concūriū oportēret, sīgnū tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī

militēs, quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant arcessendī, aciēs īstruenda, militēs cohortandī, sīgnūm dandum. Quārum rērum māgnam partem temporis brevitās et successus hostium impediēbat. Hīs difficultatibus duae rēs erant subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus militū, quod superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī quid fierī oportēret nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescribere quam ab aliīs docērī poterant, et quod ab opere singulīsque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītīs castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter propīnquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per se quae vidēbantur administrābant. 15

*So sudden the attack, the soldiers are compelled to begin fighting before they can arm themselves.*

XXI. Caesar necessāriīs rēbus imperatīs ad cohortandōs militēs quam in partem fors obtulit dēcucurrit, et ad legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. Militēs nōn longiore ūratiōne cohortātus quam utī suaे prīstinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent neu perturbārentur animō hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant quam quō tēlum adicī posset, proeliī committendī sīgnūm dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus pūgnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad dīmīcandum animus ut nōn modo ad īsignia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtīsque tegimenta dētrūdenda tempus dēfuerit. Quām quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit quaeque prīma sīgna cōnspēxit, ad haec cōstitut, nē in quaerendīs suis pūgnandī tempus dīmitteret. 15

*Confusion on the part of the soldiers. Difficulties encountered by the commander.*

XXII. Īnstrūctō exercitū magis ut locī nātūra dēiectus-que collis et necessitās temporis quam ut reī mīlitāris ratiō atque ūrdō postulābat, cum dīversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimīs (ut ante 5 dēmōnstrāvimus) interiectīs p̄spectus impedīrētur, neque certa subsidia collocārī neque quid in quāque parte opus esset prōvidērī neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitātē fortūnae quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

*In one quarter the Romans win; in another they lose.*

XXIII. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae mīlītēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciē cōstiterant, pīlīs ēmissīs cursū ac lassitūdine exanimātōs vulneribusque cōflectōs Atrebātēs (nam hīs ea pars obvēnerat) celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen com-5 pulērunt, et trānsīre cōnantēs īnsecūtī gladiīs māgnam partem eōrum impedītam interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsīre flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt et in locum inīquum prōgressī rūrsus resistentēs hostēs redintegrātō proeliō in fugam coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte dīversae duae legiōnēs, 10 ūndecima et octāva, prōflīgātīs Viromanduīs, quibuscum erant congressī, ex locō superiōre in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs proeliābantur. At tōtīs ferē ā fronte et ab sinistrā parte nūdātīs castrīs, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn māgnō ab eā intervallō septima cōstitisset, omnēs 15 Nervī cōfertissimō agmine duce Boduōgnātō, quī summam imperī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenīre, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

*The day seems to be going against the Romans. The Nervii gain Caesar's camp.*

XXIV. Eodem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae peditēs, quī cum eīs ūnā fuerant, quōs prīmō hostium impetū pulsōs dīxeram, cum sē in castra reciperen, ad versis hostibus occurrēbant ac rūrsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant; et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā et 5 summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse cōspēxerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum respēxissent et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vīdissent, praeципitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum quī cum impedimentīs veniēbant clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliīque aliam in 10 partem perterritī ferēbantur. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō est singulāris, quī auxiliī causā ab cīvitāte ad Caesarem mīssī vēnerant, cum multitudine hostium castra complērī nostra, legiōnēs premī et paene circumventās tenērī, 15 cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās dīversōs dissipatōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vīdissent, dēspērātīs nostrīs rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedimentīsque eōrum hostēs potītōs, cīvitātī renūntiāvērunt. 20

*Caesar seizes a shield and takes part in the fight in the foremost ranks.*

XXV. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortatiōne ad dextrum eornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī signīsque in ūnum locum collātīs duodecimae legiōnis cōfertōs mīlitēs sibi ipsōs ad pūgnam esse impedimentō vīdit, quartae cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus occīsīs signiferōque interfectō, 5 signō āmīssō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centu-

riōnibus aut vulneratīs aut occīsīs, in hīs pīmipīlō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multīs grāvibusque vulnerib⁹ cōffectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset; reliquōs esse 10 tardiorēs et nōnnūllōs ab novissimīs dēsertō proeliō excēdere ac tēla vītāre, hostīs neque ā fronte ex īferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere īstāre, et rem esse in angustō vīdit neque ūllum esse subsidium quod summittī posset; scūtō ab novissimīs ūnī mīlitī dētrāctō, 15 quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in pīmam aciem prōcessit centuriōnibusque nōminātim appellatīs reliquōs cohortatūs mīlitēs sīgna īferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiīs ūtī possent. Cūius adventū spē illatā mīlitibus et redintegratō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōspectū im- 20 peratōris etiam in extrēmīs suīs rēbus operam nāvāre cupe-ret, paulum hostium impetus tardatus est.

*Caesar reinforced by the arrival of three legions. The scene begins to change.*

XXVI. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōstiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs mīlitūm monuit ut paulatīm sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa sīgnā in hostēs īferrent. Quō factō, cum aliis aliī subsidium ferret neque timērent nē āversī ab hoste circumvenīrentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pūgnāre coēpērunt. Interim mīlitēs legiōnum duārum quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedimentīs fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitatō in summō colle ab hostibus cōspiciēbantur, et 10 Titus Labiēnus castrīs hostium potītus et ex locō superiōre quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur cōspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsit. Quī, cum ex equitū et cālōnum fugā quō in locō rēs esset quantōque in periculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārētūr cōgnōvissent, 15 nihil ad celeritatēm sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

*A desperate encounter in which the Romans win.*

XXVII. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtatiō est facta ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōflectī prōeubuis-sent, scūtis innīxī proelium redintegrārent. Tum cālōnēs perterritōs hostēs cōnspicātī etiam inermēs armātīs occur-rerunt; equitēs vērō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlē-rent, omnibus in locīs pūgnārunt, quō sē legiōnāriīs mīli-tibus praeferrent. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestiterunt ut, cum prīmī eōrum ceci-dissent, proximī iacentibus īsisterent atque ex eōrum cor-poribus pūgnārent; hīs dēiectīs et coacervātīs eadāveribus, 10 quī supererent ut ex tumulō tēla in nostrōs cōnicerent et pīla intercepta remitterent: ut nōn nēquīquam tantae vir-tūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēbēret ausōs esse trānsire lātissi-mum flūmen, ascendere altissimās rīpās, subīre inīquissi-mum locum ; quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī māgnitūdō 15 redēgerat.

*Terrible fate of the Nervii. Pardon for the few that survive.*

XXVIII. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneōnem gente ac nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō, māiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria et palūdēs coniectōs dīixerāmus, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impedītum, victīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium 5 quī supererant cōnsensū lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt ; et, in commemorandā cīvitātis cala-mitātē, ex sexcentīs ad trēs senātōrēs. ex hominum mīli-bus LX vix ad quīngentōs quī arma ferre possent sēsē redāctōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac 10 supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, dīlēgentissimē cō-servāvit, suīisque fīnibus atque oppidīs ūtī iussit, et

fīnitimīs imperāvit ut ab iniūriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

*Cuesar next lays siege to a stronghold in which the Aduatuci have gathered.*

XXIX. Aduatucī, dē quibus suprā scripsimus, cum omnibus cōpiīs auxiliō Nerviīs venīrent, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūnctīs oppidīs castellīsque dēsertīs sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē 5 nātūrā mūnītūm contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās rūpēs dēspectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter acclīvis aditus in lātitūdinem nōn amplius ducentōrum pedum relinquēbātur; quem locum dupliētī altissimō mūrō mūnierant, tum māgnī ponderis 10 saxa et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō collocābant. Ipsī erant ex Cimbrīs Teutonīsque prōgnātī, quī, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Ītaliām facerent, eīs impedimentīs quae sēcum agere et portāre nōn poterant eitrā flūmen Rhēnum 15 dēpositīs, custōdiam ex suīs ac praesidium sex mīlia hominū ūnā reliquērunt. Hī post eōrum obitum multōs annōs ā fīnitimīs exagitātī, cum aliās bellum īferrent aliās illātum dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū cōrum omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgērunt.

*From the walls they taunt the Romans in their preparations for an attack.*

XXX. Ac pīmō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulīsque proeliīs cum nostrīs contendēbant; posteā vällō passuum in circuitū xv mīliūm crēbrīsque castellīs circummūnītī oppidō sēsē constinēbant. Ubi vīneīs āctīs aggere exstrūctō turrīm procul cōnstitui vīlērunt, pīmūm irrīdēre ex mūrō atque incre-

pitare vōcibus, quod tanta māchinatiō ab tantō spatiō īstruerētur: quibusnam manib⁹ aut quibus vīrib⁹ praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae (nam plērumque omnibus Gallis prae māgnitūdine corporum suōrum brevi-<sup>10</sup> tās nostra contemptuī est) tantī oneris turrī mōtūrōs sēsē cōfiderent?

*Soon they lose heart and ask of Caesar his terms of surrender.*

XXXI. Ubi vērō movērī et appropīquāre moenibus vīdērunt, novā atque īnūitatā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī: nōn exīstīmāre Rōmānōs sine ope dīvīnā bellum gerere, quī tantae altitūdinis māchinatiōnēs tantā celeritāte prō-<sup>5</sup> movēre possent, sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī per-  
mittere dīxērunt. Únum petere et dēprecārī: sī forte prō suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam ipsī ab aliīs audīrent, statuisse Aduatucōs esse cōservandōs, nē sē armīs dēpoliāret. Sibi omnēs ferē fīnitimōs esse inimīcōs<sup>10</sup> ac suaे virtūtī invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditīs armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum dēdū-  
cerentur, quamvis fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī quam ab hīs per cruciātūm interfici inter quōs dominārī cō-  
suēssent.

15

*They are promised protection if they disarm. Treachery on the side of the enemy.*

XXXII. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Sē magis cōnsuētū-  
dine suā quam meritō eōrum cīvitātem cōservātūrum, sī prius, quam mūrum ariēs attigisset, sē dēdidissent; sed dēditiōnis nūllam esse condiciōnem nisi armīs trāditīs. Sē

5 id quod in Nerviis fēcisset factūrum, fīnitimīsque imperātūrum nē quam dēditīciis populī Rōmānī iniūriam īferrent. Rē nūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur facere dīxerunt. Armōrum māgnā multitūdine dē mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iactā, sīc ut prope summam  
10 mūrī aggerisque altitūdinem acervī armōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut posteā perspectum est, cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portīs patefactīs eō diē pāce sunt ūsī.

*The enemies' plans fail to carry and they meet a terrible fate.*

XXXIII. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī mīlitēsque ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ab mīlitib⁹ iniūriam acciperent. Illī, ante initō (ut intellēctum est) cōnsiliō, quod dēditiōne factā nostrōs praesidia dēduc-  
5 tūrōs aut dēnique indīligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, partim cum eīs quae retinuerant et cēlāverant armīs, partim scūtīs ex cortice factīs aut vīminibus intextīs, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās postulābat, pellibus indūxe-  
rant, tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnī-  
10 tiōnēs ascēnsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiīs repentinō ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperārat, ignibus sīgnificatiōne factā, ex proximīs castellīs eō concursum est, pūgnātumque ab hostibus ita āriter est, ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis, inīquō locō,  
15 contrā eōs qui ex vallō turribusque tēla iacerent, pūgnārī dēbuit, cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs salūtis cōsisteret. Occīsīs ad hominum mīlibus quattuor reliquī in oppidum reiectī sunt. Postrīdiē ēius diē refrāctīs portīs, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmīssīs mīlitib⁹ nostrīs, sec-  
tiōnem ēius oppidī ūniversam Caesar vēndidit. Ab eīs  
20

qui ēmerant capitum numerus ad eum relātus est mīlīum quīnquāgintā trium.

*The maritime nations submit to the Romans.*

XXXIV. Eōdem tempore ā Publiō Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā mīserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Curiosolitas, Esubiōs, Aulereōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae cīvitātēs Oceānumque attingunt, certior factus est omnīs eās cīvitātēs in diciōnem potestātemque populī Rōmānī 5 esse redāctās.

*Ambassadors come to Caesar from across the Rhine. The army goes into winter quarters and a thanksgiving is decreed at Rome.*

XXXV. Hīs rēbus gestīs, omnī Galliā pācātā, tanta hūius bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est, utī ab eīs nātiōnibus quae trāns Rhēnum incolement lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur, qui sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in 5 Italiam Illyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestātē ad sē revertī iussit. Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonēs, quaeque cīvitātēs propīnquaē hīs locīs erant ubi bellum gesse rat, legiōnibus in hībernācula dēductīs, in Italiam profectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris in diēs quīn- 10 decim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūllī.

### TABLE OF ABBREVIATIONS.

abl. absol.	= ablative absolute	lim.	= limit
affirm.	= affirmative	mod.	= modify
agreem.	= agreement	neg.	= negative
appos.	= apposition	p. p.	= perfect participle
condit.	= condition	p. p. p.	= perfect pass. participle
depen.	= depend	quest.	= question
depon.	= deponent	sep.	= separation
dir.	= direct	subj.	= subject
disc.	= discourse	subjunc.	= subjunctive
doub.	= double	subord.	= subordinate
i.e.	= that is	substanc.	= substantive
impers.	= impersonal	syst.	= system
indir.	= indirect	viv.	= vivid
lit.	= literally		
	O. O. = <i>ōrātiō obliqua</i>		
	O. R. = <i>ōrātiō rēcta</i>		

## NOTES.

### BOOK II.

#### THE CAMPAIGNS OF CAESAR IN GAUL.

Gallia, 'Gaul', as used in Caesar, included the vast region which comprises all of France, the greater part of Switzerland, and the western portion of Germany, with Holland and Belgium.

The campaigns of Caesar in Gaul lasted through eight years (B.C. 58-51), and are described in eight books—each book giving an account of the operations of one year.

In Book I (B.C. 58), after a general description of Gaul, Caesar describes the war with the Helvetians, a tribe of Northern Switzerland numbering over 300,000, who attempted to reach Western Gaul by an armed emigration through central Gaul. Their attempt to pass was checked by Caesar, who, after several skirmishes and two bloody battles, forced the Helvetians to return into their territories with the loss of 200,000 lives. He also tells of an engagement with a powerful tribe of Germans under their chief, Ariovistus, who had settled in Eastern Gaul. These were repulsed and driven back across the Rhine.

Book II (B.C. 57) contains an account of the conspiracy and defeat of the Belgians, a people in Northern Gaul. The Belgians were a fierce and barbarous people living amid forests and swamps far remote from any country reached by the Roman arms. They appear to have formed a powerful confederacy and to have offered to Caesar a most desperate resistance. In a battle, perhaps the most desperate of all that Caesar ever fought, the enemy was defeated and the confederacy of Northern Gaul suppressed, with the almost complete annihilation of the Nervii, the bravest of the Belgian tribe. In this campaign Publius Crassus reduced the maritime states to submission.

CHAPTER I.—1. *cum esset*: ‘while Caesar was,’ see (128, 203); note the emphatic position of the *verb*. *citeriore Gallia*: that is, northern Italy. *ita uti*: ‘just as.’ 2. *demonstravimus*: the rhetorical *we*. Caesar speaks of himself as the general in the *third* person, as the writer in the *first*. 3. *litteris*: abl. of means, see (43 b), mod. *certior fiebat*; ‘by letters from (of) Labienus.’ *que*: joins *afferebantur* and *certior fiebat*, imperf. of *repeated action*, see (102); ‘kept coming in and he was informed (from day to day).’ *certior*: with *pass.*, see (338). *Belgas*: acc. subj. of *coniurare* and *dare*, depend upon *certior fiebat*; ‘that all the Belgians *were* conspiring;’ for the *tense of the infin.*, see (301, 302, 305, 318). *quam*: acc. subj. of *esse*, agreeing with the *pred. acc. partem*, rather than with *Belgas*, see (373); ‘who, we had said, constitute (*esse*) a third part of Gaul.’ 4. *esse*: indir. disc. depen. on *dixeramus*, see (301, 302, 318). *dixeramus*: pluperf. denoting what took place before the time of *demonstravimus*. 5. *inter se dare*: ‘were exchanging.’ *coniurandi*: gen. of the gerund dep. upon *causas*. In the sight of the Romans any war against Rome was a ‘conspiracy.’ But this uprising of the Belgians was in reality the effort of a spirited people to protect their rights. 6. *esse*: following *certior fiebat*, ‘that the reasons for (of) conspiring were *as follows* (has).’ *quod vererentur, sollicitarentur*: subjunc. because subord. clauses in indir. disc., see (306); the two *quod* clauses are preceded by *primum*, ‘in the first place,’ and *deinde*, ‘in the second place’; for the *sequence of tense*, see (135); these subjunctives are dependent upon a *past* verb, *fiebat*. *ne*: ‘that’ or ‘lest,’ see (343), *verbs of fear*, etc. 7. *ad eos*: ‘against them.’ *sollicitarentur*: ‘because they were being incited.’ 8. *ab Gallis*: pers. agent, see (237). *partim qui*: ‘some of whom.’ *ut*: introduces *noluerant* (*indic. mood*); the indic. verbs in the remaining part of the chapt. indicate that this is not regarded as part of Labienus’s report (which would make the verbs *subjunc. in indir. disc.*), but as explanatory remarks made by Caesar. *ut noluerant*: ‘as they had been unwilling,’ note the force of the *pluperf.* *Germanos*: acc. subj. of *versari*, following *noluerant*, ‘that the Germans should remain.’ 9. *ita ferebant moleste*: literally, ‘so were bearing with trouble;’ freely, ‘took it hard.’ *populi*: gen. sing. dep. upon *exercitum*. 10. *hiemare, inveterascere*: with the subj. acc. *exercitum* in indir. disc. depending upon *moleste ferebant*; ‘that an army of the Roman people was wintering and getting a foothold in Gaul.’ 11. *partim qui*: anteced. of *qui* is *Gallis* (line 8); ‘some of whom

were always desiring.' **mobilitate, levitate**: abl. of cause, see (210) 'on account of inconstancy and fickleness'; the ablatives mod. **studebant, imperiis**: dat. with **studebant**, for which construction see (348); 'a new government,' literally, 'new ruling powers.' 12. **ab nonnullis**: pers. agent, mod. **sollicitabantur**, 'they were incited by some *also* (*etiam*),' see (237). **quod**: with **occupabantur**, a causal clause, mod. **sollicitabantur**; 'they were incited also because royal power was being (constantly) usurped.' **a potentioribus**: adj. as substan., see (258); 'by the more powerful and by those who.' 13. **ad concendos**: gerundive, see (253); 'for hiring.' **facultates**: 'opportunities,' 'means.' 14. **regna**: plur., literally, 'kingdoms'—see translation above as the subj. of **occupabantur**, beginning with **quod**. **minus**: adv. mod. another adv. **facile**, 'less easily.' **rem**: obj. of **consequi**. **imperio nostro**: 'under our rule,' abl. absol. implying condition; the idea is, 'the government being ours,' see (364)—2. 15. **consequi poterant**: 'who could secure that or such power (**rem**).'

CHAPTER II.—1. **nuntiis, litteris**: abl. of cause, mod. and in the translation *following commotus*; '(being) greatly alarmed by these messages and letters.' **duas legiones**: XIII<sup>th</sup> and XIV<sup>th</sup>. Caesar had now eight legions, numbered VII to XIV, inclusive, amounting to perhaps 60,000 men including auxiliaries. 2. **inita**: p. p. p. of **ineo**, forming an abl. absol. of *time* with **aestate**, 'at the beginning of summer'; what literally? see (287). **in interiorem Galliam**: see (35); 'into the Central part of Gaul.' 3. **qui deduceret**: anteced. is **Q. Pedium**, rel. clause of purpose (**qui = ut is**), see (311); sequence derived from **misit**, see (135). Pedius, nephew of Caesar and one of his heirs. 4. **ipse**: intensive pron., placed first for special emphasis, 'Caesar himself.' **cum primum**: 'as soon as;' in the early part of May or June; when grass and young grain began to be plentiful for the numerous beasts of burden carrying military stores as well as for the horses of the cavalry and officers. **inciperet**: 'began' —subj. is **copia**. 5. **dat**: historical pres., used for the historical perfect to enliven the narrative. **Senonibus, Gallis**: why dat.? see (330). 6. **Belgis**: see 'dat. with adjs.', (126). **uti (ut) cognoscant, faciant**: substantive clauses of *purpose* in apposition with, or defining, **negotium**; observe the *sequence, pres. + pres.* **gerantur**: subjunc. by *attraction*, see (276); 'to find out those things which are being "transacted." 7. **se**: 'and to inform him (Caesar);' if the *subord.* clause expresses the words or thought of the *main clause*,

the *reflexive* is used to refer to the subject of the latter. **constanter**: ‘uniformly,’ without disagreement in the reports. 8. **manus**: acc. subj. of **cogi** (pres. pass. infin.); ‘that bands (forces) were being collected.’ **in locum**: not *abi.*, but *acc.*, see (35); mod. a verb of *motion*—**conduci**; ‘was being gathered.’ 9. **tum vero**: observe the emphatic position, ‘then indeed.’ **dubitandum (esse sibi)**: periphrastic *pres. infin. pass.* used impersonally, depen. upon **existimavit**; see (361, 362, 363); literally, ‘he thought it ought not to be hesitated by him;’ freely, ‘he thought he ought not to hesitate.’ 10. **quin proficiseretur**: ‘to set out’ (lit., ‘but that he should,’ etc.); in the sense of ‘hesitate,’ **dubito** regularly takes the *infin.*, this being an exception; **dubito**, ‘to doubt,’ takes **quin + subjunc.** 11. **diebus**: abl. of time within which, see (65); ‘in about fifteen days.’ **ad fines**: Caesar marched from Vesontio to the Belgian frontier (north-west), about 145 miles, in 15 days.

CHAPTER III.—1. **eo**: ‘thither’ = **ad fines Belgarum**. **de improviso**: ‘unexpectedly.’ **opinione**: abl. after the comparative **celerius**, see (369); ‘than any one expected,’ lit. ‘than all opinion.’ 2. **Remi**: they were next to the Aedui in power and were friendly to the Romans. These people were impressed by the decision of Caesar’s movements, and, not having committed themselves to the Belgian confederacy, they were free to give Caesar information of the enemy’s designs. **ex Belgis**: for the partitive gen. **Belgarum**, see (378); ‘who are the nearest of the Belgians to Gaul.’ 3. **legatos**: predicate apposition; observe that **legatus** sometimes means ‘lieutenant,’ and sometimes, as here, ‘ambassador.’ **primos**: adj. used as substant., see (258), in apposition with the proper names preceding it; ‘the foremost men.’ 4. **qui dicerent**: not ‘who said,’ but ‘who were to say’ (or simply ‘to say’), rel. clause of purpose, see (311). The rest of the chapt. is given in *indir. disc.* Notice that the *principal clauses* have the verbs in the *infin.* with a *subj. acc.*, and all *subord. or depend. clauses* take the *subjunc.*; see (301, 302, 306, 318, 392). **se in fidem permittere**: ‘that they placed themselves and all their possessions under the protection;’ **se** is here the *acc. obj.* of **permittere**, while the *subj. acc. (se)* is omitted to prevent awkward repetition; *regularly the subj. acc. is expressed in indir. disc.* 5. **neque**: ‘and that they had not united (conspired).’ **cum Belgis**: see (43). 6. **neque**: ‘nor had they conspired against.’ 7. **paratos**: pred. adj. in the *acc.* to agree with the *subj.* of **esse** (**se** understood). **et . . . et**: ‘both . . . and.’ **oppidis**: sometimes *place where* is put in the *abl.* *without a prep.*, as with **loco**

and **castris**. 8. **frumento, rebus**: see (43 b). 9. **esse**: *indir. disc.*, ‘that all the rest of the Belgians *were* under arms’ **Germanos**: *acc. subj.* of **coniunxisse**. **cis Rhenum**: i.e. the west side of the Rhine; Caesar writes from the standpoint of the Roman Province. **incolant**: ‘who dwell’—in the *dir. disc.* it is *incolunt*. 10. **his**: = **Belgis**. **tantum esse furorem**: ‘and that the madness of all these *was* so great that (*ut*).’ **eorum omnium**: i.e. **Belgarum et Germanorum**. 11. **ut . . . potuerint**: affirmative result clause, ‘that they could prevent’; see (321); observe the *perf. tense*, and note that in clauses of result, the *perf. subjunc.* is very often used after secondary (past) tenses. **ne . . . quidem**: make emphatic the word between them, ‘(could prevent) *not even the Suessiones*.’ The Suessiones occupied territory west of the Remi. 12. **qui utantur, habeant**: *subjunc.* for two reasons; subord. clause in *indir. disc.*, see (306, 392); or by *attraction*, being within the *ut* clause, see (276). **iure, legibus**: abl. with depon. verb **utantur**, see (353). **ius**: = ‘principles of justice,’ **lex**: = the enacted ‘law’; ‘who enjoyed the same rights and laws.’ 13. **cum ipsis**: i. e. the Remi; in *indir. disc.* **se** is regularly used to refer to the speaker, but the oblique cases of **ipse** may be used instead, especially for *emphasis*. 14. **quin consentirent**: ‘from uniting;’ for construction with **quin**, see (370).

CHAPTER IV.—1. **cum . . . quaereret**: ‘when Caesar inquired of these’ or ‘asked these men.’ **quae**, etc.: ‘what and how great states *were*.’ 2. **essent**: *subjunc.* of *indir. quest.*, see (313). **quid**: ‘adverbial acc.’, see (374). **reperiebat**: *imperf.* to denote repeated action. **plerisque**: *indir. disc.* to the end of the chapt., except the words **Remi dicebant** (line 10); ‘that most of the Belgians were descended from (*ab*).’ These were especially the Nervii and Treveri, who claimed descent from the Germans—a proud and heroic ancestry. 3. **que**: joins **ortos esse** and **consedisse**; **Belgas** is the subj. of both verbs. 4. **traductos**: p. p. p. mod. **Belgas**; this construction is fully explained in (316). **propter . . . fertilitatem**: limits **consedisse**. **que**: connects **consedisse** and **expulisse**, which have the same subj. **Gallos**: obj. of **expulisse**; ‘and had driven out the Gauls who inhabited.’ 5. **incolerent**: subord. clause in *indir. disc.*, see (276, 306, 392). **solos**: *acc. pred. adj.* with **esse**, limiting **Belgas**; **solos** is an adj. used as a noun, see (258). **qui . . . prohibuerint**: subord. clause in *indir. disc.*; observe the use of the *perf. tense*; see chapt. 3, note 11. **ut . . . potuerint**. In the *dir. disc.*, **solus est**, etc., takes a rel. clause with the verb in the *subjunc.*, called the ‘characteristic relative clause.’ Translate **solosque**, etc.; ‘that they (the Belgians) were the only men

who could prevent.' 6. *memoria*: abl. of time when, mod. *prohibuerint*, 'in (during) the memory—remembrance—of our fathers.' *omni*, etc.: translate by a 'when' clause. 7. *ingredi*: depen. upon *prohibuerint*, see (370); 'from entering.' *qua ex re*: 'and in consequence of this fact;' see (367). *fieri*: pass. infin. of *facio*, depen. upon *reperiebat*; 'he found out that it was coming to pass.' 8. *uti . . . sumerent*: this clause is the *subj.* of *fieri*; that *what* was coming to pass? viz., 'that they were assuming.' *memoria*: abl. of cause (compare note 6 above), mod. *sumerent*; 'in consequence of their remembrance.' 9. *in re militari*: 'in the art of war.' *de numero*: i.e. the numerical strength of the Belgian soldiery; (the rest of the chapt. depends upon *Remi dicebant*). 10. *omnia . . . explorata*: almost = *omnia se exploravisse*, 'that they had found out all *about* (*de*); agreem. of this particip. and its use with *habere* is fully explained in (375). *propterea quod*: 'on account of the fact that' = 'because,' introducing *cognoverint*, again the *perf. tense*, as in note 5 above. The perf. is very often retained in *indir. disc.*, and a statement is made more vivid by putting it in the tense that the speaker used. The speaker's word was '*cognovimus*,' 'we know' (lit. 'have found out'). 11. *coniuncti*: p. p. mod. the *subj.* of *cognoverint*, see (316); 'because, being closely connected by blood and marriage relationships.' *quantam . . . pollicitus sit*: subjunc. of *indir. quest.*, see (313); depen. upon *cognoverint*; 'how great a multitude *each one* (*quisque*) had promised.' *quisque*: i.e. each representative of the war council. 13. *plurimum valere*: follows *Remi dicebant*; 'that the Bellovaci were the most powerful.' 15. *hos posse*, etc.: 'that the latter (these) could muster.' *armata milia centum* = *armatorum hominum milia centum*; as here used, *milia* is the noun with which the adj. *armata* agrees. *pollicitos esse*: 'that they had promised.' 16. *sexaginta (milia) electa*: 'sixty thousand picked men.' *postulare*: 'were demanding.' *sibi*: refers to *Bellovacos*. 17. *suos*: refers to the *Remi*. *latissimos*: 'very wide.' 18. *possidere*: subj. is *eos* (*Suessiones*) understood. *fuisse*: 'had been,' in the direct disc. *fuisse* becomes *fuit*. 20. *totius Galliae*, etc.: 'the most influential man in entire Gaul;' *totius* is declined in (286). *qui . . . imperium obtainuerit*: 'who *had had* control of.' *cum . . . tum*: 'not only . . . but also.' *Britanniae*: This is the first notice of Britain in Latin literature. 21. *esse*: 'they said that Galba *was now* king;' the speaker's words (dir. disc.) were '*nunc est rex Galba*'—compare note *fuisse* (line 18) above. *ad hunc*: 'upon this one.' 23. *summam*: *noun*, acc. *subj.* of *deferri*; 'that the manage-

ment (conduct) of . . . was being conferred.' **voluntate**: abl. of manner, see (210). **habere**: subj. is **Suessiones** **polliceri**: 'that they were promising.' 24. **milia**: see note, line 15. **Nervios**: acc. subj. of **polliceri**. **maxime feri**: *adv.* and *adj.* = the superl. degree of the adj., 'very fierce.' 26. **habeantur**: 'are considered;' observe the use of the *pres.* *subjunc.* where the *imperf.* would have been more regular; see note, lines 5 and 10, above. 27. **Atrebates**: for this and the following proper names (of tribes), ending with **Aduatucos**, supply **polliceri**. 30. **Condruſos**, etc.: acc. subjects of **polliceri** or **confidere** **posse** understood, the infin. clause depending upon (**se**) **arbitrari**; 'the Remi said *they* (**se**) believed that the Condruſi, etc., could muster.' **qui . . . appellantur**: the indic. indicates that this is an explanatory note made by Caesar and not included in the address of the Remi; not so with **qui . . . habeantur, absint**, line 25, which is treated as a subord. clause in *indir.* disc.

CHAPTER V.—1. **cohortatus, prosecutus**: 'having encouraged the Remi and having addressed them kindly;' both particips. mod. *Caesar*. 2. **senatum**: a Roman term used to describe a Gallic institution. **liberos**: acc. subj. of **adduci**, depend. upon **iussit**; 'he ordered the children of . . . to be brought to him'; see **iubeo** (155). 3. **obsides**: pred. apposition, 'as hostages.' The boys would probably be sold into captivity, if these chiefs were to break their faith. **Quae**: for use and meaning of the rel. pron. at the beginning of a sentence, see (367); 'now all these things'; see also (258). 4. **ad diem**: 'to the day'; as we say, 'to the minute'—promptly. **ipse**: intensive force; 'Caesar in person.' 5. **cohortatus**: p. p. depon. mod. **ipse**, but best rendered by a *co-ordinate verb*; 'encourages Divitiacus very earnestly and explains *how greatly it concerns*' **reipublicae, salutis**: gen. depen. upon **intersit**; the impersonal verbs **interest** and **refert** ('it interests,' 'it concerns'); take the gen. of the *person*, rarely of the *thing*, affected; 'the republic and their common safety.' This Divitiacus was one of the leading men among the Aedui who were now in alliance with the Romans. 6. **intersit**: *indir.* *quest.*, see (313). **manus**: acc. subj. of **distinieri**; this infin. clause is the subj. of **intersit**, 'that the bands (forces) of the enemy be kept apart.' **ne . . . configendum sit**: neg. purpose, see (211, 320); **configendum sit**, *pres.* *subjunc.* pass. periphrastic, used impersonally; lit., 'that it may not have to be fought (by them),' better, 'lest they should have to fight'; see (361, 362, 363). 8. **id fieri posse**: depen. upon **docet**; 'he explains that this (**id**) can be

done.' **sueas copias**: notice the emphatic position. 9. **introduixerint, coeperint**: more viv. fut. condit. turned into indir. disc.; both verbs were *fut. perf. indic.* in the dir. disc.; see (223, 396). **eorum = Bellovacorum**. The Bellovaci were already disaffected in that they had not secured the leadership of the league and the ravaging of their lands would probably lead them from their homes. 10. **post quam**: with *vidit* and *cognovit*; see (358). 11. **coactas**: p. p. p. mod. **copias**, but best turned into a finite verb; see (381). **neque = et . . . non**: 'and when he found out from . . . that they (*eas copias*) were *not* far distant now (by this time).' 15. **quae res**: see (367); 'now this position.' Caesar's camp was protected in the rear by the Axona, and in front by a small marshy stream. Traces of Caesar's works at this place were discovered in 1862, on a hill called **Mau-champ**, about eighty feet above the river, with gentle slopes, well suited for a camp. **latus**: noun, acc. obj. of **muniebat**. 16. **muniebat, reddebat**: for the force of the *imperf.*, see (102); 'both kept one side of . . . fortified and rendered secure (*tuta*) from the enemy (those places) which were behind him.' **essent**: subjunc. in a characteristic rel. clause. **tuta**: acc. plur. neut. mod. **ea loca** (understood), the anteced. of *quae*. 18. **efficiebat**: subj. is **quae res**; the order is **et efficiebat ut commeatus possent portari**; literally, 'and caused (it) so that supplies could be brought'; better, 'and made it possible for supplies to be brought.' 19. **in altera parte**: 'on the other side.' 21. **pedum duodecim**: gen. of measure or quality with **vallo**. 22. **duodeviginti pedum**: 'eighteen feet in width'—the depth being about ten feet. **munire**: subj. is *eum*, (**Sabinum**).

CHAPTER VI.—1. **ab his castris**: adverbial phrase mod. **aberat**; 'from this camp.' **Bibrax**: in apposition with **oppidum**. 2. **milia**: acc. of extent in space, see (342). **id**: with **oppidum** understood, obj. of **oppugnare**. **ex itinere**: 'on the march'—that is, turning aside from their course without making any formal disposition of their troops. **impetu**: see (210). 3. **sustentatum est**: 'impersonal verb,' see (365); 'it was with difficulty that they held out.' 4. **eadem atque**: 'the same as,' with **oppugnatio**; 'the mode of attack (*oppugnatio*) of the Gauls (which is) the same as (that) of the Belgians is *as follows* (*haec*).'**ubi**: with **coepti sunt** and **nudatus est**; see (358). 5. **circumiecta multitudine**: abl. absol. mod. **coepti sunt iaci**. **moenibus**: dat. indir. obj. of **circumiecta**, 'a multitude of men being thrown round all the walls.' 6. **iaci**: pres. infin. pass. (complementary infin.) with **coepti sunt**, which is always *pass.* when accom-

panied by a *pass. infin.*; 'when (ubi) stones began to be thrown.' **que**: connects *coepti sunt* and *nudatus est*. **defensoribus**: abl. of separation, mod. *nudatus est*; 'was stripped of defenders.' 7. **testudine**: 'having formed a testudo,' by lapping their shields above their heads as was their custom in storming a town. 8. **quod**: rel. pron. at the beginning of the paragraph, see (367); 'now this was easily done *in the present instance* (tum).' **cum . . . conicerent**: historical **cum**, see (128, 203, 359); **conicerent** is plur. from the individuals composing the *subj.* **multitudo**. 10. **nulli**: 'dat. of possession,' see (357); 'no one had the power to stand (could stand) upon the wall;' what literally? 11. **summa nobilitate et gratia**: 'abl. of quality or description,' see (376); supply **vir**, '(a man) of the highest nobility and influence.' **inter suos**: 'among his (own people),' see (258). **oppido**: dat., see (337); 'who was then in command of the town.' 12. **unus**: adj. used as a noun, in apposition with **Iccius**; 'one of those who had come as ambassadors'; see (378), 'partitive gen., exceptions.' 13. **mittit**: a verb of *saying* to be supplied, 'sends a message to him (saying)'; hence the principal verbal phrase **posse non sustinere** is *infin.*, and the subord. verb **submittatur** is *suljunc.* Notice that the princ. verb of *saying* is *pres. tense*, as is seen in **mittit**: this requires that the depen. subjunc. verb shall be in either the *pres.* or *perf.* subjunc., the *pres.* to denote *unfinished*; the *perf.*, *finished* time. This is a more viv. fut. condit. in *indir. disc.*: is the verb in the protasis (of the dir. disc.) *fut. indic. submittetur* or *fut. perf. submissum erit?* see (223, 396). **se non posse = ego non possum**, in the *direct disc.*

CHAPTER VII.—1. 'thither,' i.e. to Bibrax. **isdem = eisdem** · abl. obj. of *usus* (from **utor**); see (353); 'employing as guides the same persons who had come as messengers.' 2. **Numidas, Cretas**: 'Numidian and Cretan bowmen.' 3. **Baleares**: 'and Balearic slingers.' The Numidians and especially the people of Crete were famous archers, and, together with the celebrated slingers from the Balearic Islands, they were valuable auxiliaries of the Romans, serving as light-armed troops. **subsidio, oppidanis**: doub. dat., see (352). **quorum adventu**: 'and because of (upon) their arrival.' 4. **Remis**: dat. indir. obj. of *accessit* (*subj. studium*); 'there both came (was added) to the Remi along with the hope of (making a successful) defence, a desire for making sallies (against the enemy).' 5. **et hostibus discessit**: **hostibus** is dat. with **discessit** (as a verb of *taking away*) instead of the abl. of separation; 'and from the enemy there

was taken away . . . the hope of.' *potiundi* = *potiendi*: see (253) 6. *itaque*: 'and so.' *apud*: 'near.' *morati, depopulati*: mod. the subj. of *contenderunt*; observe that these are particips. of depon. verbs; 'having delayed—having ravaged.' 7. *omnibus vicis . . . incensis*: 'having burnt all the villages,' etc.: why translate *incensis*, a *pass.* particip. (not a *depon.*) with an act. meaning? see (372). *quos*: has two antecedents, *vicis* and *aedificiis*, which are of different genders; in such instances the relative takes the gender sometimes of the *strongest* or *most important* word, sometimes that of the *nearest*. Here the rel. has the gender of *vicis*. 8. *potuerant*: pluperf., 'had been able.' 9. *ab . . . duobus*: 'less than two miles away (off);' *ab* is used adverbially, 'off,' i.e. distant from Caesar's camp; *milibus* is the abl. of degree of difference, 'by two thousands,' being used independently of *minus*, '(and) less,' which does not affect the construction. 10. *quae castra*: see (367), 'and this camp.' *ut significabatur*: 'as was indicated,' a clause used parenthetically. 11. *amplius milibus*: *amplius* is the accus. of extent in space, see (342); *milibus* is abl. after the comparative *amplius*, see (369). For the other construction allowable with these neuter accusatives see note 9 above.

CHAPTER VIII.—2. *eximiam . . . virtutis*: 'remarkable reputation for valor;' *virtutis* = objective genitive, that is, a gen. which denotes the object of an action or feeling: as, *matris amor pueri*, 'a mother's love for her boy'; boy (*pueri*) is here the object of the feeling of love implied in the noun *amor*. *proelio*: abl. of separation; 'to refrain from an engagement.' 3. *equestribus proeliis*: 'in cavalry skirmishes.' *quid posset, quid auderent*: subjunctives of indir. quest., see (313); *quid* = adverbial acc., see (374); 'what prowess the enemy had,' literally, 'what the enemy could (do) from the standpoint of courage.' 4. *periclitabatur*: *imperf.* 'kept trying to ascertain by experiment.' 5. *inferiores*: acc. pred. with *esse*, 'that our men were not inferior' (in courage); i.e. were not losing heart. *loco . . . idoneo*: abl. absol. composed of *noun + adj.*; see (364), example 2; this abl. absol. shows cause and mod. *obduxit* (line 12). 6. *natura*: 'by nature.' *quod is collis*: taken with *patebat, habebat, redibat*, these clauses explaining *loco idoneo* and also, indirectly, modifying *obduxit*. *ubi*: 'where.' 8. *editus*, etc.: mod. *collis*; 'elevated a very little from (above) the level ground.' *tantum*: acc. of extent in space, mod. *patebat*; *loci* in the next line (a *partitive gen.*) is to be translated with *tantum*; 'extended in width (over) as much ground (*loci*).'  
*adversus*:

mod. **collis**, 'right in front.' **quantum**: obj. of **occupare**, 'as an army arranged in battle order could cover.' 9. **instructa**: p. p. mod. **acies**. **ex utraque parte**: 'on each side.' 10. **lateris deiectus**: **deiectus** is a noun, acc. plur.; 'it had a steep slope' (lit. 'slopes of the side'). 10. **fastigatus**: mod. **collis**, 'falling with an easy slope in front sank gently to the plain.' 11. **ab utroque latere**: 'on each side.' 12. **transversam**: '(a ditch) at right angles.' **passuum**: gen. of measure, 'about 400 feet (long).' 13. **ad extremas**: 'at the ends of the ditches.' 14. **tormenta**: 'engines of war.' **ne . . . possent**: neg. purpose, see (211, 320); 'so that the enemy could *not* surround.' **cum**: 'after.' 15. **quod . . . poterant**: parenthetical clause and hence not **subjunc.**, 'because they were so (thus) strong in numbers'—**tantum** is the adverbial accus.; see note 3 above. **ab lateribus**: 'on their flanks.' **pugnantes**: pres. particip. mod. **suos** (referring to *Caesar*); 'his men while they were fighting.' 17. **ut . . . possent**: affirm. purpose; 'so that they could *be led out* (*duci*).'**quo**: adv., 'if they should be needed anywhere.' 18. **subsidio** = dat. of purpose or service. 20. **eductas**: p. p. mod. the obj. of the verb; see (381); '*had led out and drawn up*'.

CHAPTER IX.—1. **non magna**: = **parva**, 'there was a small marsh.' **nostrum**: mod. **exercitum**. 2. **si transirent**: indir. quest., see (313); 'the enemy kept waiting to see whether our men would cross.' 3. **autem**: 'on the other hand.' **si . . . fieret**: a part of the **ut** clause, hence **subjunc.** by attraction, see (276); 'if a beginning of . . . should be made.' **ut . . . aggredierentur**: affirmative purpose with **parati erant**; 'our men were ready under arms to *attack*.' **impeditos**: mod. (**hostes**), 'as they struggled in the river.' 5. **contendebatur**: impersonal, see (365); 'the two armies engaged.' 6. **neutri**: nom. plur. subj. of **faciunt**. **secundiore**: adj. with **proelio**, forming an abl. absol.; see (364); 'as the battle of cavalry was rather favorable to our men.' **nostris**: dat. with adj. (**secundiore**); see (126). 9. **quod**: rel. pron. nom. subj. of **demonstratum est**; 'which has been shown to be in the rear of.' 10. **conati sunt**: depon., 'they attempted to lead a part across.' 11. **eo consilio**: 'with this design.' **ut**: with **expugnarent**, **interscinderent**, **popularentur**, and **prohiberent**, explaining **eo consilio**; viz., 'to storm, if they could,' etc. **possent**: **subjunc.** by attraction; **sequence?** **cui**: dat. with comp. verb (**praerat**); see (337) 13. **si potuissent**: **subjunc.** by attraction, being within the **ut popularentur** clause; 'if (having made the attempt) they should have been unable'; in these two **si** clauses, **possent** = **fut.** indic., **potuissent** = **fut. perf.**

indic. of a more viv. fut. condition, see (223); thus 'we will storm, if we are (*shall be*) able,' and 'we will ravage, if we are not (shall not have been) able (to storm)': for *mood* of condition in indir. disc., see (396). 14. **nobis usui**: doub. dat., see (352); 'who were very useful (for a great use) to us.' **commeatu**: abl. of separation, 'from supplies.'

CHAPTER X.—1. **certior factus**: see (338), '(on) being informed by Titurius.' The lieutenant was about a mile nearer the fords where the Belgians were crossing than Caesar was. 2. **levis armaturae**: gen. depen. upon **Numidas**, 'Numidians of light equipment': these light-armed troops were swift runners and could arrive at the ford more quickly than the rest, where they were to stop the passage of the Belgians. 4. **pugnatum est**: impers. verb, see (365), 'a fierce engagement occurred.' **hostes**: acc. obj. of **aggressi**. **impeditos**: p. p. p. mod. **hostes**; 'having attacked the enemy who were hindered in the river.' 5. **aggressi**: limits **nostri**. **reliquos**: adj. used as noun, acc. obj. of **reppulerunt**, and modified by **conantes**, the pres. particip. of **conor**; 'our men drove back . . . the rest of the enemy as they were trying very boldly to cross over' (per). 6. **multitudine**: abl. of means mod. **reppulerunt**. 7. **primos**: adj. as noun, dir. obj. of **interfecerunt**. 8. **circumventos**: p. p. p. mod. **primos**; see (381). **hostes**: stands at the head of the sent. and belongs to the principal clause in Latin, but is incorporated in the **ubi** clause when translated: 'when the enemy perceived that hope had failed them.' **et de expugnando**: 'both with respect to storming.' 10. **neque progredi vide-runt**: 'and when they say that our men were not advancing.' 11. **atque**: still using **ubi**, 'and when corn supplies began.' **ipso**s: i.e. the enemy. On account of a lack of provisions the enemy could not carry on a long campaign with such a large army as Caesar's. 12. **optimum**: acc. neut. pred. adj. with **esse**, whose subj. is the **domum** . . . **reverti** clause: 'decided that it was best for each one (**quemque**) to return to his own home.' 13. **domum**; see (386). **et convenirent**: after **constituerunt**, 'and (they decided) to assemble.' **constituo** is followed sometimes by the acc. + *infin.*, sometimes by **ut + subjunc.**; rarely, as *here*, by both in the *same sentence*. **quorum**: anteced. **eos**; order, **ad defendendos eos quorum in fines Romani introduxissent**, 'with a view toward defending those into whose borders the Romans should lead (should have led).' 14. **introduxissent**: subjunc. as being a part of the **ut convenirent** clause following a *past* verb, **constituerunt**; it stands for the fut. perf. indic. of the *direct*; see (223, 396). **ad . . . defendendos**: gerundive of purpose, see (253, 355). 15. **ut decertarent**,

**uterentur:** affirm purpose depen. upon **convenirent,** '(to assemble, etc.) so that they might contend and use.' **potius quam:** 'rather than.' 16. **alienis = aliorum,** 'of others,' as opposed to **domesticis,** that is, *their own*. **copiis:** 'supplies.' **rei frumentariae:** 'of grain.' 17. **ad eam sententiam:** 'to this determination.' 18. **ratio:** order, **haec ratio quoque cum reliquis causis deduxit;** 'this consideration too, together with other reasons, brought them.' **quod:** 'namely, the fact that.' 19. **cognoverant:** 'they knew.' **appropinquare:** has two subjects, 'were drawing near to.' **finibus:** dat. after comp. verb (**ad + propinquuo**), see (337). 20. **his persuaderi:** this idiom is fully explained in (380). **ut morarentur neque ferrent:** 'to delay *and not to offer.*' **suis:** indir. obj.; adj. used as noun, 'to their friends.'

CHAPTER XI.—1. **ea re:** 'after this matter had been agreed upon,' that is, for each one to return to his home. **strepitu, tumultu:** abl. of manner, mod. **egressi:** see (210). 2. **egressi:** mod. subj. contained in **fecerunt;** see (340). **nullo . . . imperio:** abl. of manner, as though explaining or adding to **magnō . . . tumultu;** '(that is) without orderly array and without an officer in command.' 3. **cum peteret, properaret:** 'causal **cum**', see (350); this clause in turn explains **nullo . . . imperio:** 'since each soldier was seeking for himself . . . and was hastening.' **domum:** see (386). 4. **ut . . . videretur:** affirmative *result* clause, object of **fecerunt;** 'they made their departure seem,' lit. 'they caused it so that their departure seemed.' **fugae:** dat. with (adj.) **consimilis,** see (126). 5. **videretur:** in the *pres.* syst. pass. used as a depon. 'to seem.' **hac . . . cognita:** abl. absol. mod. **continuit,** of which 'Caesar' is the subj.; **re** = the departure of the enemy. **per speculatores:** 'by means of spies'; difference betw. **ab** and **per?** **ab + abl.** = direct (voluntary) agency; **per + acc.** = indirect agency, the agent being considered the instrument or means. **speculatores** = spies who mingled in disguise with the enemy to obtain information; **exploratores** = scouts or squads of regular cavalry detailed to range the country in the vicinity of the enemy. 6. **veritus:** 'fearing.' **quod . . . perspexerat:** causal clause mod. **continuit,** see (276). **discederent:** 'indir. quest.,' see (313); sequence from **perspexerat;** the *imperf.* tense shows that the *action* of the verb (**discederent**) *is going on* at the time of the action of the verb upon which it depends, 'he had not yet found out (did not know) for what reason the enemy *were departing.*' 8. **prima luce:** 'at early dawn.' **re** = the fact of the enemies' departure. 9. **qui . . . moraretur:** rel. clause of purpose, 'to delay the rear' (of the Belgians); sequence from **praemisit;** the *imperf.* tense

denotes that the *action* of the verb (*moraretur*) is to take place at some time in the *future*, *subsequent to the time* of the action in *prae-misit*; hence this *imperf. subjunc.* = *time fut. (subsequent)*; the *imperf. subjunc.* (*discederent*, just above) denotes time *pres. (contemporaneous)*. 10. *his . . . praefecit*: ‘over these he placed in command;’ see (337). 12. *hi*: ‘the latter,’ i. e. Labienus and his men. *novissimos*: supply *hostes*, ‘the rear.’ *aborti*, *prosecuti*: mod. *hi*. 13. *eorum fugientium*: ‘of them as they fled;’ *fugientium* = *pres. particip. gen. plur. mod. eorum*. 14. *cum*: causal, see (350); introduces *consistent*, *sustinerent*, and *ponerent*; ‘since those in the rear (ab, etc.) whom the Romans had overtaken were making a stand.’ 15. *ventum erat* = *impers.*, see (365); lit., ‘(to whom) it had been come.’ 16. *priores*: adj. used as noun (*prior*, *-ior*, *-ius*), subj. of *ponerent*, see (258); ‘and since those in front,’ that is, those at the head of the retreating column. 17. *quod viderentur, continerentur*: *subjunc.* by attraction, as being part of the *cum ponerent* clause; ‘because they seemed to be out of danger and were not restrained.’ 18. *omnes*: mod. *priores*. 19. *tantam . . . spatium*: ‘as great a number as the length of the day permitted.’ 21. *sub occasum*: ‘about the setting.’ 22. *ut*: parenthetical, ‘as they were commanded.’

CHAPTER XII.—1. *postridie eius diei*: ‘on the next day,’ lit., ‘on the after day of that day.’ *prius quam*: takes the *subjunc.* when the action is expected, intended or in suspense; ‘before the enemy could recover (themselves).’ Caesar now proceeded to subdue the enemy tribe by tribe, since his plans for separating them had been successful. 3. *magno*: ‘by making a forced march.’ 4. *Noviodunum*: about 20 miles west of Bibrax. *id (oppidum)*: obj. of *oppugnare*. *ex itinere*: as we say, ‘on the fly,’ without stopping to invest or besiege. 5. *quod*: acc. subj. of *esse*, ‘which he kept hearing was.’ 6. *paucis defendantibus*: abl. absol., denoting concession, see (364), example 3; ‘although few were defending it.’ 7. *vineas*: ‘to bring up the *vineae*.’ Movable sheds (*vineae*), with roofs and sides of wickerwork or planks covered with skins, were placed end to end, forming galleries through which the men passed back and forth when they were besieging a strongly fortified town. 8. *quae*: anteced. is *ea*, the dir. obj. of *comparare*, ‘and to prepare those things which were useful.’ *usui*: dat. of purpose, end, or service. 9. *ex fuga*: ‘in their flight.’ 10. *veneis . . . actis*: ‘when the *vineae* were brought up.’ 11. *iacto*: p. p. p. (from *iacio*), forming an abl. absol. with *aggere* (from *agger*). *magnitudine*: abl. of

cause, mod. **permoti**; ‘being greatly alarmed on account of the extent of the works,’ i.e. by the extent of these offensive operations. 12. **quae**: refers to **operum**, hence neut. plur.; it is dir. obj. of **viderant** and **audierant**, ‘which (such as) the Gauls had neither seen nor heard of.’ 13. **celeritate**: abl. of cause with **permoti**. 14. **petentibus Remis**: abl. absol., see (364), ‘at the request of the Remi.’ **ut conservarentur**: affirm. result clause, obj. of **impetrant**, ‘they obtain the request that they should be spared.’

CHAPTER XIII.—1. **obsidibus**: apposition with **primis** and **filiis**, which are the principal words—the basis—of the abl. absol. with **acceptis**, ‘after he had received as hostages the chief men of the state and the two sons.’ 2. **ipsius**: adds emphasis to **Galbae**. 4. **in Bellovacos**: ‘against the Bellovaci;’ their territory lay west of the Suessiones. **qui**: the rel. pron. at the beginning of a paragraph, see (367); **qui** is translated after **cum**, ‘now when these.’ 5. **contulissent**: ‘had betaken themselves with all their possessions;’ **omnia** modifies **sua**, which is used as a *noun*; see (258). **atque**: joins **contulissent** and **abesset**, both following **cum**; ‘and while Caesar was distant.’ 7. **maiores**: comparative of **magnus**, used as a noun, subj. of **coeperunt**, etc; ‘all the older men,’ lit., ‘all the greater by birth.’ **egressi**: mod. **maiores**. 8. **voce significare**: ‘to declare,’ what literally? They uttered cries of supplication in a tongue different from Latin. **sese . . . contendere**: indir. disc., **venire** and **contendere** being used in a *fut.* sense: ‘that they would place themselves under his protection . . . and would not contend;’ **sese** refers to the speakers (*reflexive*), **eius** to Caesar—the person addressed. 10. **cum accessisset, poneret**: ‘after he had approached (time *antecedent*) and while he was pitching (time *contemporaneous*) his camp.’ 11. **pueri**: ‘the children.’ **ex muro**: ‘(standing) on.’ **passis manibus**: ‘with outstretched hands,’ abl. of manner. 12. **ab Romanis**: ‘of the Romans.’

CHAPTER XIV.—1. **pro his**: ‘in behalf of these’; i.e. the Bellovaci. **discessum**: noun, ‘after the departure.’ 2. **dimissis**: ‘when the forces of the Aedui had been dismissed.’ **reverterat**: notice the tense, ‘he *had* come back.’ **facit verba** = **dicit**. The rest of the chapter is in *indir. disc.*; for the ‘Oratio Recta’ form of this chapter, see (407). 3. **Bellovacos**: ‘he said that the Bellovaci had been.’ **omni tempore**: ‘always.’ 4. **impulsos**: p. p. p. mod. (*eos*) the subj. of **defecisse** and **intulisse**; notice the emphatic position of **impulsos**, ‘he said that they (the Bellovaci), urged on (being urged

on) by their chiefs . . . had both revolted and brought war.' **qui dicerent**: 'who kept saying;' subord. clause in indir. disc., hence **subjunc.**, see (306). Following **dicerent** (a verb of 'saying') there is an infin. proposition, **Aeduos . . . perferre**; this makes indir. disc. *within* indir. disc. 5. **redactos**: p. p. p. mod. **Aeduos**, lit. 'having been (being) reduced,' but best rendered by a *finite verb*, see (381) 'who kept saying that the Aedui *had been reduced . . . and were suffering*' (*perferre*). 6. **et . . . et**: see note 4 above, 'both . . . and.' **defecisse, intulisse**: princ. verbs (infin.) in the indir. disc.; for the *time relation of tense*, see (305). **populo**: dat. with comp. verb, *intulisse*, see (337). 7. **qui**: anteced. is (**eos**), acc. subj. of **profugisse**; see O. R. (407); follows **facit verba**: 'he said that those, who had been (were) the leaders in (of) this scheme.' 8. **fuissent**: subord. clause in O. O., see (306); what tense in O. R.? see (467). It is *pluperf.* in the indir. disc. (for *past time*) since it follows **facit verba** (*historical pres.*) which is regarded as a *past tense* rather by its *meaning* than its form. **quod . . . intellegerent**: subord. in O. O., 'because they knew'; what in the direct? 9. **civitati**: dat. with comp. verb, *intulissent*: indir. quest. remains **subjunc.** in O. R., see (407); its sequence is from **intellegerent** and it denotes action *completed*; 'because they realized how great a disaster they *had* brought upon.' **profugisse**: see note 7, first part. **petere**: princ. verb in O. O.; notice that it denotes action *going on at the time of the action of facit verba* and that **facit verba** is treated, in the rest of the chapt., as a *pres.* tense, by its *form* rather than its meaning: 'he says that not only the Bellovacii *are pleading*.' 10. **Aeduos**: also subj. of **petere**. **ut . . . utatur**: depends upon **petere**, 'that he should exercise'—freely with **petere**, 'are begging him to exercise': direct, 'the Bellovacii beg *you to exercise*', see (407). 11. **in eos**: 'toward them'; **se** would have appeared here, but for the interposition of **Aeduos**. **Quod si fecerit**: 'and (he says) that if he (Caesar) does this'; **fecerit = perf.** **subjunc.**, sequence from **facit verba** (*dicit*). 12. **amplificaturum esse**: subj. is (**eum**), 'that he will increase': for this condit. in O. R., see (223, 407); for change of mood and tense, in G. R., see (396). 13. **auxiliis, etc.**: 'by whose aid and assistance,' abl. of *means*, mod. **sustentare**. **si qua, etc.**: 'if any wars (whatever wars) arose.' **consuerint**: perf. **subjunc.**, 'they were (had become) accustomed to hold out.' See (407), for construction in O. R.

CHAPTER XV.—1. **honoris**: gen. depen. upon **causa**, see (7), 'for the sake of his regard.' **Divitiaci, Aeduorum**: objective genitives,

depen. upon **honoris**, 'for Divitiacus and the Aedui'; see chapter 8, note 2, 'virtutis.' 2. **sese receptum esse**: depen. upon **dixit**; see (318), 3 and 4. 3. **magna auctoritate**: 'abl. of quality,' see (376), 'because the state was (one) of great influence.' 5. **his... collatis** (from **confero**): two abls. absol. of time, mod. **pervenit**; translate by an 'after' clause, 'after these were handed over,' etc. 6. **Ambianorum**: north of the Bellovaci; Caesar's route lay to the north, probably by way of Amiens. 7. **finis**: obj. of **attingebant**; observe the emphatic position of **finis eorum**. **Nervii**: considered the most savage of all the Belgae, occupying the basin of the Sambre river. 8. **quorum de natura**: adv. phrase mod. **quaereret**, 'when Caesar inquired about their nature and customs.' 9. **nullum aditum**: acc. of thing possessed. **mercatoribus**: dat. of possessor. **esse** = 'have', see (357); indir. disc. to the end of the chapter; 'he found out that merchants *have* no access to them,' lit. 'that no access to them is to merchants'; direct, '**nullus aditus (nom.) ad eos est mercatoribus**' 10. **pati**: pres. infin. of **patior**, prin. verb (infin.) depen. upon **reperiebat**; the subj. of **pati** is (**eos**); 'that they allowed (were allowing) no wine to be imported (**inferri**).'**vini**: partitive gen., see (378). 11. **pertinentium**: pres. particip. gen. plur. mod. **rerum**. **inferri**: complementary infin. depen. upon **pati**. **quod... existimarent**: subjunc. because a subord. clause in indir. disc.; though modifying **pati** (a *pres.* tense), it derives its sequence from **reperiebat**, *the main verb of saying*. **rebus**: abl. of means, mod. *the two following infins.* which depend upon **existimarent**, 'because they believe that by these things.' **animos**: 'spirit,' as a quality of character. 12. **virtutem**: 'valor,' as a manifestation of courage in deeds; 'their spirit is (would be) weakened and their valor given up.' **esse**: follows **reperiebat**, 'he found out that the men were fierce.' 13. **que** connects **feros** (adj.) and **virtutis** (*gen. of quality*), the latter being used in the *sense* of an *adj.*; 'fierce and of great courage.' **increpitare**, **incusare**: princ. verbs in indir. disc., subj. (**eos**); 'he found out that they kept chiding and blaming.' 14. **qui**, etc.: would have a subjunc. verb in the direct disc. also, since it is a rel. causal clause; **qui** = **cum ei**, see (350, 368); 'since they had surrendered.' 15. **confirmare**: depen. upon **reperiebat**, and has as its subj. (**se**); 'that they declare.' **se missuros esse**: infin. in indir. disc. with **confirmare**, 'that they will neither send ambassadors nor accept.'

CHAPTER XVI.—1. **eorum**: i.e. of the Nervii. **triduum**: acc. of extent in time, 'for three days'; see (342). **inveniebat**: 'he con-

tinued to find out (further).’ 2. **non amplius**: adv. ‘not more (than)’ 3. **milia**: acc. of extent of space, mod. **abesse**; see (342). 4. **consedisse, exspectare**: note the difference in time, with reference to the time of *inveniebat*; ‘that all the Nervii had encamped and were awaiting.’ 4. **una cum**: ‘along with.’ 6. **utrisque**: from **uterque**, dat. plur. mod. **his**: for declension of **uter**, see (286); for the case of **his**, see (345); ‘for they had persuaded each of these (tribes).’ 7. **uti (ut) . . . experientur**: clause of purpose depen. upon **persuaserant** (see preced. note and reference), ‘to try.’ 7. **exspectari**: infin. in indir. disc. depen. upon **reperiebat**; ‘that the forces of the Aduatuci were also *being waited for*.’ 8. **esse**: ‘were.’ 9. **in itinere**: ‘on the march.’ **mulieres**: acc. dir. obj. of **coniecisse**, whose subj. is (**Nervios**), the infin. clause depen. upon **reperiebat**; ‘that (the Nervii) had hurriedly placed the women.’ **qui**: anteced. is (**eos**), which is to be supplied as a second dir. obj. of **coniecisse**, ‘and those (men) who.’ **per aetatem**: ‘by reason of old age.’ 9. **viderentur**: as depon., ‘seemed.’ **quo**: rel. adv. = **ad quem**, ‘to which,’ ‘where.’ 10. **exercitui, aditus**: dat. of possessor, and nom. of thing possessed, see (357); ‘the army could not (did not) have access.’ **esset**: introduced by **quo**, a rel. clause of *characteristic*, which takes the *suljunc.*, even in the direct disc.

CHAPTER XVII.—2. **qui . . . deligant**: see (311); in what *four* ways may affirmative purpose be expressed? see (355). **ex dediticiis**: with **complures**, in place of the partitive gen., see (378), ‘exceptions’; ‘while several of the surrendered Belgians’: i.e. the Ambiani, Suessiones, and Bellovacii. 4. **secuti**: depon. particip. mod. **complures**, rendered by a finite verb, see (381), ‘were following Caesar and were marching along (with him).’ **quidam ex his**: ‘certain of these’—see note 2 above. **ut . . . cognitum est**: **ut** + indic. = ‘as’; parenthetical and verb impersonal, see (365); ‘as he afterwards found out’—what literally? 5. **consuetudine perspecta**: abl. absol. mod. **parvenerunt**; notice the accumulation of genitives; **dierum** and **exercitus limit itineris**, which in turn depends upon **consuetudine**, ‘after observing the army’s usual marching order during those days.’ 7. **atque his**: ‘and announced to the latter (the Nervii).’ **inter singulas legiones**: indir. disc. through **audenter** (line 12) depen. upon **demonstra(ve)runt**; ‘that between every two legions.’ 8. **intercedere**: depen. upon **demonstrarunt**, subj. **numerum**, ‘a great number of baggage (animals) passed (as a usual thing).’ **neque**: continues indir. disc., ‘and that it was not any trouble.’ 9. **negoti**: partitive

gen. depen. upon *quicquam* (for *quidquam*) acc. neut. in the predicate with *esse*. *venisset*: 'after the first legion had come.' 10. *abessent*: 'and while the rest of . . . were quite a good distance off.' 11. *adoriri*: *infin.* used as *subj.* of *esse*; *what* was no trouble? 'to attack this legion.' *qua pulsa* (from *pello*): abl. *absol.* rendered by a conditional, 'and that, if this should be routed;' see (364). 12. *futurum (esse)*: with *demonstrarunt*, 'that it would be,' or 'the result would be.' *ut non auderent*: neg. result clause, 'that the rest of the legions would not dare;' see (321). *futurum esse ut + subjunc.* = periphrasis or substitution for the *fut. infin.*; see (382). 13. *adiuvabant*: used impersonally, with the *quod . . . effecerant* clause as its *subj.*; 'the fact that (*quod*) the Nervii . . . helped the plan of those who reported the matter.' 14. *Nervii*: *subj.* of *effecerant*; 'the fact that the Nervii had caused these hedges to furnish,' lit. 'had made it so that (*ut*) these hedges furnished (*praeberent*).'*cum . . . possent*: 'since they could do nothing with cavalry.' 15. *neque enim*: 'and in fact . . . not.' *ei rei* · dat. obj. of *student*, 'do they care for this kind of service,' i.e. use of cavalry. *quic(d)quid*: adverbial accus., see (374); *quicquid . . . copiis*, freely translated, 'all the strength they possess lies in infantry.' 16. *quo* = *ut eo* (accompanied by the comparative *facilius*) introducing *impedirent*: translated and explained in (384). 17. *si . . . venissent*: for the *fut. perf. indic.* in the *direct*, see (223, 396); 'if they should come against them.' 18. *crebrisque . . . interiectis*: 'and, when their numerous branches had grown out *on the sides* (in *latitudinem*) and when brambles and thornbushes had been *thrown into* (*interiectis*) the spaces between the trees.' The trees were notched and bent when young and the branches were trained to grow out on the sides. In the spaces left between the trees and not covered up were placed brambles and bushes which made an impregnable hedge. 21. *quo . . . posset*: rel. clause of result, *quo* = rel. adv.; see (387). *ne . . . quidem*: give emphasis to the word between them, 'but not even *be seen*.' 22. *cum* : *causal*, see (350); 'since the march (advance) of our line would be checked.' 23. *omittendum sibi*: see (361, 362, 363).

CHAPTER XVIII.—2. *delegant*: note the force of the pluperf. *collis*: the hill upon which the Roman camp was laid out. *ab summo*: 'from the top,' mod. *declivis*. *declivis*: 'sloping down uniformly.' 3. *vergebat*: 'inclined.' 4. *pari acclivitate*: 'of equal steepness,' with *collis*. *pari* = adj. of third declens. (one ending), from *par* *nascebatur*, etc.: 'rose up facing this and on the other side (of the

stream).’ 5. **ducentos passus**: acc. extent of space, mod. **apertus**; see (342). **infimus, apertus**: mod. **collis**, ‘open (bare of trees) for about 200 feet at the foot (**infimus**)’: the hill was bare of trees for 200 feet up the slope from the bank of the river. **ab superiore parte**: abl. with **ab**, giving the point of view from which; ‘along the upper part.’ 6. **silvestris**: mod. **collis**, ‘covered with trees.’ **ut non . . . posset**: neg. result clause, see (321); recast in the *act.*, ‘so that one could not easily see within.’ 7. **continebant**: imperf. of continued action, see (102). 8. **secundum**: prep. + acc. 9. **videbantur**: ‘there appeared a few squads.’ **pedum**: gen. of measure used in the predicate.

CHAPTER XIX.—1. **praemisso**: ‘after sending forward.’ 2. **copiis**: abl. of attendance or accompaniment; this abl. often omits **cum** in military phrases. **ratio quoque**: since the two phrases convey a single idea, the verb is singular. **aliter ac**: ‘otherwise than;’ **atque, ac**, after words of likeness and unlikeness mean ‘than’; translate, ‘was different from what the Belgae had reported.’ 5. **post eas (legiones)**: ‘behind these (legions).’ **totius**: gen.; declined in (286). **colloca(ve)rat**: ‘he had placed (for safety).’ 7. **praesidioque impedimentis erant** doub. dat., see (352), ‘and guarded the baggage.’ 9. **transgressi**: particip. (perf.) depon., see (340), mod. **equites**, the subj. of the sent., ‘having crossed.’ 10. **cum**: with **reciperent, facerent, auerent**, the clauses describing the situation and mod. **cooperunt munire**. **illi**: subj. of **reciperent** and **facerent**. **ad suos**: adj. used as noun, see (258); refers to the *sbj.*, ‘while they (the enemy) would retreat . . . and would make an attack again.’ 11. **neque = et . . . non**; **nostri**: subj. of **auerent**. **longius**: adv. compar. degree (followed by **quam = ‘than’**), mod. **insequi**; ‘and while our men did not dare to pursue them as they were retreating farther than.’ 12. **quem ad finem = ad finem ad quem**, ‘to the limit where.’ **orrecta, aperta**: adjs. mod. **loca**; ‘the level (clear) open ground extended.’ 13. **cedentes**: pres. particip. acc. plur. mod. (**eos**), obj. of **insequi**. 14. **quae . . . venerant**: ‘which had been the first to arrive.’ **dimenso** (from **dimetior**): in *pass.* sense, abl. absol. 15. **ubi**: introduces a purely temporal clause; compare this with **cum** (line 10); see (203). **ubi . . . visa sunt**: ‘when the foremost (part of the) baggage of our army was seen.’ 16. **quod . . . convenerat**: ‘which had been agreed upon as the time.’ 17. **committendi**: see gerundive, (253). **ut . . . confirmaverant**: ‘just as they had arranged their line . . . and (as) they had resolved (to do)’—**sese confirmaverant = ‘had resolved.’** 20. **his**: abl. absol., ‘as these (our cavalry) were easily defeated.’ 21.

**decucurreunt**: ‘they ran down.’ **ut . . . viderentur**: affirm. result, see (321); ‘so that the enemy seemed (to be).’ **paene uno** ‘almost at one and the same time.’ 22. **et ad silvas**: ‘both near the woods.’ **iam in manibus nostris**: ‘and now close at hand.’ Perhaps about twenty minutes, as the Roman camp was three-quarters of a mile from the river, in fording which there was no doubt some delay. It is a surprise that Caesar did not have troops ready to repel the enemies’ charge. 23. **adverso colle**: ‘up the hill (facing them).’ 24. **eos**: with **ad**; ‘and to those who were engaged;’ **occupati** has the force of a pred. adj. **opere**: i.e. fortifying the camp.

CHAPTER XX.—1. **Caesari**: dat. of pers. agent, mod. **agenda erant**; see (361, 362, 363); ‘Caesar had to do everything at once,’ lit. ‘all things had to be done by Caesar.’ 2. **proponendum erat**: ‘had to be raised;’ supply **erat** or **erant** with each of the following verbs (periphrastic). The vexillum was the large banner hoisted to announce an intended engagement. **cum . . . oporteret**: lit., ‘when it ought to be hurried,’ freely, ‘when the soldiers ought to hasten;’ see (385). 3. **tuba**: ‘the call had to be sounded with the trumpet;’ the call to take their places in the line. **ab opere**: ‘from their work.’ 4. **qui**: its anteced. is the *subj.* contained in **arcessendi erant**, ‘those who had proceeded.’ These soldiers would need a special messenger since they were out of hearing of the usual signals. **paulo longius**: ‘a little farther (than usual).’ **aggeris**, etc.: ‘for the sake of procuring material for the rampart;’ see gerundive (253). 5. **cohortandi erant**: the *gerundive* of a *depon.* always has a *passive* meaning; ‘had to be encouraged;’ this was always done if possible. 6. **signum dandum (erat)**: here a signal for the attack made by horns and trumpets. **quarum rerum**: gen. depen. upon **partem**; **quarum** = ‘*but these*,’ see (367); ‘*but* the shortness of the time and the approach of . . . prevented a great part of *these* things.’ 7. **impediebat**: sing. agreeing with the nearer *subj.* 8. **difficultatibus, subsidio**: doub. dat., see (352); ‘in (to) these difficulties two things were (for) a help:’ first, the previous training of the soldiers; second, putting a lieutenant over each legion. **scientia atque usus**: apposition with **duae res**. 9. **quod . . . poterant**: ‘because they themselves (*ipsi*) could.’ **exercitati**: p. p. p. mod. *ipsi*, the *subj.* of the *quod* clause; see (316). **quid**: acc. *subj.* of *fieri*, depen. upon the impersonal verb *oporteret*—a subjunc. of *indir. quest.*, see (313). 10. **oporteret** gets its sequence from **poterant praescribere**; ‘could give directions to themselves (*sibi*) as to *what* ought to be done.’ **non minus**: ‘no less.’ **quam**: ‘than.’ 11.

**doci**ri (**poterant**): ‘could be directed by others.’ 12. **singulis legionibus**: ‘from (ab) the several legions.’ **singulos legatos**: acc. subj. of **discedere**, depen. upon **veterat** (from **veto**); ‘had forbidden the several lieutenants to withdraw.’ 13. **nisi castris munitis**: idiom, ‘until the camp had been fortified.’ 14. **nihil imperium**: ‘no command whatever;’ ‘not at all.’ 15. **per se**: ‘of their own efforts.’ **quae**: anteced. is (**ea**), obj. of **administrabant**, ‘attended to what (= those things which) seemed best.’

CHAPTER XXI.—1. **necessariis**, etc.: ‘after giving (only) the necessary commands.’ **ad cohortandos**: see (355), ‘four ways to express *purpose*;’ see (253), gerundive construction. 2. **quam in partem** = **in eam partem in quam**: ‘into that quarter where fortune led him.’ 3. **decimam**: Caesar’s favorite legion; it was at the extreme left of the line; next came the IXth, then the XIth, VIIIth, XIIth, and lastly the VIIth. **milites**: acc. dir. obj. of **cohortatus**, which mod. *Caesar*; ‘having encouraged his soldiers.’ **non longiore quam ut**: ‘with no longer an address than (to tell them) that.’ 4. **suae**: refers to the subj. of **retinerent**; see (189, 214); ‘of their usual.’ 5. **neu**: negatives are continued by **neve** or **neu**, ‘and that they should not.’ 6. **sustinerent**: with **ut** understood depen. upon **cohortatus**. **quod . . . aberant**: mod. **dedit**. **non longius quam**: ‘no farther than (the distance).’ 7. **quo**: adverbial relative; ‘to which a dart could be hurled.’ **posset**: introduced by **quo**, a characteristic relative, taking the verb in the *subjunc*. 8. **profectus**: ‘depon. perf. participle,’ see (340); mod. the subj. of **occurrit**; ‘having advanced into another quarter.’ 9. **pugnantibus**: pres. particip. dat. plur. mod. (**suis**), the dat. obj. of **occurrit** (comp. verb—**ob-curro**); see (337); ‘he came upon his men (already) fighting.’ **tanta exiguitas**: ‘such was the want of time.’ 10. **hostium**: with **animus**; ‘and the spirit of . . . so determined upon a battle.’ **ut . . . defuerit** (from **desum**): affirm. result, ‘that time was lacking;’ note the use again of the *perf. subj.* (of result) after **fuit**, a verb of *past* time. 11. **ad insignia**: ‘for putting on their decorations’: to distinguish the different legions and officers. 12. **scutis**: mod. **detrudenda**, ‘from their shields’: for agreeem. of these gerundives, see (253). 13. **quam in partem**: ‘to whatever place each man from his work came.’ **quaeque**, etc.: ‘and whatever standards he first saw.’ 14. **ad haec**: ‘near these.’ **ne . . . dimitteret**: neg. purpose, see (320); ‘lest he should lose the opportunity (**tempus**).’ **in quaerendis suis (signis)**: gerundive, ‘in searching for his own standards.’

CHAPTER XXII.—1. *magis ut, quam ut*: ‘rather as,’ ‘than as,’ take the *indic* *postulabat*. *natura, deiectus, necessitas*: subjects of *postulabat*. in the *magis ut* clause, the verb (singular) being in agreement with the nearest subj. 2. *ratio, ordo*: subj. in the *quam ut* clause, ‘than as the arrangement and order of military science.’ 3. *cum . . . resisterent*. ‘since the legions were resisting the enemy separately, some in one place and some in another’; this clause and the next, *cum . . . impediretur*, modify *poterant collocari* in the main clause. *aliae*: with *legiones* understood. 4. *hostibus*: dat. indir. obj. of *resisterent*; for case, see (348). *saepibus interiectis*: abl. absol. of *means mod. impediretur*; ‘by the interposition of very thick hedges.’ *ut*: ‘as.’ 5. *impediretur*: causal subjunc. introduced by *cum* (line 3), ‘since the view was cut off.’ *neque*: beginning of the main clause whose verb is *poterant*. 6. *subsidia*: subj. of *poterant collocari*; ‘neither could reserves be stationed regularly.’ *quid . . . esset*: indir. quest. *subj. of poterat provideri*; ‘nor could whatever was needed in each quarter be provided—for.’ 7. *administrari*: complementary infin. with *poterant*, ‘could all commands be executed by a single man’—notice the emphatic position of *ab uno*. 8. *itaque*: ‘and so.’ *tanta*: mod. *iniquitate*. *fortunae*: gen. depen. upon *eventus*, the subj. of *sequebantur*, ‘various issues of fortune also.’

CHAPTER XXIII.—1. *milites*: subj. of *compulerunt et interfecerunt*, ‘the soldiers of the ninth,’ etc., who were commanded by Labienus. *ut . . . constiterant*: ‘as they had taken their stand.’ 2. *acie = aciei* (gen.). *pilis emissis*: abl. absol. of *means mod. compulerunt*; best translated, ‘by throwing pikes.’ *pilum* = an offensive weapon, a strong and heavy pike six feet long and weighing ten or eleven pounds. This was the principal weapon of the legion soldiers, being thrown only at close range. *cursu ac lassitudine*: abl. of *means mod. exanimatos*, ‘made breathless by speed and fatigue.’ They had run about a mile and forded the river. 3. *exanimatos, confectos*: mod. *Atrebates*, the obj. of *compulerunt*; ‘drove the Atrebates, made breathless . . . and exhausted with wounds.’ *his = Atrebates*; dat. after comp. verb *obvenerat*; see (337). *ea pars*: on the Roman side; ‘for that part (the Roman left wing) had encountered these (the latter).’ 5. *conantes*: pres. particip. (*act. form*) of *depon.*, acc. plur. mod. *eos*, i.e. Atrebates, to be supplied as the dir. object of *insecuti*; ‘and pursuing (them) as they were trying.’ 6. *impeditam*: mod. *partem*, ‘embarrassed (in the attempt to cross).’ *ipsi*: emphatic; the soldiers of the IXth and Xth legions. 8. *resistentes*: pres. particip. mod.

**hostes**, the obj. of **coniecerunt**, ‘put to flight the enemy when they again offered resistance.’ 10. **profigatis**: p. p. p. abl. absol.; ‘after routing the Viromandui with whom they had been engaged.’ 11. **in ipsis ripis**: ‘on the very banks.’ 12. **proeliabantur**: for the force of the impf. see (102); ‘kept up the fight.’ **at**: ‘but.’ **totis . . . castris**: abl. absol. of *time* or *cause* mod. **contenderunt** (line 16). Notice the emphatic position of **totis** modified by *fere*, ‘almost’; ‘now that the camp was almost *entirely* laid bare along the front and on the left side.’ The VII<sup>th</sup> and XI<sup>th</sup> had left the front of the camp, and the IX<sup>th</sup> and X<sup>th</sup> the left, in pursuit of the enemy. 13. **cum . . . constitisset**: see causal **cum** (350)—‘since the twelfth legion had taken its stand . . . and at no great distance from it.’ 14. **ab ea**: *ea* refers to *duodecima legio*. **intervallo**: abl. of degree (measure) of difference. 15. **duce Boduognato**: abl. absol. composed of *two nouns*; see (364). 16. **summam**: noun, with limiting gen. *imperii* = ‘the chief command.’ 17. **aperto latere**: ‘on the unprotected flank.’ **circumvenire**: depen. upon **coepit**, which has the *first pars* as its subj., ‘a part of whom began to surround.’ 18. **summum castrorum locum**: ‘the main point occupied by the camp.’

CHAPTER XXIV.—1. **levis armaturae**: ‘of light equipment’ = ‘light-armed,’ limiting **pedites**. 2. **cum eis una**: ‘along with them’; *una* = adv. **quos**: acc. subj. of *pulsos esse*, indir. disc. depen. upon **dixeram**, ‘who (not *whom*) I had said (before) were routed at the first assault.’ *eis* = *equites*, *quos* = *equites et pedites*. 3. **cum . . . se reciperent**: historical **cum**, (see 128, 203, 359); ‘as they were retreating.’ **adversis hostibus**: dat. indir. obj. of the comp. verb, **occurrebant**, see (337); ‘met the enemy face to face.’ 4. **aliam in partem**: ‘in another direction.’ 5. **fugam petebant**: ‘took flight.’ Observe the *descriptive* force of the *imperfects* in this chapter. Just as the Nervii entered the Roman camp from the right, the Roman cavalry and auxiliaries (**pedites levis armaturae**) who had returned by a circuitous route poured into the camp from the left side, face to face with the enemy. **ab decumana porta**: ‘from the rear gate.’ abl. of the point of view from which. 6. **summo**, etc.; ‘and from the uppermost ridge of the hill.’ The rear of the camp was higher than the front and the **calones**, stationed here, could see the legions at the left cross the stream. They started to follow, but on looking back saw the Nervii rushing into the Roman camp from the right. **victores**: in the predicate with **nostros**. **transisse** (from **transeo**): infin. of indir. disc. with **conspexerant**; the subj. is **nostros**; for mean-

ings of the *perf. infin.* in O. O., see (305), ‘that our men had crossed the river as victors.’ 7. *egressi*: depon. perf. particip., see (340); mod. *calones*, ‘having gone forth.’ *cum respexissent et vidissent*: histor. *cum*, see (359): compare the *time* of the action in *these verbs*, with that of *reciperent*, note 3 (line 3): these clauses mod. *mandabant*, ‘on looking back and seeing.’ 8. *hostes . . . versari*: depon. upon *vidissent*, ‘that the enemy were (*versari*).’ *praecipites*: adj. nom. plur. mod. *calones*, but with an adverbial force, ‘in haste.’ 9. *eorum*: the drivers, etc., in charge of the baggage-train behind which the XIIIth and XIVth legions had been placed; it is gen. depon. upon *clamor fremitusque*, ‘the din and noise of those who were coming.’ 10. *oriebatur*: sing., as *clamor* and *fremitus* contain one idea, ‘arose.’ 11. *perterriti*: p. p. p. mod. the subj. *alii*, see (316); ‘and in great terror (thoroughly frightened) they fled (were borne), *some* in one direction, *some* in another.’ *quibus*: see (367); mod. *rebus*, which in turn limits *permoti* (as an abl. of *means*); ‘and thoroughly frightened by all *these* happenings.’ 12. *permoti*: p. p. p. mod. *equites Treveri*, the subj. of *contenderunt* and *renuntiaverunt*. *virtutis opinio*: ‘reputation for valor.’ 14. *missi*: p. p. p. mod. *qui*, ‘who had come being sent,’ etc. *cum*: with *vidissent*, denoting time or cause, ‘when or since they saw.’ The infinitives (indir. disc.) depending upon *vidissent*, are: *compleri*, *premi*, *teneri*, and *fugere*; notice that these *infin.* are in the *pres. tense*, denoting action *going on* at the *time* of (*contemporaneous with*) the action of *vidissent*; see (301, 302, 392). *castra*: acc. subj. of *compleri*: ‘that our camp was filling (was being filled).’ 15. *legiones*: acc. subj. of *premi* and *teneri*. *circumventas*: p. p. p. mod. *legiones*, ‘and that they were being held (*teneri*) almost surrounded.’ 16. *calones*, etc.: acc. subj. of *fugere*, ‘that the slaves, etc., were fleeing.’ *diversos dissipatosque*: ‘separated and scattered.’ 17. *desperatis . . . rebus*: ‘giving up our affairs as hopeless.’ 18. *Romanos*: acc. subj. of *pulsos, superatos(esse)*, indir. disc. with *renuntiaverunt*; ‘that the Romans had been defeated,’ etc. 19. *castris impedimentisque*: abl. obj. of *potitos esse*, see (353). *hostes*: acc. subj. of *potitos esse*, indir. disc., ‘that the enemy had captured their camp,’ etc.

CHAPTER XXV.—1. *ab cohortatione*: ‘from the cheering of the tenth legion’; abl. of place from which, mod. *profectus*. 2. *profectus*: depon. mod. Caesar, ‘having proceeded.’ *ubi . . . vidit*: translate Caesar as the subj. of this clause, though in the Latin it is the subj. of *processit* (line 15)—the first principal verb: ‘when Caesar saw that his men were hard pressed.’ *signis . . . collatis* (from *confero*): abl.

absol. ‘the standards being brought together’; better rendered as a clause of statement, ‘and that the standard’s were brought together.’ 3. **confertos milites**: acc. subj. of **esse**, with **vidit**. **sibi ipsos**: reciprocally emphasizing, these words are kept together: **ipsos** mod. **milites**; **sibi** with **impedimento** = doub. dat., see (352), lit. ‘for a hindrance to themselves’; translate, ‘and (when he saw) that the crowded soldiers of . . . were in one another’s way for fighting (in the fight).’ 4. **cohortis**: gen. depen. upon **centurionibus**. 5. **occisis**: abl. absol. with **centurionibus**, ‘after all the centurions of . . . had been cut down.’ 6. **amissio**: abl. absol., ‘(and) after the standard was lost.’ These ablatives absol. denote *time* and mod. **processit**. **fere**: adv. mod. **omnibus** (another abl. absol.), ‘after nearly all the centurions of . . . had been either killed or wounded.’ 7. **in his**: ‘among these.’ **primipilo . . . confecto**: abl. absol. ‘the chief centurion, P. Baculus, a very brave man, being disabled by many severe wounds.’ The chief ambition of the centurions was to become a **primipilus**, the highest in rank of all the centurions who stood in regular gradation. He had charge of the standard and was a member of the council of war. 9. **ut non posset**: neg. result; see (321); ‘so that he could no longer stand up’; the sequence of **posset** is from **confecto**, which denotes *past time*; the *imperf.* (**posset sustinere** = **sustineret**) denotes action *going on* at the time of (contemporaneous with) the action of **confecto**. **reliquos**: adj. used as noun, see (258); acc. subj. of **esse** with **vidit**, which is repeated in line 13 because of the length of the sentence; ‘that the rest were *losing spirit* (*tardiores*).’ 10. **nonnullos ab novissimis**: acc. subj. of **excedere** and **vitare**, ‘and that some of those in the rear were withdrawing.’ 11. **vitare**: ‘were avoiding’; for the meaning of the *pres. infin.* in O. O., see (301, 302). **hostis** = **hostes**, acc. subj. of **intermittere** and **instare**. **neque**: ‘and . . . not.’ 12. **subeuntes**: *pres. particip.* of **subeo**, acc. plur. mod. **hostis**; ‘and (when he saw) that the enemy did not cease coming up along the front from.’ **instare**: ‘and were pressing forward.’ 13. **rem esse in augusto**: ‘and that the matter had reached a crisis.’ **neque subsidium**: ‘and that there was no reserve force.’ 14. **quod . . . posset**: characteristic rel. clause, ‘that could be brought up.’ **scuto . . . detracto**: abl. absol., ‘jerking a shield.’ **uni militi**: dat. with a verb of *taking away*; see construction of **hostibus**, chap. 7, note 5; ‘from a soldier.’ **ab novissimis**: ‘(among those) in the rear.’ 16. **appellatis**: abl. absol., ‘addressing the centurions by name.’ **cohortatus**: mod. Caesar, ‘and encouraging the rest.’ 17. **signa inferre**: ‘to advance,’ *infin.* with

iussit. By advancing they would increase the space between the ranks and obtain more room for the use of their swords. quo . . . possent: affirm. purpose; quo = ut eo + comparative (facilius), see (384); 'so that they could use their swords to more advantage.' 18. uti: from utor. cuius adventu: see (367), 'now upon the arrival of this one. spe illata (from infero): 'hope being inspired.' militibus: dat. with comp. verb, see (337); 'in the soldiers.' 19. cum . . . cuperet: causal clause, mod. tardatus est; see (350); 'since each man on his own account . . . even (etiam) in the greatest peril to himself desired to do his best.' 21. paulum: adv., 'a little.'

CHAPTER XXVI.—1. cum . . . vidisset: although *Caesar* (in the Latin sent.) is the subj. of monuit, it is to be read as the subj. of the cum clause; 'when Caesar saw that the seventh legion was likewise hard pressed.' 2. tribunos: dir. obj. of monuit, which is followed by the ut clause as a secondary object, 'he advised the tribunes . . . that the legions should gradually draw together.' 3. conversa: p. p. p. acc. plur. mod. signa, the acc. obj. of inferrent; lit., 'the turned standards,' but best translated by a co-ordinate verb; see (381); 'that they should face about and advance upon the enemy.' 4. quo: see (367); abl. absol., 'now when this was done.' cum aliis, etc.: 'since one rendered assistance to one, another to another.' alii: dat., see (348). 5. neque, etc.: 'and since they did not fear (were not fearing).' ne: see (343), 'verbs of fearing'; 'that (lest) they would be surrounded.' aversi: p. p. p. nom. plur. mod. the subj. of circumvenientur; 'in the rear': i.e. with their backs turned towards the enemy. 8. praesidio, impedimentis: doub. dat., see (352); translate (with fuerant), 'which had guarded the baggage in the rear.' proelio nuntiato: 'on hearing a report of the battle.' cursu incitato: 'having quickened their pace.' 10. Labienus: modified by two depon. participles, potitus and conspicatus, 'and Labienus having captured . . . and having observed from his higher position.' He, with the IXth and Xth legions, had been pursuing the Atrebates. 10. castris: abl. obj. of potitus, see (353). 11. quae res . . . gererentur: indir. quest., see (313); sequence from conspicatus; 'having observed what things were going on (lit. 'were being waged') in our camp.' 12. qui: i.e. the soldiers of the Xth legion. Translate within the cum clause, 'now when these had found out.' 13. quo . . . esset: quo, from interrog. quis, introducing an indir. quest.; sequence from cognovissent, 'in what condition the affair was.' quanto . . . versaretur: indir. quest. (interrog. quantus), 'and in how great danger both the camp

... etc., were (*versaretur*).’ 14. **versaretur**: sing. agreeing with the *nearest* of the *three* subjects. 15. **nihil . . . fecerunt**: ‘they came up with the utmost possible speed.’ **reliqui**: partitive gen. depen. upon **nihil**, lit. ‘they made nothing of the rest as to (ad) quickness.’

CHAPTER XXVII.—1. **adventu**: abl. of cause, see (210), mod. **facta est**; ‘upon (on account of) the arrival of these.’ **rerum**: gen. with **commutatio**, ‘change in things.’ 2. **ut . . . redintegrarent**: affirm. result, see (321), sequence from **facta est**. **etiam qui**, etc.: ‘even those who had fallen, exhausted with wounds.’ **confecti**: p. p. p. mod. **qui**, see (316), and also (for *different* translation) see (381). 3. **scutis**: abl. known as the *locative ablative* (place where), mod. **innixi**. **innixi**: depon. perf. particip. mod. **nostri** (**qui**), ‘leaning upon their shields.’ **calones**: subj. of **occurrerunt**. 4. **perterritos**: p. p. p. mod. **hostes**, obj. of **conspicati**, which agrees with **calones**; ‘then the slaves, seeing the enemy in utter confusion.’ **inermes**: nom. plur. mod. **calones**, ‘even though unarmed.’ **armatis**: ‘the armed’; p. p. p. of **armo**, mas. plur. *used as a substantive*, see (258); dat. with the compound verb **occurrerent**; see (337). 5. **equites vero**: ‘and the cavalry too.’ **ut . . . delerent**: affirm. purpose, ‘so as to wipe out.’ 6. **quo . . . praeferrent**: also affirm. purpose, **quo = ut eo**, rarely used without a comparative; ‘so that thereby they might outdo.’ **militibus**: dat. with a comp. verb, translated like an *accus.*; lit., ‘place themselves before.’ 7. **at**: ‘but yet,’ marks in an emphatic way a change in the point of view of the narrative, describing the manœuvres of the enemy. 8. **ut**: introduces **insisterent**, **pugnarent**, **conicerent**, **remitterent**, being repeated in line 12 (**ut non**) with **deberet**. **cum primi**, etc.; ‘after their foremost men *had fallen*’ (from **cado**). 9. **proximi**: adj. as noun, ‘the next stood upon them as they lay prostrate.’ **facentibus**: pres. particip. dat. with **eis** understood after the comp. verb, **insisterent**. **ex corporibus**: i.e. from the tops of the dead bodies; **ex = ‘on.’** 10. **his deiectis**: abl. absol., ‘when these (**proximi**) were cut down.’ 11. **qui superessent**: before this rel. clause supply **ut** going with **conicerent et remitterent**, the subj. of these verbs being the anteced. of **qui**; the **ut** clauses depend upon **praestiterunt**, in line 8; ‘the enemy displayed such valor that those who survived hurled darts upon.’ **ut ex tumulo**: ‘as from a hill.’ 12. **intercepta**: p. p. p. acc. plur. neut. mod. **pila**, but rendered by a verb co-ordinate with **remitterent**; ‘picked up and threw back the pikes’, or by a rel. clause, ‘threw back the pikes which they picked up.’ **ut non deberet**: neg. result, see (321), ‘so that it ought not to be con-

sidered (*iudicari*).’ 13. *nequiquam ausos esse*: the subj. of the infin. is *homines*; ‘had vainly dared.’ 15. *quae*: acc. plur. (mod. by *facilia*) obj. of *redegerat*; ‘things (*bold deeds*) which their greatness of courage had made easy.’ *ex*: ‘from having been.’ *difficillimis*: for comparison, see (314).

CHAPTER XXVIII.—1. *facto*: ‘being finished.’ 2. *gente ac nomine redacto*: ‘the race and name of the Nervii being reduced almost to annihilation’: *redacto* agrees with the *nearer* of the two nouns. *maiores natu*: ‘the older men,’ lit., ‘the greater by birth’: subj. of *miserunt*, *dediderunt*, and *dixerunt*. *quos*: acc. subj. of *coniectos esse*, depend. upon *dixeramus*; ‘who (not *whom*) I had said were hastily placed.’ 3. *una cum*: ‘along with.’ *in*: with *acc.*, because of the idea of *motion* that prevails in *coniectos*. 4. *hac*, etc.: abl. *absol.*, rendered, ‘upon hearing a report of this engagement.’ *cum . . . arbitrarentur*: causal clause, mod. *miserunt*, etc., see (350). *arbitrarentur* (a verb of *thinking*) governs two infin. propositions, *nihil impeditum esse*, and *nihil tutum esse*; ‘that nothing was an obstacle to the victors and nothing secure for the conquered.’ 5. *victis*: p. p. p. used as a noun, lit., ‘for those having been conquered.’ *omnium*: depen. upon *consensu*: ‘with the consent of . . . the older men (from line 2) sent ambassadors.’ 7. *ei*: dat. indir. obj., ‘to him.’ *in commemoranda calamitate*: gerundive, see (253). 8. *ex sexcentis, ex hominum milibus LX*: adverbial phrases limiting *redactos esse*: so with the two ad phrases. 9. *vix*: adv. restricting *ad quingentos*, ‘to barely 500.’ *qui . . . possent*: characteristic rel. clause and would take a subjunc. verb in the *direct.* *sese redactos esse*: for the *time relation* of this infin. with respect to the verb *dixerunt*, see (305); ‘they said that they *had been* reduced.’ 10. *quos*: obj. of *conservavit*, see (367); ‘now Caesar spared *these*.’ *ut . . . videretur*: ‘that he might appear to have shown (*usus esse*) mercy.’ *usus (esse)*: since the subj. of *usus esse* is the same as that of *videtur*, a *passive form*, the participial part of the *infin.* is retained in the *nom. case* (personal construction): here *usus* (nom. sing.) agrees with the subj. of *videtur*. *in*: ‘toward.’ 12. *finibus, oppidis*: abl. obj. of *uti* (from *utor*). 13. *finitimis*: dat. obj. of *imperavit*, see (145). What is the relation of the *time* expressed by *prohiberent* to that of *imperavit*? At the time he issued the command, were they not to execute it at some subsequent (fut.) time?

CHAPTER XXIX.—3. *domum*: acc. of limit of motion without *ad*, see (386). 4. *desertis*: ‘after abandoning.’ *sua*: adj. (neut. plur.)

as a noun mod. by *omnia*, obj. of *contulerunt*: for its reflex. force, see (189, 214); 'all their possessions.' *egregie munitum*: p. p. p. mod. *oppidum*, 'remarkably fortified.' Perhaps this *oppidum* (name not given) was placed upon the plateau in an angle formed by the confluence of the Chambre and Meuse, about 35 miles northeast of the battlefield. 5. *quod . . . haberet*: 'now although *this town had*'; again the *relative* at the beginning of a paragraph, see (350, 367). *ex . . . partibus*: in brief, 'all round.' 7. *una ex parte*: 'on one side.' *leniter acclivis*: 'a gently sloping.' 8. *amplius*: acc. of ext. in space, used adverbially. *pedum*: the gen. (with numerals) is used to define measures of *length*, *width*, etc. 9. *duplici altissimo muro*: abl. of means, mod. *muni(v)erant*, 'with a very high double wall': meaning either two parallel walls, or a wall of double the usual thickness. *tum*: 'then,' i.e. at this particular time. *magni ponderis*: 'of great weight.' 10. *collocabant*: force of the imperfect? *ipsi*: emphatic or intensive pron. 11. *ex Cimbris*: abl. of source. *erant prognati*: 'were descended.' *qui*: subj. of *reliquerunt*. 12. *eis impedimentis*: abl. absol. with *depositis*; 'having placed those incumbrances, which they could not take along': cattle as well as baggage. 14. *custodiam, praesidium*: in apposition with *milia*, 'left six thousand men as a guard and garrison.' *ex suis*: 'of their own.' 15. *una*: 'together with these'; i.e. with the *impedimentis*. *hi*: 'the latter,' i.e. the six thousand. 16. *exagitati*: 'being harassed.' *cum alias inferrent*: 'when at one time they were waging war.' 17. *alias, etc.*: supply *bellum sibi* with *illatum*, 'at another time they warded off (the war) waged (upon them).' 18. *pace facta*: abl. absol., mod. *delegerunt*. *delegerunt*: note the force of the perfect—time indefinitely past.

CHAPTER XXX.—*adventu*: abl. of time, 'and upon the first arrival of our army.' 2. *faciebant*: 'they kept making'; see (102). 3. *postea*: 'afterwards.' *vallo, castellis*: abl. of means, mod. *circummuniti*. 4. *circummuniti*: p. p. p. mod. the subj. of *continebant*; 'being protected by a rampart 15 miles around and by numerous strongholds.' *oppido*: supply in. 5. *vineis actis*: 'after the vineae were brought up.' *aggere exstructo*: '(and) after the agger had been made': *agger* = a long sloping mound of earth leading up to the height of the walls. *turrim . . . constitui*: indir. disc. with *viderunt*; notice the *time* indicated by the tense of *constitui*, 'that a tower *was being* constructed,' see (301, 302). 6. *irridere, increpitare*: *historical infinitives*; the infin. is often used for the *impf. indic.*

(descriptive impf.) and takes a subj. in the *nom.*; ‘they at first began to laugh at us . . . and *to taunt*’ (*increpitare vocibus*). 7. **quod . . . instrueretur**: subjunc. because the reason is given upon the authority of some one other than Caesar; see (276); ‘because (as they stated) such an engine of war *was being erected*.’ Notice the time of the action of *instrueretur*, as it relates to the time of the action in *irridere*; *irridere* = impf. indic. (a past tense), hence the subjunc. must be either impf. or plupf.; here impf. to denote *action* going on at the time of the action of *irridere* (contemporaneous action). **ab tanto spatio**: *ab* = adv., ‘away.’ *spatio* = abl. of degree of difference, ‘at such a distance.’ 8. **quibusnam manibus confiderent**: a question in the indirect disc., with the verb in the subjunc., ‘by what hands, pray, or with what strength did they hope?’ **viribus**: from *vis*. 9. **praesertim homines**: ‘especially being men of such small stature,’ spoken contemptuously. The Gauls expected the Romans to lift the tower and place it upon the wall—which seemed amusing. This indicates their utter lack of civilization. 10. **Gallis, contemptui**: doub. dat., see (352), ‘for our shortness (of stature) is an object of ridicule with the Gauls.’ 11. **tanti oneris**: ‘of such weight.’ **moturos (esse) sese**: indir. disc. with *confidenter*; for *time* indicated by *moturos esse*, see (318)—3 and 4; ‘did they hope that they *would move*? i.e. did they expect to move?

CHAPTER XXXI.—1. **ubi vero**: ‘when indeed.’ **moveri et appropinquare**: subj. *turrim* understood, ‘was moving and approaching.’ **moenibus**: dat. with a comp. verb. 2. **specie**: abl. of cause, mod. **commoti** (p. p. p.), which in turn mod. the subj. of *miserunt*; ‘being greatly alarmed by the new and unusual sight.’ 3. **locuti**: depon. perf. particip. mod. *qui*, the subj. of *dixerunt* (line 7); ‘speaking after (ad) this fashion, said.’ For use (mood and tense) of infin. and subjunc.—princip. and subord. clauses—in O. O., see (301, 302, 305, 306, 318, 392). 4. **existimare**: princip. verb depen. upon *dixerunt*; subj. *se* understood; ‘that they did not believe (were not believing).’ **Romanos . . . gerere**: is indir. disc. with *existimare*, like a wheel within a wheel; ‘that the Romans waged (were waging)’; note the force of the pres. infin. in O. O., see (302)—example 3. 5. **qui . . . possent**: a rel. clause denoting cause, *qui* = *cum ei* (see 350), which would take a subjunc. verb in the *direct*; ‘since they could move forward.’ 7. **permittere**: ‘that they surrendered themselves,’ etc. **unum**: ‘one thing only,’ acc. sing. neut. obj. of *petere*; notice the emphatic

position of **unum**, which is explained by the **ne . . . despoliaret** clause; **indir. disc.** to the end of the chapt. **petere**, etc.: subj. is **se** understood, ‘that they asked (were asking) and begged for one thing.’ **si**: in this condition **si statuisset** is the protasis, **ne . . . despoliaret** the apodosis: in the *direct disc.* they were, **si statueris** (fut. perf. indic.) see (223), and **noli despoliare** (for **ne despolia**—imperative). For ‘commands and exhortations,’ see (389, 390). In changing this sent. to **indir. disc.**, the princip. verb (**noli despoliare**) becomes **subjunc.** (neg. **ne**), **pres.** after **dicunt**, **imperf.** after **dixerunt** (*as in this instance*); the subord. verb, representing time *completed* (in the future), becomes **perf. subjunc.** after **dicunt**, **pluperf.** after **dixerunt** (*as in this instance*): observe that the person changes from the *second* to the *third*; ‘if perchance Caesar resolved . . . , (they begged) that he would not (**ne**) deprive them of their arms.’ 8. **pro sua**, etc.: ‘in accordance with his usual.’ **quam . . . audirent**: subord. clause in O. O., hence **subjunc.**; though depending upon the **si statuisset** clause, it obtains its sequence from **dixerunt**, the main verb of saying. Observe the *time* indicated by **audirent**, ‘which they themselves *were* (constantly) *hearing of* through others.’ 9. **conservandos esse**: periphras. pass. infin., **indir. disc.** with **statuisset**; ‘that the Aduatuci ought to be spared.’ How is the periphras. act. formed? how the pass.? how express the *person. agent* with this pass.? 10. **sibi**: dat. with **inimicos**, see (126), ‘were hostile to them.’ 11. **virtuti**: dat. **indir. obj.** of **invidere**, see (348), ‘were jealous of their valor.’ 12. **traditis armis**: abl. absol., translated by a conditional, ‘if their arms were given up.’ **sibi praestare**: **indir. disc.** with **dixerunt**; impersonal verb having the infin. clause, **quamvis fortunam . . . pati**, as the *subj.*; ‘that it would be better for them . . . to suffer (**pati**)’ etc. **si . . . deducerentur**: move viv. fut. in the *direct*; was this *fut.* or *fut. pf.* indic. in the *direct*? see (223). Does the *imperf. subjunc.* (O. O.) denote *finished* time, such as would be indicated by the *fut. pf. indic.* (O. R.)? Find answers to these questions in (396). 14. **quam interfici**: ‘than to be put to death.’ **consue(vi)ssent**: subord. clause in O. O., plupf. denoting completed time, ‘had been in the habit of.’

CHAPTER XXXII.—1. **respondit**: perf., not *pres.* **se**: **indir. disc.** through *inferrent*. 2. **consuetudine, merito**: ‘rather in accordance with his usual habit (of merciful treatment of a foe) than on account of any act of theirs’; the former = abl. of manner, the latter = abl. of cause; both mod. **conservaturum esse**. **conservaturum esse**: ‘that

he would spare': this is the *apodosis verb* of a more viv. fut. condition in *indir. disc.*, the *protasis* verb being *dedidissent*. In the *direct* they are written, *ego conservabo, si dedideritis* (fut. perf. indic.): notice that there is a change of *mood, tense*, and *person* when turning direct into *indir. disc.*, the principal verbs of *declarative statement* clauses becoming *infin.*, and all subord. verbs *subjunc.* In changing *conservabo* to the *infin.*, the *tense* remains the same (whether it follows *replies* or *replied*); but in changing *dedideritis* to the *subjunc.*, the *tense* must be changed (as there is no *fut. perf. subjunc.*); the representatives of *finished time* in the *subjunc.* (*dedideritis* = time *finished* in the fut. before another fut. action) are the *perf. after replies*, the *pluperf. after replied*; see rule of seq. (135), and condit. in *indir. disc.*, (396); and specimens of *indir. disc.*, (400, 401). 3. *prius quam*: introducing *attigisset*, subord. verb in O. O., 'before the battering ram touched (reached)': *attigisset* = *attigerit* (fut. perf. indic.) in the *direct*; why not *imperf. subjunc.*? 4. *nullam condicionem*: acc. subj. of *esse*, 'that there were (would be) no terms.' *nisi armis traditis*: idiom, translated, 'unless their arms were handed over.' Offers of submission must be made before the battering ram (*aries*) reached the wall, since a besieged place was looked upon as already captured when this stage of the siege was reached. 5. *id facturum esse*: *id*, obj. of *facturum*, and anteced. of *quod*, 'that he would do that thing.' *quod . . . fecisset*: subord. verb in O. O., 'which he did (had done).' *fecisset* = what, in the *direct*? 6. *ne . . . inferrent*: could *non* be used? see (228, 389, 390); 'that he would command them not to do any (*quam*) harm.' Although *ne . . . inferrent* depends upon *imperaturum (esse)*, which is *fut.*, yet the *sequence of tense* is determined by *respondit* (*past tense*); see (397). 7. *ad suos*: 'to their own people.' *quae*: anteced. is (*ea*), obj. of *facere*; *quae* = subj. of *imperarentur*. *facere*: *infin.* in *indir. disc.*, subj. is (*se*); we should expect *facturos esse*, but the pres. tense is here used as an immediate future; 'they said that they would do those things which were being ordered.' 8. *magna multitudine . . . iacta*: abl. *absol.* of *time mod. usi sunt*, 'after they had thrown a large number.' 9. *sic ut*: 'so that.' *summam*: noun, dir. obj. of *adaequarent* (*subjunc.* of affirm. result). 10. *acervi*: subj. of *adaequarent*, 'the heaps of arms were almost as high as the top of the wall and the *agger*.' The deep space (*fossa*) between the wall and the end of the mound (*agger*) which gradually rose to a height equal to that of the wall of the town was almost filled with the arms.

11. et tamen tertia . . . celata, retenta: 'and yet about a third part being concealed and kept.' 12. portis patefactis: abl. absol. mod. usi sunt; 'after throwing the gates wide open they enjoyed peace.' 13. pace: why abl.? see (353).

CHAPTER XXXIII.—1. sub: 'towards.' 2. ne . . . acciperent: neg. purpose; would non do? see (211, 320); 'lest they should receive.' quam: indefinite pron. after si, nisi, ne, num; 'any violence.' ab: 'at the hands of.' 3. illi: subj. of fecerunt, line 11. inito: p. p. p. of ineo, forming abl. absol. with consilio, the phrase modifying fecerunt; 'according to a plan formerly arranged.' ut, etc.: parenthetical and impersonal, 'as it was learned (later on).' 4. quod . . . crediderant: mod. fecerunt, 'because they had supposed.' deducturos esse: indir. disc. with crediderant. 6. partim cum: 'partly with those arms . . . partly with shields,' adverbial phrases mod. fecerunt. 7. ex . . . factis, etc.: factis limits scutis, 'made out of bark or twigs woven together.' quae: anteced. is scutis; it is the dir. obj. of induxerant. 8. ut: 'as.' 9. tertia vigilia: abl. of time mod. fecerunt. qua: adv., 'where.' This passage indicates that the Roman lines were on high ground. minime: adv. mod. arduus, 'least difficult.' 10. ascensus: subj. of videbatur, 'the approach to (ad) . . . seemed.' 11. ut, etc.: 'as Caesar had previously commanded'; imperarat = imperaverat. 12. ignibus: abl. of means mod. facta, which in turn limits significatione in the abl. sing. fem.; 'after fire-signals had been made.' 13. eo concursum est: impers., see (365). pugnatum . . . est: 'and the enemy fought,' what literally? ita acriter ut: 'just as bravely as.' 14. ut: goes with pugnari debuit, 'as it ought to have been fought.' For meaning of pugnari (pres. infin.), see (385), how ought and must are expressed, *past action*, example a. Translate freely 'as brave men ought to have fought.' a viris: pers. agent, see (240). 15. qui . . . iacerent: characteristic rel. clause which takes a *subjunc.* verb; 'who were casting.' 16. cum . . . consistaret: causal cum, see (350), 'since all hope depended (was depending)'; the clause mod. pugnari debuit. in una virtute: 'upon valor alone.' 17. ad: adv. mod. quattuor, 'after about four thousand.' 18. cum . . . defenserent: causal clause mod. refractis, 'at a time when no one any longer (iam) defended them.' 20. sectionem . . . universam: i.e. the whole people with all their possessions. According to ancient ideas this procedure of selling into slavery the captured foe as a punishment for treachery was perfectly justifiable. ab eis: regular pers. agent, see (240), mod. relatus est; 'the number of souls

reported to him by those who.' 21. *miliūm*, etc.: pred. gen. of characteristic.

CHAPTER XXXIV.—1. *eodem tempore*: as the subjugation of the several tribes mentioned in this chapter was accomplished by the VIIth legion, which had been detached from the Roman army just after the battle of the Sambre, it would seem that the siege described in the few preceding chapters must have lasted a month or more. *a Crasso*: pers. agent mod. *certior factus est*. 2. *ad*: 'against.' 4. *certior factus est*: as a verb of hearing it takes the acc. + infin., *civitates . . . redactas esse*.

CHAPTER XXXV.—1. *tanta opinio . . . perlata est*: 'such a report of this war was spread.' Notice the emphasis given to the verb by the prefix *per*; the report went from tribe to tribe until it reached all of them. 2. *uti . . . mitterentur*: affirm. result, 'that ambassadors were sent.' 3. *incoherent*: subjunc. by attraction, see (276). Why is *quae fem. plur.*? 4. *qui . . . pollicerentur*: rel. clause of purpose, see (311). What is the *time* of the action of *pollicerentur* with respect to that of *mitterentur*, *present* (going on) at the *time of sending*, or *future* (subsequent to it)? *daturas (esse)*: why not *datueros*? To what does *se* refer? What is the gender of *nationibus*? 5. *quas Caesar iussit*: 'and Caesar ordered *these*.' *legationes* = *legatos*. *in Italiam*: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul. Caesar's province extended to the Rubicon. 6. *Illyricum*: east of the Adriatic, also a part of Caesar's 'province,' where he usually spent the winter season. *inita*: from *ineo*, p. p. p. abl. absol. with *aestate*, 'at the beginning of the following summer,' 'early next summer.' 7. *in Carnutes*, etc.: adverbial phrases mod. *deductis*, which forms an abl. absol. with *legionibus*; 'after he had brought his legions into their winter-quarters among (in).' *quaeque civitates*: translate as if, *et civitates quae*, 'and among those states which were.' 8. *ubi*: 'where.' 10. *ob easque*: note the position of *que*. *ex litteris*: 'in accordance with letters from Caesar.' 11. *supplicatio*: a public thanksgiving, decreed by the Senate in honor of a victory, at first lasting only one day, then usually three or four. Caesar was granted a *supplicatio* which lasted for fifteen days, the longest time that had ever been granted. *quod*: = *id quod*, 'an honor (a thing) which.' 12. *nulli*: notice the emphatic position.

### 448. First-conjugation verbs.

For the principal parts of verbs marked \*, see vocabulary at end of the book; those unmarked are *regular*, like **portō**, **amō**, etc.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <b>accommodō</b> , <i>adjust</i>                  | 34. <b>dubitō</b> , <i>hesitate, doubt</i>                               |
| 2. <b>adaequō</b> , <i>equal</i>                     | 35. <b>exagitō</b> , <i>harass</i>                                       |
| 3. <b>adiuvō</b> ,* <i>aid</i>                       | 36. <b>exanimō</b> , <i>make breathless</i>                              |
| 4. <b>administrō</b> , <i>execute</i>                | 37. <b>exercitō</b> , <i>train</i>                                       |
| 5. <b>appropinquō</b> , <i>draw near to</i>          | 38. <b>existimō</b> , <i>think</i>                                       |
| 6. <b>aedificō</b> , <i>build</i>                    | 39. <b>explōrō</b> , <i>find out</i>                                     |
| 7. <b>amplificō</b> , <i>increase</i>                | 40. <b>expūgnō</b> , <i>storm</i>  |
| 8. <b>appellō</b> , <i>call</i>                      | 41. <b>exspectō</b> , <i>await</i>                                       |
| 9. <b>arbitror</b> , <sup>1</sup> <i>think</i>       | 42. <b>fugō</b> , <i>rout</i>  |
| 10. <b>armō</b> , <i>arm</i>                         | 43. <b>hiemō</b> , <i>winter</i>   |
| 11. <b>cēlō</b> , <i>conceal</i>                     | 44. <b>imperō</b> , <i>command</i>                                       |
| 12. <b>circumdō</b> ,* <i>surround</i>               | 45. <b>impetrō</b> , <i>obtain</i>                                       |
| 13. <b>coacervō</b> , <i>pile up</i>                 | 46. <b>incitō</b> , <i>quicken, excite</i>                               |
| 14. <b>cohortor</b> , <sup>1</sup> <i>encourage</i>  | 47. <b>increpitō</b> , <i>taunt</i>                                      |
| 15. <b>commemorō</b> , <i>relate</i>                 | 48. <b>incūsō</b> , <i>blame</i>   |
| 16. <b>comparō</b> , <i>prepare</i>                  | 49. <b>īnstō</b> ,* <i>press forward</i>                                 |
| 17. <b>cōnfīrmō</b> , <i>establish</i>               | 50. <b>intrō</b> , <i>enter</i>  |
| 18. <b>coniūrō</b> , <i>conspire</i>                 | 51. <b>iūdicō</b> , <i>suppose</i>                                       |
| 19. <b>conlocō</b> , <i>place</i>                    | 52. <b>iuvō</b> ,* <i>aid</i>  |
| 20. <b>cōnor</b> , <sup>1</sup> <i>attempt</i>       | 53. <b>laxō</b> , <i>spread out</i>                                      |
| 21. <b>cōservō</b> , <i>spare</i>                    | 54. <b>mandō</b> , <i>direct, instruct</i>                               |
| 22. <b>convocō</b> , <i>summon</i>                   | 55. <b>mātūrō</b> , <i>hasten</i>  |
| 23. <b>cōspicor</b> , <sup>1</sup> <i>see</i>        | 56. <b>moror</b> , <sup>1</sup> <i>delay</i>                             |
| 24. <b>dēcertō</b> , <i>contend</i>                  | 57. <b>nāvō</b> , <i>do with zeal [operam<br/>nāvāre, do one's best]</i> |
| 25. <b>dēmōnstrō</b> , <i>explain</i>                | 58. <b>nōminō</b> , <i>name</i>  |
| 26. <b>dēpopulor</b> , <sup>1</sup> <i>lay waste</i> | 59. <b>nūdō</b> , <i>strip</i>   |
| 27. <b>dēprecor</b> , <sup>1</sup> <i>pray (for)</i> | 60. <b>nūntiō</b> , <i>announce</i>                                      |
| 28. <b>dēspērō</b> , <i>despair (of)</i>             | 61. <b>occupō</b> , <i>seize</i>   |
| 29. <b>dēspoliō</b> , <i>deprive (of)</i>            | 62. <b>oppūgnō</b> , <i>attack</i>                                       |
| 30. <b>dīmicō</b> , <i>fight</i>                     | 63. <b>pācō</b> , <i>subdue</i>  |
| 31. <b>dissipō</b> , <i>scatter</i>                  | 64. <b>perīclitor</b> , <sup>1</sup> <i>test, try [order</i>             |
| 32. <b>dō</b> ,* <i>give</i>                         | <i>65. perturbō, throw into dis-</i>                                     |
| 33. <b>dominor</b> , <sup>1</sup> <i>rule</i>        |  |

<sup>1</sup> deponent verb; see (325) and vocabulary at end of the book.

66. *populōr*,<sup>1</sup> *plunder*  
 67. *portō*, *carry*  
 68. *postulō*, *demand*  
 69. *praedor*,<sup>1</sup> *plunder*  
 70. *praestō*,\* *excel*  
 71. *proelior*,<sup>1</sup> *fight*  
 72. *prōfligō*, *defeat*  
 73. *properō*, *hasten*  
 74. *prōpūgnō*, *fight*  
 75. *prōturbō*, *repulse*  
 76. *prōvolō*, *rush forth*  
 77. *pūgnō*, *fight*  
 78. *redintegrō*, *renew*  
 79. *renūntiō*, *announce*
80. *revocō*, *call back*  
 81. *servō*, *watch*  
 82. *sīgnificō*, *show*  
 83. *sollicitō*, *incite*  
 84. *superō*, *overcome*  
 85. *sustentō*, *hold out*  
 86. *tardō*, *check*  
 87. *vāstō*, *lay waste*  
 88. *vēsor*,<sup>1</sup> *remain, be*  
 89. *vetō*,\* *forbid*  
 90. *vexō*, *harass*  
 91. *vītō*, *avoid*  
 92. *vulnerō*, *wound*

#### 449. Second-conjugation verbs.

For the principal parts, see the vocabulary at end of the book.

1. *audeō*, *dare*  
 2. *commoveō*, *alarm*  
 3. *compleō*, *fill*  
 4. *contineō*, *keep, hold in*  
 5. *dēbeō*, *ought, owe*  
 6. *dēleō*, *destroy*  
 7. *dēterreō*, *prevent*  
 8. *distineō*, *separate, keep apart*  
 9. *doceō*, *explain*  
 10. *habeō*, *have*  
 11. *iaceō*, *lie prostrate*  
 12. *invideō*, *envy*  
 13. *irrīdeō*, *mock*  
 14. *iubeō*, *order*  
 15. *lateō*, *lie hid*  
 16. *moneō*, *direct, advise*  
 17. *moveō*, *move*  
 18. *obtineō*, *hold, maintain*  
 19. *opertet*, *ought, it behooves*  
 20. *pateō*, *extend*  
 21. *permoveō*, *excite*
22. *persuādeō*, *persuade*  
 23. *perterreō*, *frighten*  
 24. *pertineō*, *reach*  
 25. *polliceor*, *promise*  
 26. *possideō*, *possess, occupy*  
 27. *praebeō*, *furnish, display*  
 28. *prohibeō*, *prevent, cut off*  
 29. *prōmoveō*, *move forward*  
 30. *prōvideō*, *provide*  
 31. *respondeō*, *reply*  
 32. *retineō*, *restrain*  
 33. *studeō*, *desire*  
 34. *supersedeō*, *refrain from*  
 35. *sustineō*, *withstand*  
 36. *teneō*, *hold*  
 37. *timeō*, *fear*  
 38. *urgeō*, *press hard*  
 39. *valeō*, *have influence, be strong*  
 40. *vereor*, *fear*  
 41. *videō*, *see*  
 42. *videor*, *seem*

### 450. Third-conjugation verbs.

For the principal parts, see the vocabulary at end of the book.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>abđō, hide</i>                                  | 35. <i>cōnspiciō, see</i>                  |
| 2. <i>accēđō, approach</i>                            | 36. <i>cōnstituō, determine, ar-</i>       |
| 3. <i>accidō, happen</i>                              | <i>range</i>                               |
| 4. <i>acciipiō, receive</i>                           | 37. <i>cōnsuēscō, be accustomed</i>        |
| 5. <i>addūcō, bring, influence</i>                    | 38. <i>contendō, hasten, struggle</i>      |
| 6. <i>adiciō, hurl</i>                                | 39. <i>convertō, turn</i>                  |
| 7. <i>aggredior, attack</i>                           | 40. <i>crēđō, believe</i>                  |
| 8. <i>agō, do</i>                                     | 41. <i>cupiō, desire</i>                   |
| 9. <i>āmittō, lose, let pass</i>                      | 42. <i>dēcernō, decree</i>                 |
| 10. <i>arcessō, summon</i>                            | 43. <i>dēcurrō, run down</i>               |
| 11. <i>ascendō, climb</i>                             | 44. <i>dēđō, surrender</i>                 |
| 12. <i>attingō, border upon</i>                       | 45. <i>dēđūcō, lead away</i>               |
| 13. <i>āvertō, turn back or away</i>                  | 46. <i>dēfendō, defend</i>                 |
| 14. <i>cadō, fall, be killed</i>                      | 47. <i>dēficiō, revolt</i>                 |
| 15. <i>cēđō, retreat</i>                              | 48. <i>dēiciō, hurl down</i>               |
| 16. <i>circumiciō, place around</i>                   | 49. <i>dēligō, choose</i>                  |
| 17. <i>claudō, close</i>                              | 50. <i>dēpōnō, set down</i>                |
| 18. <i>cōgnōscō, find out</i>                         | 51. <i>dēserō, desert</i>                  |
| 19. <i>cōgō, collect, assemble</i>                    | 52. <i>dēsistō, cease</i>                  |
| 20. <i>committō, begin</i>                            | 53. <i>dētrahō, jerk, snatch</i><br>(away) |
| 21. <i>compellō, drive</i>                            | 54. <i>dētrūdō, remove, strip off</i>      |
| 22. <i>concidō, cut to pieces</i>                     | 55. <i>dīcō, say</i>                       |
| 23. <i>concurrō, hurry, rush</i>                      | 56. <i>dīmittō, dismiss</i>                |
| 24. <i>condūcō, hire, collect</i>                     | 57. <i>dīripiō, plunder</i>                |
| 25. <i>cōnficiō, exhaust, furnish,<br/>    finish</i> | 58. <i>discēđō, depart</i>                 |
| 26. <i>cōnfidō, trust, rely on</i>                    | 59. <i>dūcō, lead</i>                      |
| 27. <i>cōflīgō, fight</i>                             | 60. <i>ēdūcō, lead out</i>                 |
| 28. <i>congredior, fight</i>                          | 61. <i>efficiō, bring about, cause</i>     |
| 29. <i>cōniciō, place, hurl, drive</i>                | 62. <i>ēgredior, depart</i>                |
| 30. <i>coniungō, join</i>                             | 63. <i>ēligō, choose</i>                   |
| 31. <i>cōnscribō, enroll</i>                          | 64. <i>ēmittō, hurl</i>                    |
| 32. <i>cōsequor, pursue</i>                           | 65. <i>emō, buy</i>                        |
| 33. <i>eōnsidō, settle, encamp</i>                    | 66. <i>ēnāscor, grow out</i>               |
| 34. <i>cōsistō, make a stand,<br/>    rally</i>       | 67. <i>excēđō, go away</i>                 |
|   | 68. <i>expellō, drive out</i>              |

69. **exstrūō**, *construct*  
 70. **faciō**, *make*  
 71. **fallō**, *disappoint*  
 72. **fugiō**, *flee*  
 73. **gerō**, *carry on*  
 74. **iaciō**, *hurl, construct*  
 75. **impellō**, *urge on*  
 76. **incendō**, *burn*  
 77. **incidō**, *happen*  
 78. **incīdō**, *cut into, notch*  
 79. **incipiō**, *begin*  
 80. **incolō**, *inhabit, live*  
 81. **indūcō**, *cover, draw on*  
 82. **induō**, *put on*  
 83. **inflectō**, *bend*  
 84. **ingredior**, *enter*  
 85. **innītor**, *lean upon*  
 86. **īnsequor**, *pursue*  
 87. **īnsistō**, *stand upon*  
 88. **īnstruō**, *draw up, erect*  
 89. **intellegō**, *know [tween*  
 90. **intercēdō**, *be or move be-*  
 91. **intercipiō**, *pick up*  
 92. **interficiō**, *kill*  
 93. **intericiō**, *place between*  
 94. **intermittō**, *cease*  
 95. **interscindō**, *cut down*  
 96. **intexō**, *weave in*  
 97. **intrōdūcō**, *bring in*  
 98. **intrōmittō**, *let in*  
 99. **inveterāscō**, *grow old*  
 100. **loquor**, *speak*  
 101. **mittō**, *send*  
 102. **nāscor**, *rise, spring up*  
 103. **obdūcō**, *dig, construct*  
 104. **occidō**, *slay*  
 105. **occurrō**, *meet*  
 106. **omittō**, *overlook*
107. **patefaciō**, *open wide*  
 108. **patior**, *allow*  
 109. **pellō**, *defeat, drive*  
 110. **permittō**, *give up, entrust*  
 111. **perspiciō**, *find out*  
 112. **petō**, *ask for, seek*  
 113. **pōnō**, *place*  
 114. **poscō**, *demand*  
 115. **praeficiō**, *place in command of*  
 116. **praemittō**, *send forward*  
 117. **praescribō**, *give directions*  
 118. **premō**, *press hard*  
 119. **prōcēdō**, *advance*  
 120. **prōcumbō**, *fall*  
 121. **proficīscor**, *set out, go*  
 122. **profugiō**, *flee*  
 123. **prōgredior**, *advance*  
 124. **prōiciō**, *give up, abandon*  
 125. **prōpōnō**, *display*  
 126. **prōsequor**, *pursue*  
 127. **quaerō**, *inquire*  
 128. **recipiō**, *receive*  
 129. **reddō**, *give back, render*  
 130. **redigō**, *reduce*  
 131. **reducō**, *lead back*  
 132. **refringō**, *break down*  
 133. **rēiciō**, *throw or drive back*  
 134. **relanguēscō**, *be weakened*  
 135. **relinquō**, *leave*  
 136. **remittō**, *hurl back, relax*  
 137. **repellō**, *drive back*  
 138. **resistō**, *resist*  
 139. **respiciō**, *look back [back*  
 140. **revertō**, **revertor**, *turn*  
Generally deponent in present system, active in perfect system  
 142. **scrībō**, *write*  
 143. **sequor**, *follow*

- |                                     |                                  |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 144. <i>statuō, determine</i>       | 151. <i>trādō, hand over</i>     |
| 145. <i>submittō, send</i>          | 152. <i>trādūcō, lead across</i> |
| 146. <i>subruō, undermine</i>       | 153. <i>trānsgrēdior, cross</i>  |
| 147. <i>subsequor, follow after</i> | 154. <i>ūtor, use, employ</i>    |
| 148. <i>succēdō, approach</i>       | 155. <i>vēndō, sell</i>          |
| 149. <i>sūmō, claim, assume</i>     | 156. <i>vergō, incline</i>       |
| 150. <i>tendō, stretch out</i>      | 157. <i>vincō, conquer</i>       |

### 451. Fourth-conjugation verbs.

For the principal parts, see the vocabulary at end of the book.

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>adoriō, attack</i>                    | 10. <i>experiō, try, risk</i>         |
| 2. <i>audiō, hear</i>                       | 11. <i>impediō, hinder</i>            |
| 3. <i>circummuniō, fortify<br/>strongly</i> | 12. <i>inveniō, come upon</i>         |
| 4. <i>circumveniō, surround</i>             | 13. <i>muniō, fortify</i>             |
| 5. <i>cōnsentiō, conspire</i>               | 14. <i>obveniō, meet</i>              |
| 6. <i>conveniō, assemble</i>                | 15. <i>oriō, descend, spring from</i> |
| 7. <i>dēveniō, come</i>                     | 16. <i>perveniō, arrive at</i>        |
| 8. <i>dīmētior, measure off</i>             | 17. <i>potiō, capture</i>             |
| 9. <i>exaudiō, hear distinctly</i>          | 18. <i>reperiō, find out</i>          |
|   | 19. <i>veniō, come</i>                |

### 452. Irregular verbs.

For the principal parts, see the vocabulary at end of the book.

- |                                      |                                       |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>absum, be distant</i>          | 14. <i>intersum, impers., it con-</i> |
| 2. <i>adeō, approach</i>             | 15. <i>nōlō, be unwilling</i> [cerns  |
| 3. <i>afferō, bring to</i>           | 16. <i>offerō, carry, bring</i>       |
| 4. <i>coepī, begin</i>               | 17. <i>perferō, endure</i>            |
| 5. <i>cōferō, collect</i>            | 18. <i>possum, be able, can</i>       |
| 6. <i>dēferō, report</i>             | 19. <i>praeferō, prefer</i>           |
| 7. <i>dēsum, be lacking, wanting</i> | 20. <i>praesum, be in command of</i>  |
| 8. <i>eō, go</i>                     | 21. <i>redeō, go back, descend,</i>   |
| 9. <i>exeō, go out</i>               | 22. <i>referō, report</i> [slope      |
| 10. <i>ferō, bear</i>                | 23. <i>subeō, approach</i>            |
| 11. <i>fīō, be made, happen</i>      | 24. <i>sum, be</i>                    |
| 12. <i>ineō, enter upon</i>          | 25. <i>supersum, survive</i>          |
| 13. <i>īferō, wage, bring upon</i>   | 26. <i>trānseō, cross</i>             |

## PARADIGMS OF DECLENSIONS.

**453. First declension.**—Most nouns are *feminine*. The stem ends in **a**.

*Silva, forest.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-----------	---------

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
silva	silvae
silvae	silvārum
silvae	silvīs
silvam	silvās
silva	silvae
silvā	silvīs

*Galea, helmet.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-----------	---------

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
galea	galeae
galeae	galeārum
galeae	galeīs
galeam	galeās
galea	galeae
galeā	galeīs

**454. Second declension.**—Nouns in **us**, **er**, and **ir** are *masculine*, those in **um** *neuter*. The stem ends in **o**.

*Gladius, sword.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-----------	---------

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
gladius	gladiī
gladiī	gladiōrum
gladiō	gladiīs
gladium	gladiōs
gladie	gladiī
gladiō	gladiīs

*Ager, field.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-----------	---------

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
ager	agrī
agrī	agrōrum
agrō	agrīs
agrum	agrōs
ager	agrī
agrō	agrīs

*Vir, man.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-----------	---------

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
vir	virī
virī	virōrum
virō	virīs
virum	virōs
vir	virī
virō	virīs

*Scūtum, shield.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-----------	---------

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
scūtum	scūta
scūtī	scūtōrum
scūtō	scūtīs
scūtum	scūta
scūtum	scūta
scūtō	scūtīs

**455. Classification of third-declension nouns by stems.**—The stems are divided according to their last letter, called the *stem-characteristic*, into (1) *consonant stems* and (2) *vowel stems*.

**456. Consonant stems.**—*Consonant stems* are divided into—

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>Mute stems</i>                        | { ending in <i>p-mute</i> , b, p.<br>“ “ <i>k-mute</i> , c, g.<br>“ “ <i>t-mute</i> , d, t. |
| 2. <i>Sibilant stems</i> , ending in s.     |   |
| 3. <i>Liquid stems</i> , ending in l, n, r. |   |

A. *Mute stems*, masculines and feminines, add s to form the nominative. Before s, a *p-mute* is retained, a *k-mute* unites with it as x, a *t-mute* is dropped. Most polysyllabic mute stems change the final vowel i to e in the nominative.

*p-mute* : **prīnceps**, **prīcipis**, stem **prīcip**.

*k-mute* : **lēx**, **lēgis**, stem **lēg**; **vōx**, **vōcis**, stem **vōc**.

*t-mute* : **mīles**, **mīlitis**, stem **mīlit**; **pēs**, **pedis**, stem **ped**.

B. *Sibilant stems* have no additional s in the nominative, masculines changing e to i before s, and neuters e or o to u; in the oblique cases the s of the stem changes to r between two vowels.

**pulvis**, **pulveris** (mas.), *powder*, stem **pulvēs**.

**latus**, **lateris**, stem **lates**; **corpus**, **corporis**, stem **corpos**.

C. *Liquid stems* in l or r do not change the stem to form the nominative; as, **sōl**, **sōlis**, *sun*, stem **sōl**; **rūmor**, **rūmōris**, stem **rūmōr**.

Most stems in n form the nominative by dropping the stem-characteristic and changing a preceding vowel to o, while most neuter and a few masculine nouns retain the stem-characteristic and change preceding i to e:

**homō**, **hominis**, stem **homin**; **flūmen**, **flūminis**, stem **flūmin**.

**457. Vowel stems end in *i* or *u*.**—Masculine and feminine nouns form the nominative in **s**, and have **ēs** and **īs** in the accusative plural; neuters end in **e**, **al**, **ar** and have **ia** in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural, and **ī** in the ablative singular. Some masculine and feminine nouns also have **ī** in the ablative singular. A few feminines change the stem vowel **i** to **e** in the nominative before **s**, and neuters change the **i** to **e**, which is dropped in polysyllabics after **l** and **r**.

Vowel stems in **i** have **ium** in the genitive plural, masculines and feminines ending in **ēs**, **er**, **is**—neuters in **e**, **al**, **ar**.

**vātēs, vātis** (mas. and fem.), *seer*, stem **vāti**.

**hostis, hostis** (mas.), stem **hosti**.

**īnsigne, īnsignis** (neut.), stem **īnsigni**.

**animal, animālis**, *animal*, stem **animāli**.

**458. Third declension.**—General rules of gender for third-declension nouns, classed according to the nominative ending.

#### GROUP I.

*Masculines* are: (1) nouns in **es**, gen. **itis**: **miles**, **militis**;—(2) **es** or **is**, gen. **idis**: **obses**, **obsidis**; **lapis**, **lapidis**;—(3) **er** or **or**: **frāter**, **rūmor**;—(4) many *vowel stems* in **i**: **fīnis**, **fīnis**;—(5) some *monosyllables*: **pēs**, **mōs**, **pōns**;—(6) nouns in **ō** or **ōs**.

**Miles, soldier.**

SINGULAR. FLURAL.

SINGULAR.	FLURAL.	SINGULAR.	FLURAL.	SINGULAR.	FLURAL.
<b>mīles</b>	<b>mīlitēs</b>	<b>lapis</b>	<b>lapidēs</b>	<b>frāter</b>	<b>frātrēs</b>
<b>mīlitis</b>	<b>mīlitum</b>	<b>lapidis</b>	<b>lapidum</b>	<b>frātris</b>	<b>frātrum</b>
<b>mīlitī</b>	<b>mīlitibus</b>	<b>lapidī</b>	<b>lapidibus</b>	<b>frātrī</b>	<b>frātribus</b>
<b>mīlitēm</b>	<b>mīlitēs</b>	<b>lapidem</b>	<b>lapidēs</b>	<b>frātrem</b>	<b>frātrēs</b>
<b>mīles</b>	<b>mīlitēs</b>	<b>lapis</b>	<b>lapidēs</b>	<b>frāter</b>	<b>frātrēs</b>
<b>mīlite</b>	<b>mīlitibus</b>	<b>lapide</b>	<b>lapidibus</b>	<b>frātre</b>	<b>frātribus</b>

**Lapis, stone.**

SINGULAR. FLURAL.

<b>lapis</b>	<b>lapidēs</b>
<b>lapidis</b>	<b>lapidum</b>
<b>lapidī</b>	<b>lapidibus</b>
<b>lapidēs</b>	<b>frātrem</b>
<b>frāter</b>	<b>frātrēs</b>
<b>frātre</b>	<b>frātribus</b>

**Frāter, brother.**

SINGULAR. FLURAL.

<b>frāter</b>	<b>frātrēs</b>
<b>frātris</b>	<b>frātrum</b>
<b>frātrī</b>	<b>frātribus</b>
<b>frātrem</b>	<b>frātrēs</b>
<b>frātrēs</b>	<b>frātribus</b>

*Hostis, enemy.*

## SINGULAR.

hostis  
hostis  
hostī  
hostem  
hostis  
hoste

## PLURAL.

hostēs  
hostium  
hostibus  
hostēs, -īs  
hostēs  
hostibus

*Pēs, foot.*

## SINGULAR.

pēs  
pedis  
pedī  
pedem  
pēs  
pede

## PLURAL.

pedēs  
pedum  
pedibus  
pedēs  
pedēs  
pedibus

For the mode of distinguishing *vowel stems*, which are parasyllabic, from *consonant stems*, which are imparasyllabic, see (131).

## GROUP II.

*Feminines* are: (1) nouns in ās, gen. ātis: facultās, facultātis;—(2) nouns in iō (*abstract and collective*): legiō, legiōnis;—(3) ūs, gen. ūtis or ūdis: virtūs, virtūtis;—(4) dō and gō, gen. inis: multitūdō, multitūdinis;—(5) most monosyllables: pāx, lēx;—(6) nouns in ēs, ys, is, and s (preceded by a consonant).

*Facultās, opportunity.*

## SINGULAR.

facultās  
facultātis  
facultātī  
facultātem  
facultās  
facultāte

## PLURAL.

facultātēs  
facultātum  
facultātibus  
facultātēs  
facultātēs  
facultātibus

*Legiō, legion.*

## SINGULAR.

legiō  
legiōnis  
legiōnī  
legiōnem  
legiō  
legiōne

## PLURAL.

legiōnēs  
legiōnum  
legiōnibus  
legiōnēs  
legiōnēs  
legiōnibus

*Virtūs, courage.*

## SINGULAR.

virtūs  
virtūtis  
virtūtī  
virtūtem  
virtūs  
virtūte

## PLURAL.

virtūtēs  
virtūtum  
virtūtibus  
virtūtēs  
virtūtēs  
virtūtibus

*Lēx, law.*

## SINGULAR.

lēx  
lēgis  
lēgī  
lēgem  
lēx  
lēge

## PLURAL.

lēgēs  
lēgum  
lēgibus  
lēgēs  
lēgēs  
lēgibus

*Multitūdō, multitude.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
multitūdō	multitūdinēs
multitūdinis	multitūdinum
multitūdīnī	multitūdinibus
multitūdinem	multitūdinēs
multitūdō	multitūdinēs
multitūdīne	multitūdinibus

## GROUP III.

*Neuters* are: (1) nouns in us, gen. eris or oris: latus, lateris; corpus, corporis;—(2) men, gen. minis: flūmen, flūminis;—(3) nouns in e, al, ar, ur.

*Latus, side.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
latus	latera
lateris	laterum
laterī	lateribus
latus	latera
latus	latera
latere	lateribus

*Corpus, body.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
corpus	corpora
corporis	corporum
corporī	corporibus
corpus	corpora
corpus	corpora
corpore	corporibus

*Flūmen, river.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
flūmen	flūmina
flūminis	flūminum
flūminī	flūminibus
flūmen	flūmina
flūmen	flūmina
flūmine	flūminibus

*Īnsigne, badge.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
īnsigne	īnsignia
īnsignis	īnsignum
īnsignī	īnsignibus
īnsigne	īnsignia
īnsigne	īnsignia
īnsignī	īnsignibus

## 459. Irregular nouns of the third declension.

*Milia, thousands. Vīs, force, vigor. Iter, march, journey.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mīlle	mīlia	vīs	vīrēs	iter	itinera
indeclinable	mīlium	vīs	vīrium	itineris	itinерum
adjective	mīlibus	—	vīribus	itinerī	itineribus
	mīlia	vim	vīrēs	iter	itinera
	mīlia	—	vīrēs	iter	itinera
	mīlibus	vī	vīribus	itinere	itineribus

**460. Genitive plural in *um* and *ium*, third declension.**

*Vowel stems* in *i* have *ium*.

*Monosyllabic mute stems* with the characteristic preceded by a *consonant* have *ium*: *mōns*, *montium*, *urbs*, *urbium*.

*Monosyllabic mute stems* with characteristics preceded by a *long vowel* have *um*: *lēx*, *lēgis*, *lēgum*.

*Monosyllabic mute stems* with the characteristic preceded by a *short vowel* have *um*: *dux*, *ducis*, *ducum*.

*Polysyllabic stems* in *nt* and *rt* often have *ium*: *cohors*, *cohortis*, *cohortium*.

**461. Fourth declension.**—Nouns in *us* are *masculine*, a few *feminine*; those in *ū*, *neuter*. The stem ends in *u*.

*Manus, hand, band.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>manus</i>	<i>manūs</i>
<i>manūs</i>	<i>manuum</i>
<i>manuī (ū)</i>	<i>manibus</i>
<i>manum</i>	<i>manūs</i>
<i>manus</i>	<i>manūs</i>
<i>manū</i>	<i>manibus</i>

*Cornū, horn, wing.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>cornū</i>	<i>cornua</i>
<i>cornūs</i>	<i>cornuum</i>
<i>cornū</i>	<i>cornibus</i>
<i>cornū</i>	<i>cornua</i>
<i>cornū</i>	<i>cornua</i>
<i>cornū</i>	<i>cornibus</i>

**462. Fifth declension.**—Nouns are *feminine*, except *diēs*, *day*, which is masculine or feminine in the singular and masculine in the plural. The stem ends in *ē*.

*Diēs, day.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>
<i>diēī</i>	<i>diērum</i>
<i>diēī</i>	<i>diēbus</i>
<i>diem</i>	<i>diēs</i>
<i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>
<i>diē</i>	<i>diēbus</i>

*Rēs, thing.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>reī</i>	<i>rērum</i>
<i>reī</i>	<i>rēbus</i>
<i>rem</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>rē</i>	<i>rēbus</i>

## PRONOUNS.

## 463 Personal pronoun, first person.

<b>Ego, I.</b>	<b>Nōs, we.</b>
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> ego	nōs
<i>Gen.</i> meī	{ nostrum { nostrī
<i>Dat.</i> mihi	nōbīs
<i>Acc.</i> mē	nōs
<i>Abl.</i> mē	nōbīs

## 464. Demonstrative pronouns.

**Is, ea, id, he, this, that, etc.**; sometimes used as the personal pronoun, third person.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> is, ea, id	eī (iī), eae, ea
<i>Gen.</i> ēius	eōrum, ēārum, eōrum
<i>Dat.</i> eī	eīs (iīs)
<i>Acc.</i> eum, eam, id	eōs, eās, ea
<i>Abl.</i> eō, eā, eō	eīs (iīs)

**Hic, this (near the speaker).**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> hic, haec, hōc	hī, hae, haec
<i>Gen.</i> hūius	hōrum, hārum, hōrum
<i>Dat.</i> huic	hīs
<i>Acc.</i> hunc, hanc, hōc	hōs, hās, haec
<i>Abl.</i> hōc, hāc, hōc	hīs

**Ille, that (remote from the speaker).**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> ille, illa, illud	illī, illae, illa
<i>Gen.</i> illīus	illōrum, illārum, illōrum
<i>Dat.</i> illī	illīs
<i>Acc.</i> illum, illam, illud	illōs, illās, illa
<i>Abl.</i> illō, illā, illō	illīs

**Idem, the same.**

## SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>īdem,</b>	<b>eadem,</b>	<b>idem</b>
<i>Gen.</i>		<b>ēiusdem</b>	
<i>Dat.</i>		<b>eīdem</b>	
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>eundem,</b>	<b>eandem,</b>	<b>idem</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>eōdem,</b>	<b>eādem,</b>	<b>eōdem</b>

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>eidem (īdem),</b>	<b>eaedem,</b>	<b>eadem</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>eōrundem,</b>	<b>eārundem,</b>	<b>eōrundem</b>
<i>Dat.</i>		<b>eīsdem (īīsdem)</b>	
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>eōsdem,</b>	<b>eāsdem,</b>	<b>eadem</b>
<i>Abl.</i>		<b>eīsdem (īīsdem)</b>	

**Ipse, he, self (with intensive force).**

## SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>ipse,</b>	<b>ipsa,</b>	<b>ipsum</b>	<b>ipsī,</b>	<b>ipsae,</b>	<b>ipsa</b>
<i>Gen.</i>		<b>ipsīus</b>		<b>ipsōrum,</b>	<b>ipsārum,</b>	<b>ipsōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>		<b>ipsī</b>			<b>ipsīs</b>	
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>ipsum,</b>	<b>ipsam,</b>	<b>ipsum</b>	<b>ipsōs,</b>	<b>ipsās,</b>	<b>ipsa</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>ipsō,</b>	<b>ipsā,</b>	<b>ipsō</b>		<b>ipsis</b>	

**465. Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite pronouns.****Relative quī, quae, quod, who, which, that.**

## SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>quī,</b>	<b>quae,</b>	<b>quod</b>	<b>quī,</b>	<b>quae,</b>	<b>quae</b>
<i>Gen.</i>		<b>cūius</b>		<b>quōrum,</b>	<b>quārum,</b>	<b>quōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>		<b>cui</b>			<b>quibus</b>	
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>quem,</b>	<b>quam,</b>	<b>quod</b>	<b>quōs,</b>	<b>quās,</b>	<b>quae</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>quō,</b>	<b>quā,</b>	<b>quō</b>		<b>quibus</b>	

Interrogative and Indefinite quis (quī), *who?*—*any one.*

## SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>quis (quī),<sup>1</sup></b>	<b>quae,</b>	<b>quid (quod)</b>
<i>Gen.</i>		<b>cūius</b>	
<i>Dat.</i>		<b>cui</b>	
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>quem,</b>	<b>quam,</b>	<b>quid (quod)</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>quō,</b>	<b>quā,</b>	<b>quō</b>

The plural is the same as that of the relative.

<sup>1</sup> **quis** is a substantive, *who?* **qui** is an adjective, *what, which?*

## 466. Adjectives.—First and second declensions.

*Altus, high, tall.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
altus,	-a,	-um	altī,	-ae,	-a
altī,	-ae,	-ī	altōrum,	-ārum,	-ōrum
altō,	-ae,	-ō	altīs,	-īs,	-īs
altum,	-am,	-um	altōs,	-ās,	-a
alte,	-a,	-um	altī,	-ae,	-a
altō,	-ā,	-ō	altīs,	-īs,	-īs

*Crēber, frequent.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
crēber,	-bra,	-brum	crēbrī,	-brae,	-bra
crēbrī,	-brae,	-brī	crēbrōrum,	-brārum,	-brōrum
crēbrō,	-brae,	-brō	crēbrīs,	-brīs,	-brīs
crēbrum,	-bram,	-brum	crēbrōs,	-brās,	-bra
crēber,	-bra,	-brum	crēbrī,	-brae,	-bra
crēbrō,	-brā,	-brō	crēbrīs,	-brīs,	-brīs

## 467. Adjectives continued.—Third declension.

*Duplex, double—adjective of one ending.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
duplex,	duplex,	duplex	duplicēs,	duplicēs,	duplicia
duplicis			duplicium		
duplicī			duplicibus		
du <sup>plicem</sup> ,	-cem,	duplex	duplicēs (-īs),	-cēs (-īs),	-cia
duplex			duplicēs,	duplicēs,	duplicia
duplicī			duplicibus		

*Fortis, brave—adjective of two endings.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
fortis,	-tis,	-te	fortēs,	fortēs,	fortia
fortis			fortium		
fortī			fortibus		
fortem,	-tem,	-te	fortēs (-īs),	fortēs (-īs),	fortia
fortis,	-tis,	-te	fortēs,	fortēs,	fortia
fortī			fortibus		

**Equester**, *of cavalry*—adjective of *three endings*.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
equester,	-tris, -tre	equestrēs,	-trēs,	-tria
equestris		equestrium		
equestri		equestribus		
equestrem,	-trem, -tre	equestrēs (-īs),	-trēs (-īs),	-tria
equester,	-tris, -tre	equestrēs,	-trēs,	-tria
equestri		equestribus		

**Pūgnāns** (present participle), declined like an *adjective* of the *third declension*, with *one ending* in the nominative singular.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
pūgnāns, pūgnāns, pūgnāns	pūgnantēs,	-tēs,	-tia	
pūgnantis	pūgnantium			
pūgnantī	pūgnantibus			
pūgnantem, -tem, pūgnāns	pūgnantēs (-īs),	-tēs (-īs),	-tia	
pūgnāns	pūgnantēs,	-tēs,	-tia	
pūgnante (-ī)	pūgnantibus			

**Altior**, *taller*—comparative of *altus*.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
altior,	-iōr, -ius	altiōrēs, -ōrēs, -ōra		
altiōris		altiōrum		
altiōrī		altiōribus		
altiōrem, -ōrem, altius		altiōrēs, -ōrēs, -ōra		
altior, -iōr -ius		altiōrēs, -ōrēs, -ōra		
altiōre (-ī)		altiōribus		

Adjectives of the third declension, parasyllabic and imparasyllabic, such as **duplex**, **fortis**, **equester**, etc., have **ī** in the *ablative singular*, **ia** in the *nominative plural neuter*, and **īs** or **ēs** in the *accusative plural masculine and feminine*.

Note carefully the corresponding endings of these cases in the present participle (**pūgnāns**), and the comparative of the adjective (**altior**).

## 468. Numeral adjectives.

Ūnus,<sup>1</sup> *one.*      Duo, *two.*      Trēs, *three.*

<i>Nom.</i> ūnus, -a, -um	duo,	duae, duo	trēs, trēs, tria
<i>Gen.</i> ūnīus	duōrum,	-ārum, -ōrum	trium
<i>Dat.</i> ūnī	duōbus,	-ābus, -ōbus	tribus
<i>Acc.</i> ūnum, -am, -um	duōs (duo), -ās,	-o	trēs, trēs, tria
<i>Abl.</i> ūnō, -ā, -ō	duōbus,	-ābus, -ōbus	tribus

The numeral adjectives 4–100 are indeclinable; hundreds are declined like the *plural* of **altus**.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

## 469. Regular adjectives.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
altus, <i>tall</i>	altior, -iор, -ius	altissimus, -a, -um
certus, <i>certain</i>	certior, -iор, -ius	certissimus, -a, -um
dēnsus, <i>dense</i>	dēnsior, -iор, -ius	dēnsissimus, -a, -um
inīquus, <i>unfair</i>	inīquior, -iор, -ius	inīquissimus, -a, -um
parātus, <i>ready</i>	parātior, -iор, -ius	parātissimus, -a, -um
tardus, <i>slow</i>	tardior, -iор, -ius	tardissimus, -a, -um
tūtus, <i>safe</i>	tūtior, -iор, -ius	tūtissimus, -a, -um
fortis, <i>brave</i>	fortior, -iор, -ius	fortissimus, -a, -um
gravis, <i>severe</i>	gravior, -iор, -ius	gravissimus, -a, -um
potēns, <i>powerful</i>	potentior, -iор, -ius	potentissimus, -a, -um
amāns, <i>loving</i>	amantior, -iор, -ius	amantissimus, -a, -um

470. Adjectives ending in *er*.—These add *rimus*, -a, -um to the *nominative singular masculine* of the positive.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
ācer, <i>sharp</i>	ācrior, -iор, -ius	ācerrimus, -a, -um
asper, <i>rough</i>	asperior, -iор, -ius	asperrimus, -a, -um
celer, <i>swift</i>	celerior, -iор, -ius	celerrimus, -a, -um
miser, <i>wretched</i>	miserior, -iор, -ius	miserrimus, -a, -um
pulcher, <i>beautiful</i>	pulchrior, -iор, -ius	pulcherrimus, -a, -um

<sup>1</sup> The voc. sing. mas. ūne is found but rarely.

**471. Adjectives ending in *ilis*.**—Six adjectives in *ilis* add the superlative ending *limus* to the *stem*, stripped of its final vowel, viz.: *facilis*, *easy*; *difficilis*, *difficult*; *similis*, *like*; *dissimilis*, *unlike*; *gracilis*, *slender*; *humilis*, *low*.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>facilis</i>	<i>faciliōr</i> , -ior, -ius	<i>facillimus</i> , -a, -um
<i>difficilis</i>	<i>difficiliōr</i> , -ior, -ius	<i>difficillimus</i> , -a, -um
<i>similis</i>	<i>similiōr</i> , -ior, -ius	<i>simillimus</i> , -a, -um
<i>dissimilis</i>	<i>dissimiliōr</i> , -ior, -ius	<i>dissimillimus</i> , -a, -um
<i>gracilis</i>	<i>graciōr</i> , -ior, -ius	<i>gracillimus</i> , -a, -um
<i>humilis</i>	<i>humiliōr</i> , -ior, -ius	<i>humillimus</i> , -a, -um

### 472. Irregular adjectives.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>bonus</i> , <i>good</i>	<i>melior</i> , -ior, -ius	<i>optimus</i> , -a, -um
<i>malūs</i> , <i>bad</i>	<i>pēior</i> , -ior, -ius	<i>pessimus</i> , -a, -um
<i>māgnus</i> , <i>great</i>	<i>māior</i> , -ior, -ius	<i>māximus</i> , -a, -um
<i>multus</i> , <i>much</i>	<i>no mas. or fem., plūs</i>	<i>plūrimus</i> , -a, -um
<i>parvus</i> , <i>small</i>	<i>minor</i> , -or, -us	<i>minimus</i> , -a, -um
<i>īferus</i> , <i>low</i>	<i>īferior</i> , -ior, -ius	<i>īfimus</i> or <i>īmus</i>
<i>superus</i> , <i>upper</i>	<i>superior</i> , -ior, -ius	<i>suprēmus</i> or <i>summus</i>
<i>novus</i> , <i>new</i>	<i>no comparative</i>	<i>novissimus</i> , -a, -um

Most adjectives ending in *us* preceded by a vowel, except those ending in *quus*, have no terminational comparison, and are compared by prefixing *magis*, *more*, and *māximē*, *most*; as,

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>idōneus</i> , <i>suitable</i>	<i>magis idōneus</i>	<i>māximē idōneus</i>

Adjectives ending in *quus* are regular; as,  
*antīquus*, *ancient*      *antīquior*      *antīquissimus*

See also *inīquus*, (469).

## 473. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
āriter, <i>fiercely</i>	ārius	āerrimē
audācter, <i>boldly</i>	audācius	audācissimē
celeriter, <i>quickly</i>	celerius	celerrimē
dīligerter, <i>promptly</i>	dīlignantius	dīlignantissimē
diū, <i>a long time</i>	diūtius	diūtissimē
facile, <i>easily</i>	facilius	facillimē
fortiter, <i>bravely</i>	fortius	fortissimē
longē, <i>far</i>	longius	longissimē
māgnūm, <i>greatly</i>	magis	māximē
multum, <i>much</i>	plūs	plūrimūm
parvum, <i>a little, slightly</i>	minus	minimē
prope, <i>nearly</i>	propius	proximē

1. The accusatives of adjectives and pronouns are sometimes used as adverbs; as, multum, multa, much; facile, easily; aliās, otherwise.

2. Some adverbs were originally ablatives; as, vērō, in truth, but, however; forte, by chance; iūre, rightly.

3. Most adverbs are derived from adjectives, upon which they depend for comparison. Adjectives of the first and second declensions form the adverbs in ē, ḍ, um; as, longus, longē; multus, multō, and multum. Adjectives of the third declension form the adverbs in ter; as, audāx, audāc-ter; fortis, fortī-ter; diligens, dīligen-ter.

4. Some adverbs are formed by the union of prepositions with case forms; as, inter-eā, meanwhile; post-eā, afterwards; paulis-per, for a little while.

5. The comparative of the adverb is the accusative singular neuter of the comparative of the adjective; the superlative of the adverb is formed by changing the ending us of the superlative of the adjective to ē.

## THE LATIN VERB.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

**474.** Active voice.—*Amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum, to love.*

## Present indicative.

*I love, do love, am loving.*

amō  
amās  
amat  
amāmus  
amātis  
amant

## Pluperfect indicative.

*I had loved.*  
amāveram  
amāverās  
amāverat  
amāverāmus  
amāverātis  
amāverant

## Imperfect indicative.

*I was loving, loved.*

amābam  
amābās  
amābat  
amābāmus  
amābātis  
amābant

## Future-perfect indicative.

*I shall have loved.*  
amāverō  
amāveris  
amāverit  
amāverimus  
amāveritis  
amāverint

## Future indicative.

*I shall love.*

amābō  
amābis  
amābit  
amābimus  
amābitis  
amābunt

## Present subjunctive.

*I may love.*  
amem  
amēs  
amet  
amēmus  
amētis  
ament

## Perfect indicative.

*I have loved, loved, did love.*

amāvī  
amāvistī  
amāvit  
amāvimus  
amāvistis  
amāvērunt (-ēre)

## Imperfect subjunctive.

*I might love.*  
amārem  
amārēs  
amāret  
amārēmus  
amārētis  
amārent

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have loved.*

amāverim  
amāveris  
amāverit  
amāverimus  
amāveritis  
amāverint

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have loved.*

amāvissem  
amāvissēs  
amāvisset  
amāvissēmus  
amāvissētis  
amāvissent

**Imperative.**

*amā, love (thou)*  
*amātō, thou shalt love*  
*amātō, he shall love*

*amāte, love (ye)*  
*amātōte, ye shall love*  
*amantō, they shall love*

**Participle.***Present. amāns, loving**Future. amātūrus, -a, -um, being about to love***Infinitive.***Present. amāre, to love**Perfect. amāvisse, to have loved**Future. amātūrum, -am, -um esse, to be about to love***Gerund.***Gen. amandī, of loving**Dat. amandō, to or for loving**Acc. ad amandum, for loving**Abl. amandō, by loving***Supine.***amātūm, to love**amātū, to love***475. Passive voice.—Amor, amārī, amātus sum.****Present indicative.***I am (being) loved.*

amor

amāris (-re)

amātur

amāmur

amāminī

amantur

**Imperfect indicative.***I was (being) loved.*

amābar

amābāris (-re)

amābātur

amābāmur

amābāminī

amābāntur

**Future indicative.***I shall be loved.*

amābor

amāberis (-re)

amābitur

amābimur

amābiminī

amābuntur

**Present subjunctive.***I may be loved.*

amer

amēris (-re)

amētur

amēmur

amēminī

amentur

**Perfect indicative.***I have been loved, was loved.*

amātus, -a, -um sum

es

est

amātī, -ae, -a sumus

estis

sunt

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might be loved.*

amārer

amārēris (-re)

amārētur

amārēmur

amārēminī

amārentur

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had been loved.*

amātus, -a, -um eram

erās

erat

amātī, -ae, -a erāmus

erātis

erant

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have been loved.*

amātus, -a, -um sim

sīs

sit

amātī, -ae, -a sīmus

sītis

sint

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have been loved.*

amātus, -a, -um erō

eris

erit

amātī, -ae, -a erimus

eritis

erunt

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have been loved.*

amātus, -a, -um essem

essēs

esset

amātī, -ae, -a essēmus

essētis

essent

**Imperative.**

<i>amāre, be thou loved</i>	<i>amāminī, be ye loved</i>
<i>amātor, thou shalt be loved</i>	
<i>amātor, he shall be loved</i>	<i>amantor, they shall be loved</i>

**Present infinitive.***amārī, to be loved***Perfect infinitive.***amātum, -am, -um esse, to have been loved***Future infinitive.***amātum irī to be about to be loved***Perfect participle.***amātus, -a, -um, having been loved***Gerundive.***amandus, -a, -um, worthy to be loved***SECOND CONJUGATION.**

**476. Active voice.—Moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum,  
to advise.**

**Present indicative.**

*I advise, do advise, am advising.  
vising.*

moneō

monēs

monet

monēmus

monētis

monent

**Imperfect indicative.***I was advising, advised.*

monēbam

monēbās

monēbat

monēbāmus

monēbātis

monēbant

**Future indicative.***I shall advise.*

monēbō  
monēbis  
monēbit  
monēbimus  
monēbitis  
monēbunt

**Perfect indicative.***I have advised, advised, did advise.*

monuī  
monuistī  
monuit  
monuimus  
monuistis  
monuērunt (-ēre)

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had advised.*

monueram  
monuerās  
monuerat  
monuerāmus  
monuerātis  
monuerant

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have advised.*

monuerō  
monueris  
monuerit  
monuerimus  
monueritis  
monuerint

**Present subjunctive.***I may advise.*

moneam  
moneās  
moneat  
moneāmus  
moneātis  
moneant

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might advise.*

monērem  
monērēs  
monēret  
monērēmus  
monērētis  
monērent

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have advised.*

monuerim  
monueris  
monuerit  
monuerimus  
monueritis  
monuerint

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have advised.*

monuissem  
monuissēs  
monuisset  
monuissēmus  
monuissētis  
monuissent

**Imperative.****monē,** advise (*thou*)**monēte,** advise (*ye*)**monētō,** *thou shalt advise***monētōte,** *ye shall advise***monētō,** *he shall advise***monentō,** *they shall advise***Participle.***Present.* **monēns,** *advising**Future.* **monitūrus, -a, -um,** *being about to advise***Infinitive.***Present.* **monēre,** *to advise**Perfect.* **monuisse,** *to have advised**Future.* **monitūrum, -am, -um esse,** *to be about to advise***Gerund.****monendī,** *of advising***monendō,** *to or for advising***ad monendum,** *for advising***monendō,** *by advising***Supine.****monitum,** *to advise***monitū,** *to advise***477. Passive voice.—Moneor, monērī, monitus sum.****Present indicative.***I am (being) advised.***Imperfect indicative.***I was (being) advised.***moneor****monēbar****monēris (-re)****monēbāris (-re)****monētur****monēbātur****monēmur****monēbāmūr****monēminī****monēbāminī****monentur****monēbāntur**

**Future indicative.***I shall be advised.*

monēbor

monēberis (-re)

monēbitur

monēbimur

monēbiminī

monēbuntur

**Present subjunctive.***I may be advised.*

monear

moneāris (-re)

moneātur

moneāmur

moneāminī

moneantur

**Perfect indicative.***I have been advised, was advised.*

monitus, -a, -um sum

es

est

monitī, -ae, -a sumus

estis

sunt

monērer

monērēris (-re)

monērētur

monērēmur

monērēminī

monērentur

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had been advised.*

monitus, -a, -um eram

erās

erat

monitī, -ae, -a erāmus

erātis

erant

**Perfect subjunctive.***I might have been advised.*

monitus, -a, -um sim

sīs

sit

monitī, -ae, -a sīmus

sītis

sint

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have been advised.*

monitus, -a, -um erō

eris

erit

monitī, -ae, -a erimus

eritis

erunt

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have been advised.*

monitus, -a, -um essem

essēs

esset

monitī, -ae, -a essēmus

essētis

essent

**Imperative.**

<i>monēre</i> , <i>be thou advised</i>	<i>monēminī</i> , <i>be ye advised</i>
<i>monētor</i> , <i>thou shalt be advised</i>	
<i>monētor</i> , <i>he shall be advised</i>	<i>monentor</i> , <i>they shall be advised</i>

**Present infinitive.**

*monērī*, *to be advised*

**Perfect infinitive.**

*monitum, -am, -um esse*, *to have been advised*

**Future infinitive.**

*monitum īrī*, *to be about to be advised*

**Perfect participle.**

*monitus, -a, -um*, *having been advised*

**Gerundive.**

*monendus, -a, -um*, *worthy to be advised*

**THIRD CONJUGATION.**

**478. Active voice.—Pōnō, pōnere, posui, positum, to place.**

**Present indicative.**

*I place, do place, am placing.*

**Imperfect indicative.**

*I was placing, placed.*

<i>pōnō</i>	<i>pōnēbam</i>
<i>pōnis</i>	<i>pōnēbās</i>
<i>pōnit</i>	<i>pōnēbat</i>
<i>pōnimus</i>	<i>pōnēbāmus</i>
<i>pōnitis</i>	<i>pōnēbātis</i>
<i>pōnunt</i>	<i>pōnēbant</i>

**Future indicative.***I shall place.*

pōnam  
pōnēs  
pōnet  
pōnēmus  
pōnētis  
pōnent

**Present subjunctive.***I may place.*

pōnam  
pōnās  
pōnat  
pōnāmus  
pōnātis  
pōnant

**Perfect indicative.***I have placed, placed, did place.*

posuī  
posuistī  
posuit  
posuimus  
posuistis  
posuērunt (-ēre)

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might place.*

pōnerem  
pōnerēs  
pōneret  
pōnerēmus  
pōnerētis  
pōnerent

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had placed.*

posueram  
posuerās  
posuerat  
posuerāmus  
posuerātis  
posuerant

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have placed.*

posuerim  
posueris  
posuerit  
posuerimus  
posueritis  
posuerint

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have placed.*

posuerō  
posueris  
posuerit  
posuerimus  
posueritis  
posuerint

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have placed.*

posuissem  
posuissēs  
posuisset  
posuissēmus  
posuissētis  
posuissent

**Imperative.**

<b>pōne</b> , place ( <i>thou</i> )	<b>pōnite</b> , place ( <i>ye</i> )
<b>pōnitō</b> , <i>thou shalt place</i>	<b>pōnitōte</b> , <i>ye shall place</i>
<b>pōnitō</b> , <i>he shall place</i>	<b>pōnuntō</b> , <i>they shall place</i>

**Participle.***Present.* **pōnēns**, *placing**Future.* **positūrus**, -a, -um, *being about to place***Infinitive.***Present.* **pōnere**, *to place**Perfect.* **posuisse**, *to have placed**Future.* **positūrum**, -am, -um esse, *to be about to place***Gerund.**

<b>pōnēndī</b> , <i>of placing</i>
<b>pōnēndō</b> , <i>to or for placing</i>
<b>ad pōnēndūm</b> , <i>for placing</i>
<b>pōnēndō</b> , <i>by placing</i>

**Supine.**

<b>positūm</b> , <i>to place</i>	<b>positū</b> , <i>to place</i>
----------------------------------	---------------------------------

**479. Passive voice.—Pōnor, pōnī, positus sum.****Present indicative.***I am (being) placed.*

<b>pōnor</b>
<b>pōneris</b> (-re)
<b>pōnitur</b>
<b>pōnimur</b>
<b>pōniminī</b>
<b>pōnuntur</b>

**Imperfect indicative.***I was (being) placed.*

<b>pōnēbar</b>
<b>pōnēbāris</b> (-re)
<b>pōnēbātūr</b>
<b>pōnēbāmūr</b>
<b>pōnēbāmīnī</b>
<b>pōnēbāntūr</b>

**Future indicative.***I shall be placed.*

pōnar

pōnēris (-re)

pōnētur

pōnēmur

pōnēminī

pōnentur

**Present subjunctive.***I may be placed.*

pōnar

pōnāris (-re)

pōnātur

pōnāmur

pōnāminī

pōnantur

**Perfect indicative.***I have been placed, was placed.*

positus, -a, -um sum

es

est

positī, -ae, -a sumus

estis

sunt

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might be placed.*

pōnerer

pōnerēris (-re)

pōnerētur

pōnerēmur

pōnerēminī

pōnerentur

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had been placed.*

positus, -a, -um eram

erās

erat

positī, -ae, -a erāmus

erātis

erant

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have been placed.*

positus, -a, -um sim

sīs

sit

positī, -ae, -a sīmus

sītis

sint

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have been placed.*

positus, -a, -um erō

eris

erit

positī, -ae, -a erimus

eritis

erunt

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have been placed.*

positus, -a, -um essem

essēs

esset

positī, -ae, -a essēmus

essētis

essent

**Imperative.**

**pōnere**, *be thou placed*      **pōnimini**, *be ye placed*

**pōnitor**, *thou shalt be placed*

**pōnitor**, *he shall be placed*

**pōnuntor**, *they shall be placed*

**Infinitive.**

*Present.* **pōnī**, *to be placed*

*Perfect.* **positum**, *-am*, *-um esse*, *to have been placed*

*Future.* **positum irī**, *to be about to be placed*

**Perfect participle.**

**positus**, *-a*, *-um*, *having been placed*

**Gerundive.**

**pōnendus**, *-a*, *-um*, *worthy to be placed*

## THIRD CONJUGATION. THE 'IŌ' VERB.

480. Active voice.—**Capiō**, *capere*, **cēpī**, *captum*, *to take*.**Present indicative.**

*I take, do take, am taking.*

**capiō**

**capis**

**capit**

**capimus**

**capitis**

**capiunt**

**Future indicative.**

*I shall take.*

**capiam**

**capiēs**

[etc., regular]

**Perfect indicative.**

*I have taken, did take, took.*

**cēpī**

**cēpistī**

[etc., regular]

**Imperfect indicative.**

*I was taking, took.*

**capiēbam**

**capiēbās**

[etc., regular]

**Pluperfect indicative.**

*I had taken.*

**cēperam**

**cēperās**

[etc., regular]

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have taken.*

cēperō  
cēperis  
[etc., regular]

**Present subjunctive.***I may take.*

capiam  
capiās  
[etc., regular]

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might take.*

caperem  
caperēs  
[etc., regular]

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have taken.*

cēperim  
cēperis  
[etc., regular]

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have taken.*

cēpissem  
cēpisſēs  
[etc., regular]

**Imperative.**

cape, take (*thou*)  
capitō, thou shalt take  
capitō, he shall take  
capite, take (*ye*)  
capitōte, ye shall take  
capiuntō, they shall take

**Participle.***Present. capiēns, taking**Future. captūrus, -a, -um, being about to take***Infinitive.***Present. capere, to take**Perfect. cēpisse, to have taken**Future. captūrum, -am, -um esse, to be about to take***Gerund.**

capiendī, of taking  
capiendō, to or for taking  
ad capiendum, for taking  
capiendō, by taking

**Supine.***captum, to take**captū, to take*

**481. Passive voice.—Capior, capi, captus sum.****Present indicative.***I am (being) taken.*

capior

caperis (-re)

capitur

capimur

capiminī

capiuntur

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have been taken.*

captus, -a, -um erō

“ “ “ eris

[etc., regular]

**Imperfect indicative.***I was (being) taken.*

capiēbar

capiēbāris (-re)

[etc., regular]

**Future indicative.***I shall be taken.*

capiar

capiēris (-re)

[etc., regular]

**Perfect indicative.***I have been taken, was taken.*

captus, -a, -um sum

“ “ “ es

[etc., regular]

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have been taken.*

captus, -a, -um erō

“ “ “ eris

[etc., regular]

**Present subjunctive.***I may be taken.*

capiar

capiāris (-re)

[etc., regular]

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might be taken.*

caperer

caperēris (-re)

[etc., regular]

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have been taken.*

captus, -a, -um sim

“ “ “ sis

[etc., regular]

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have been taken.*

captus, -a, -um essem

“ “ “ essēs

[etc., regular]

**Imperative.***capere, be thou taken**capitor, thou shalt be taken**capitor, he shall be taken**capiminī, be ye taken**capiuntor, they shall be taken***Pluperfect indicative.***I had been taken.*

captus, -a, -um eram

“ “ “ erās

[etc., regular]

### Infinitive.

*Present.* capī, *to be taken*

*Perfect.* captum, -am, -um esse, *to have been taken*

*Future.* captum īrī, *to be about to be taken*

### Perfect participle.

captus, -a, -um, *having been taken*

### Gerundive.

capiendus, -a, -um, *worthy to be taken*

### FOURTH CONJUGATION.

482. Active voice.—Mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnītūm,  
*to fortify.*

#### Present indicative.

*I fortify, do fortify, am fortifying.*

mūniō
mūnīs
mūnit
mūnīmus
mūnītis
mūniunt

#### Future indicative.

*I shall fortify.*

mūniām
mūniēs
mūniēt
mūniēmus
mūniētis
mūniēnt

#### Imperfect indicative.

*I was fortifying, fortified.*

mūniēbam
mūniēbās
mūniēbat
mūniēbāmus
mūniēbātis
mūniēbānt

#### Perfect indicative.

*I have fortified, did fortify, fortified.*

mūnīvī
mūnīvistī
mūnīvit
mūnīvimus
mūnīvistis
mūnīvērunt (-ēre)

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had fortified.*

mūnīveram  
mūnīverās  
mūnīverat  
mūnīverāmus  
mūnīverātis  
mūnīverant

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might fortify.*

mūnīrem  
mūnīrēs  
mūnīret  
mūnīrēmus  
mūnīrētis  
mūnīrent

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have fortified.*

mūnīverō  
mūnīveris  
mūnīverit  
mūnīverimus  
mūnīveritis  
mūnīverint

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have fortified.*

mūnīverim  
mūnīveris  
mūnīverit  
mūnīverimus  
mūnīveritis  
mūnīverint

**Present subjunctive.***I may fortify.*

mūniām  
mūniās  
mūniāt  
mūniāmus  
mūniātis  
mūniānt

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have fortified.*

mūnīvissem  
mūnīvissēs  
mūnīvisset  
mūnīvissēmus  
mūnīvissētis  
mūnīvissent

**Imperative.**

mūnī, *fortify (thou)*  
mūnītō, *thou shalt fortify*  
mūnītō, *he shall fortify*

mūnīte, *fortify (ye)*  
mūnītōte, *ye shall fortify*  
mūniuntō, *they shall fortify*

**Participle.***Present.* mūniēns, *fortifying**Future.* mūnītūrus, -a, -um, *being about to fortify*

### Infinitive.

*Present.* mūnīre, *to fortify*

*Perfect.* mūnīvisse, *to have fortified*

*Future.* mūnītūrum, -am, -um esse, *to be about to fortify*

### Gerund.

mūniendī, *of fortifying*

mūniendō, *to or for fortifying*

ad mūniendum, *for fortifying*

mūniendō, *by fortifying*

### Supine.

mūnītūm, *to fortify*

mūnītū, *to fortify*

### 483. Passive voice.—Mūnior, mūnīrī, mūnītūsum.

#### Present indicative.

*I am (being) fortified.*

mūnior

mūnīris (-re)

mūnītūr

mūnīmur

mūnīminī

mūniuntur

#### Future indicative.

*I shall be fortified.*

mūniar

mūniēris (-re)

mūniētūr

mūniēmur

mūniēminī

mūniuentur

#### Imperfect indicative.

*I was (being) fortified.*

mūniēbar

mūniēbāris (-re)

mūniēbātūr

mūniēbāmur

mūniēbāminī

mūniēbāntur

#### Perfect indicative.

*I have been, was fortified.*

mūnītūs, -a, -um sum

es

est

mūnītī, -ae, -a sumus

estis

sunt

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had been fortified.*

mūnītus, -a, -um	eram
	erās
	erat
mūnītī, -ae, -a	erāmus
	erātis
	erant

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might be fortified.*

mūnīrer
mūnīrēris (-re)
mūnīrētur
mūnīrēmur
mūnīrēminī
mūnīrentur

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have been fortified.*

mūnītus, -a, -um	erō
	eris
	erit
mūnītī, -ae, -a	erimus
	eritis
	erunt

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have been fortified.*

mūnītus, -a, -um	sīm
	sīs
	sit
mūnītī, -ae, -a	sīmus
	sītis
	sint

**Present subjunctive.***I may be fortified.*

mūniar
mūniāris (-re)
mūniātur
mūniāmur
mūniāminī
mūniāntur

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have been fortified.*

mūnītus -a, -um	essem
	essēs
	esset
mūnītī, -ae, -a	essēmus
	essētis
	essent

**Imperative.**

mūnīre, be thou fortified
mūnītor, thou shalt be fortified
mūnītor, he shall be fortified
mūnīminī, be ye fortified
mūniuntor, they shall be fortified

**Infinitive.***Present.* mūnīrī, to be fortified*Perfect.* mūnītum, -am, -um esse, to have been fortified*Future.* mūnītum īrī, to be about to be fortified

## Perfect participle.

**mūnītus**, -a, -um, *having been fortified*

## Gerundive.

**mūniendus**, -a, -um, *worthy to be fortified*

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

**484. Sum, esse, fui, to be.**

## Present indicative.

*I am.*

sum

es

est

sumus

estis

sunt

## Perfect indicative.

*I have been, was.*

fui

fuistī

fuit

fuimus

fuistis

fuērunt (-ēre)

## Imperfect indicative.

*I was*

eram

erās

erat

erāmus

erātis

erant

## Pluperfect indicative.

*I had been.*

fueram

fuerās

fuerat

fuerāmus

fuerātis

fuerant

## Future indicative.

*I shall be.*

erō

eris

erit

erimus

eritis

erunt

## Future-perfect indicative.

*I shall have been.*

fuerō

fueris

fuerit

fuerimus

fueritis

fuerint

**Present subjunctive.***I may be.*

sim  
sīs  
sit  
sīmus  
sītis  
sint

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have been.*

fuerim  
fueris  
fuerit  
fuerimus  
fueritis  
fuerint

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might be.*

essem  
essēs  
esset  
essēmus  
essētis  
essent

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have been.*

fuissem  
fuissēs  
fuisset  
fuissēmus  
fuissētis  
fuisserint

**Imperative.***es, be thou**este, be ye**estō, thou shalt be**estōte, ye shall be**estō, he shall be**suntō, they shall be***Participle.***Future. futūrus, -a, -um, being about to be***Infinitive.***Present. esse, to be**Perfect. fuisse, to have been**Future. futūrum, -am, -um esse, to be about to be***485. Possum, posse, potuī, to be able.****Present indicative.***I am able.*

possum  
potes  
potest

possumus  
potestis  
possunt

**Imperfect indicative.***I was able.*

**poteram**  
**poterās**  
 [etc., regular]

**Future indicative.***I shall be able.*

**poterō**  
**poteris**  
 [etc., regular]

**Perfect indicative.***I have been, was able.*

**potuī**  
**potuistī**  
 [etc., regular]

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had been able.*

**potueram**  
**potuerās**  
 [etc., regular]

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have been able.*

**potuerō**  
**potueris**  
 [etc., regular]

**Present subjunctive.***I may be able.*

**possim**  
**possīs**  
**possit**  
**possīmus**  
**possītis**  
**possint**

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might be able.*

**possem**  
**possēs**  
**posset**  
**possēmus**  
**possētis**  
**possent**

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have been able.*

**potuerim**  
**potueris**  
 [etc., regular]

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have been able.*

**potuissem.**  
**potuissēs**  
 [etc., regular]

**Infinitive.***Present. posse, to be able**Perfect. potuisse, to have been able*

486. **Eō, īre, īvī, itum, to go.****Present indicative.***I go, am going, do go.*

eō  
īs  
it  
īmus  
ītis  
eunt

**Pluperfect indicative.**

īveram  
īverās  
īverat  
īverāmus  
īverātis  
īverant

**Imperfect indicative.***I was going, went.*

ībam  
ībās  
ībat  
ībāmus  
ībātis  
ībant

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have gone.*

īverō  
īveris  
īverit  
īverimus  
īveritis  
īverint

**Future indicative.***I shall go.*

ībō  
ībis  
ībit  
ībimus  
ībitis  
ībunt

**Present subjunctive.**

eam  
eās  
eat  
eāmus  
eātis  
eant

**Perfect indicative.***I have gone, went.*

īvī  
īvistī  
īvit  
īvimus  
īvistis  
īvērunt (-ēre)

**Imperfect subjunctive.**

īrem  
īrēs  
īret  
īrēmus  
īrētis  
īrent

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have gone.*

īverim  
īveris  
īverit  
īverimus  
īveritis  
īverint

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have gone.*

īvissem  
īvissēs  
īvisset  
īvissēmus  
īvissētis  
īvissent

**Imperative.**

ī, go (*thou*)  
ītō, *thou shalt go*  
ītō, *he shall go*

īte, go (*ye*)  
ītōte, *ye shall go*  
euntō, *they shall go*

**Participle.***Present.* iēns (gen. euntis), *going**Future.* itūrus, -a, -um, *being about to go***Infinitive.***Present.* īre, *to go**Perfect.* īvisse, *to have gone**Future.* itūrum, -am, -um esse, *to be about to go***Gerund.**

eundi, *of going*  
eundō, *to or for going*  
ad eundum, *for going*  
eundō, *by going*

**Supine.**itum, *to go*itū, *to go***487. Volō, velle, voluī, to wish.****Present indicative.***I wish, am wishing, do wish.*

volō  
vīs  
vult  
volumus  
vultis  
volunt

**Imperfect indicative.***I was wishing, wished.*

volēbam  
volēbās  
volēbat  
volēbāmus  
volēbātis  
volēbant

**Future indicative.***I shall wish.*

volam  
volēs  
volet  
volēmus  
volētis  
volent

**Perfect indicative.***I have wished, wished.*

volui  
voluistī  
voluit  
voluimus  
voluistis  
voluērunt (-ēre)

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had wished.*

volueram  
voluerās  
voluerat  
voluerāmus  
voluerātis  
voluerant

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have wished.*

voluerō  
volueris  
voluerit  
voluerimus  
volueritis  
voluerint

**Present subjunctive.***I may wish.*

velim  
velīs  
velit  
velīmus  
velītis  
velint

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might wish.*

vellem  
vellēs  
vellet  
vellēmus  
vellētis  
vellent

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have wished.*

voluerim  
volueris  
voluerit  
voluerimus  
volueritis  
voluerint

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have wished.*

voluissem  
voluissēs  
voluisset  
voluissēmus  
voluissētis  
voluissent

**Present participle.***volēns, wishing*

**Infinitive.***Present.* **velle**, to wish*Perfect.* **voluisse**, to have wished**488. Nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, to be unwilling.****Present indicative.***I am unwilling.***nōlō****nōn vīs****nōn vult****nōlūmus****nōn vultis****nōlunt****Imperfect indicative.***I was unwilling.***nōlēbam****nōlēbās**

[etc., regular]

**Future indicative.***I shall be unwilling.***nōlam****nōlēs**

[etc., regular]

**Perfect indicative.***I have been, was, unwilling.***nōluī****nōluistī**

[etc., regular]

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had been unwilling.***nōlueram****nōluerās**

[etc., regular]

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have been unwilling.***nōluerō****nōlueris**

[etc., regular]

**Present subjunctive.***I may be unwilling.***nōlim****nōlis****nōlit****nōlīmus****nōlītis****nōlint****Imperfect subjunctive.***I might be unwilling.***nōllem****nōllēs**

[etc., regular]

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have been unwilling.***nōluerim****nōlueris**

[etc., regular]

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have been unwilling.***nōluissem****nōluiſſēs**

[etc., regular]

**Imperative.**

<i>nōlī, be (thou) unwilling</i>	<i>nōlīte, be (ye) unwilling</i>
<i>nōlītō, thou shalt be unwilling</i>	<i>nōlītōte, ye shall be unwilling</i>
<i>nōlītō, he shall be unwilling</i>	<i>nōluntō, they shall be unwilling</i>

**Present participle.***nōlēns, being unwilling***Infinitive.***Present. nōlle, to be unwilling**Perfect. nōluisse, to have been unwilling***489. Mālō, mālle, mālūi, to prefer.****Present indicative.***I prefer, am preferring, do prefer.*

mālō
māvīs
māvult
mālumus
māvultis
mālunt

**Imperfect indicative.***I was preferring, preferred.*

mālēbam
mālēbās
[etc., regular]

**Future indicative.**

<i>I shall prefer.</i>
mālam
mālēs
[etc., regular]

**Perfect indicative.***I have preferred, preferred.*

mālūi
māluistī
[etc., regular]

**Pluperfect indicative.**

<i>I had preferred.</i>
mālueram
māluerās
[etc., regular]

**Future-perfect indicative.**

<i>I shall have preferred.</i>
māluerō
mālueris
[etc., regular]

**Present subjunctive.**

<i>I may prefer.</i>
mālim
mālis
mālit
mālīmus
mālītis
mālint

**Imperfect subjunctive.**

<i>I might prefer.</i>
māllem
māllēs
māllet
māllēmus
māllētis
māllent

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have preferred.*

māluerim  
mālueris  
[etc., regular]

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have preferred.*

māluissem  
māluissēs  
[etc., regular]

**Infinitive.***Present.* mālle, *to prefer**Perfect.* māluisse, *to have preferred***490. Active voice.—Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, to bear.****Present indicative.***I bear, am bearing, do bear.*

ferō  
fers  
fert  
ferimus  
fertis  
ferunt

**Imperfect indicative.***I was bearing, bore.*

ferēbam  
ferēbās  
[etc., regular]

**Future indicative.***I shall bear.*

feram  
ferēs  
[etc., regular]

**Perfect indicative.***I have borne, bore.*

tulī  
tulistī  
[etc., regular]

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had borne.*

tuleram  
tulerās  
[etc., regular]

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have borne.*

tulerō  
tuleris  
[etc., regular]

**Present subjunctive.***I may bear.*

feram  
ferās  
[etc., regular]

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might bear.*

ferrem  
ferrēs  
[etc., regular]

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have borne.*

tulerim

tuleris

[etc., regular]

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have borne.*

tulisse

tulissēs

[etc., regular]

**Imperative.****fer**, *bear (thou)***fertō**, *thou shalt bear***fertō**, *he shall bear***ferte**, *bear (ye)***fertōte**, *ye shall bear***feruntō**, *they shall bear***Participle.***Present.* **ferēns**, *bearing**Future.* **lātūrus**, -a, -um, *being about to bear***Infinitive.***Present.* **ferre**, *to bear**Perfect.* **tulisse**, *to have borne**Future.* **lātūrum**, -am, -um esse, *to be about to bear***Gerund.****ferendī**, *of bearing*, etc.**Supine.****lātum**, *to bear***lātū**, *to bear***491. Passive voice.—Feror, ferri, lātus sum.****Present indicative.***I am (being) borne.*

feror

ferris (-re)

fertur

ferimur

feriminī

feruntur

**Future indicative.***I shall be borne.*

ferar

ferēris (-re)

[etc., regular]

**Imperfect indicative.***I was (being) borne.*

ferēbar

ferēbāris (-re)

[etc., regular]

**Perfect indicative.***I have been, was, borne.***lātus**, -a, -um sum

es

[etc.]

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had been borne.*

**lātus, -a, -um** eram  
erās  
[etc.]

**Imperfect subjunctive.**

*I might be borne.*  
**ferrer**  
**ferrēris (-re)**  
[etc., regular]

**Future perfect indicative.***I shall have been borne.*

**lātus, -a, -um** erō  
eris  
[etc.]

**Perfect subjunctive.**

*I may have been borne.*  
**lātus, -a, -um** sim  
sīs  
[etc.]

**Present subjunctive.***I may be borne.*

**ferar**  
**ferāris (-re)**  
[etc., regular]

**Pluperfect subjunctive.**

*I might have been borne.*  
**lātus, -a, -um** essem  
essēs  
[etc.]

**Imperative.****ferre**, *be thou borne***ferimini**, *be ye borne***fertor**, *thou shalt be borne***feruntor**, *they shall be borne***fertor**, *he shall be borne***Infinitive.***Present.* **ferī**, *to be borne**Perfect.* **lātum**, *-am, -um esse, to have been borne**Future.* **lātum īrī**, *to be about to be borne***Perfect participle.****lātus, -a, -um**, *having been borne***Gerundive.****ferendus, -a, -um**, *worthy to be borne*

**492. Active voice.—Faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, to make.**

**Present indicative.**

*I make, am making, do make.*

faciō  
facis  
facit  
facimus  
facitis  
faciunt

**Future-perfect indicative.**

*I shall have made.*

fēcerō  
fēceris  
[etc., regular]

**Imperfect indicative.**

*I was making, made.*

faciēbam  
faciēbās  
[etc., regular]

**Present subjunctive.**

*I may make.*

faciam  
faciās  
[etc., regular]

**Future indicative.**

*I shall make.*

faciam  
faciēs  
[etc., regular]

**Imperfect subjunctive.**

*I might make.*

facerem  
facerēs  
[etc., regular]

**Perfect subjunctive.**

*I may have made.*

fēcerim  
fēceris  
[etc., regular]

**Perfect indicative.**

*I have made, made.*

fēcī  
fēcistī  
[etc., regular]

**Pluperfect indicative.**

*I had made.*

fēceram  
fēcerās  
[etc., regular]

**Pluperfect subjunctive.**

*I might have made.*

fēcissem  
fecissēs  
[etc., regular]

**Imperative.**

**fac, make (thou)**

**facitō, thou shalt make**

**facitō, he shall make**

**facite, make (ye)**

**facitōte, ye shall make**

**faciuntō, they shall make**

### Participle.

*Present.* faciens, making

*Future.* facturus, -a, -um, being about to make

### Infinitive.

*Present.* facere, to make

*Perfect.* fēcisse, to have made

*Future.* factūrum, -am, -um esse, to be about to make

### Gerund.

faciendī, of making, etc.

### Supine.

factum, to make

factū, to make

**493. Passive voice.—Fīō, fierī, factus sum.**

#### Present indicative.

I am (being) made, become.

fīō

fīs

fīt

fīmus

fītis

fīunt

#### Pluperfect indicative.

I had been made.

factus, -a, -um eram

erās [etc.]

#### Future-perfect indicative.

I shall have been made.

factus, -a, -um erō

eris [etc.]

#### Imperfect indicative.

I was (being) made, became

fīēbam

fīēbās [etc.]

#### Present subjunctive.

I may be made, may become.

fīam

fīas

fīat

fīāmus

fīātis

fīant

#### Future indicative.

I shall be made, shall become.

fīam

fīēs [etc.]

#### Perfect indicative.

I have been made, was made. I might be made, might become.

factus, -a, -um sum

es [etc.]

#### Imperfect subjunctive.

fīerem

fīerēs [etc.]

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have been made.***factus, -a, -um sim****sīs** [etc.]**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have been made.***factus, -a, -um essem****essēs** [etc.]**Imperative.****fī,** *be thou made***fīte,** *be ye made***Infinitive.****Present.** *fieri, to be made, to become***Perfect.** *factum, -am, -um esse, to have been made***Future.** *factum irī, to be about to be made***Perfect participle.****factus, -a, -um, having been made****Gerundive.****faciendus, -a, -um, worthy to be made**

## DEPONENT VERBS.

**494. First conjugation.—Populor, populārī, populātus sum, to plunder.**

**Present indicative.***I plunder, am plundering, etc.***populor****populāris (-re)****populātūr** [etc.]**Imperfect indicative.***I was plundering.***populābar** [etc.]**Future indicative.***I shall plunder.***populābor** [etc.]**Perfect indicative.***I have plundered.***populātūs sum** [etc.]**Pluperfect indicative.***I had plundered.***populātūs erām** [etc.]**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have plundered.***populātūs erō** [etc.]**Present subjunctive.***I may plunder.***populer****populēris (-re)****populētur** [etc.]**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might plunder.***populārer** [etc.]**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have plundered.***populātūs sim** [etc.]**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have plundered.***populātūs essem** [etc.]

**Imperative.***populāre, plunder (thou)**populāminī, plunder ye**populātor, thou shalt plunder**populātor, he shall plunder**populantor, they shall plunder***Infinitive.***Present. populārī, to plunder**Perfect. populātum, -am, -um esse, to have plundered***Perfect participle.***populātus, -a, -um, having plundered***Gerundive.***populandus, -a, -um, worthy to be plundered***Active forms.***Present participle. populāns, plundering**Future participle. populātūrus, -a, -um, being about to plunder**First supine. populātum, to plunder**Second supine. populātū, to plunder [plunder]**Future infinitive. populātūrum, -am, -um esse, to be about to**Gerund. populandī, of plundering [etc.]*

**495. Second conjugation.—Vereor, verērī, veritus sum, to fear.**

**Present indicative.***I fear, am fearing, etc.**vereor**verēris (-re)**verētur [etc.]***Perfect indicative.***I have feared.**veritus sum [etc.]***Imperfect indicative.***I was fearing.**verēbar [etc.]***Pluperfect indicative.***I had feared.**veritus eram [etc.]***Future indicative.***I shall fear.**verēbor [etc.]***Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have feared.**veritus erō [etc.]*

**Present subjunctive.***I may fear.***vereār****vereāris (-re)****vereātur [etc.]****Imperfect subjunctive.***I might fear.***verērēr [etc.]****Perfect subjunctive.***I may have feared.***veritus sim [etc.]****Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have feared.***veritus essem [etc.]****Imperative.****verēre, fear (thou)****verēminī, fear (ye)****verētor, thou shalt fear****verētor, he shall fear      verentor, they shall fear****Infinitive.***Present. verērī, to fear**Perfect. veritum, -am, -um esse, to have feared***Perfect participle.****veritus, -a, -um, having feared****Gerundive.****verendus, -a, -um, worthy to be feared****Active forms.***Present participle. verēns, fearing**Future participle. veritūrus, -a, -um, being about to fear**First supine. veritum, to fear**Second supine. veritū, to fear**Future infinitive. veritūrum, -am, -um esse, to be about to fear**Gerund. verendī, of fearing, etc.***496. Third conjugation.—Utor, ūtī, ūsus sum, to use.****Present indicative.***I use, am using, etc.***ūtor****ūteris (-re)****ūtitur****ūtimur****ūtiminī****ūtuntur****Imperfect indicative.***I was using.***ūtēbar [etc.]****Future indicative.***I shall use.***ūtar****ūtēris (-re)****ūtētūr [etc.]**

**Perfect indicative.**

*I have used.*  
**ūsus sum** [etc.]

**Pluperfect indicative.**

*I had used.*  
**ūsus eram** [etc.]

**Future-perfect indicative.**

*I shall have used.*  
**ūsus erō** [etc.]

**Present subjunctive.**

*I may use.*  
**ūtar**  
**ūtāris (-re)**  
**ūtātur** [etc.]

**Imperfect subjunctive.**

*I might use.*  
**ūterer** [etc.]

**Perfect subjunctive.**

*I may have used.*  
**ūsus sim** [etc.]

**Pluperfect subjunctive.**

*I might have used.*  
**ūsus essem** [etc.]

**Imperative.**

<b>ūtere, (use thou)</b>	<b>ūtiminī, use (ye)</b>
<b>ūtitor, thou shalt use</b>	
<b>ūtitor, he shall use</b>	<b>ūtuntor, they shall use</b>

**Infinitive.**

*Present.* **ūtī**, *to use*  
*Perfect.* **ūsum, -am, -um esse**, *to have used*

**Perfect participle.**

**ūsus, -a, -um**, *having used*

**Gerundive.**

**ūtendus, -a, -um**, *worthy to be used*

**Active forms.**

<i>Present participle.</i>	<b>ūtēns</b> , <i>using</i>
<i>Future participle.</i>	<b>ūsūrus, -a, -um</b> , <i>being about to use</i>
<i>First supine.</i>	<b>ūsum</b> , <i>to use</i>
<i>Second supine.</i>	<b>ūsū</b> , <i>to use</i>
<i>Future infinitive.</i>	<b>ūsūrum, -am, -um esse</b> , <i>to be about to use</i>
<i>Gerund.</i>	<b>ūtendī</b> , <i>of using, etc.</i>

**497. Fourth conjugation.—Potior, potiri, potitus sum, to capture.**

**Present indicative.**

*I capture, am capturing, etc.*

potior

potīris (-re)

potītur

potīmur

potīminī

potiuntur

**Pluperfect indicative.**

*I had captured.*

potītus eram [etc.]

**Future-perfect indicative.**

*I shall have captured.*

potītus erō [etc.]

**Present subjunctive.**

*I may capture.*

potiar

potiāris (-re)

potiātur [etc.]

**Imperfect subjunctive.**

*I might capture.*

potīrer [etc.]

**Perfect subjunctive.**

*I may have captured.*

potītus sim [etc.]

**Future indicative.**

*I shall capture.*

potiar

potiēris (-re)

potiētur [etc.]

**Perfect indicative.**

*I have captured.*

potītus sum [etc.]

**Pluperfect subjunctive.**

*I might have captured.*

potītus essem [etc.]

**Imperative.**

potire, capture (thou)

potīminī, capture (ye)

potītor, thou shalt capture

potītor, he shall capture

potiuntor, they shall capture

**Infinitive.**

*Present. potiri, to capture*

*Perfect. potītum, -am, -um esse, to have captured*

**Perfect participle.**

potītus, -a, -um, having captured

**Gerundive.**

potiendus, -a, -um, worthy to be captured

### Active forms.

- Present participle.* **potiēns**, *capturing*  
*Future participle.* **potītūrus, -a, -um**, *being about to capture*  
*First supine.* **potītūm**, *to capture*  
*Second supine.* **potītū**, *to capture* [ture]  
*Future infinitive.* **potītūrum, -am, -um esse**, *to be about to cap-*  
*Gerund.* **potiēndī**, *of capturing*, etc.

### PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

The *active voice* of the ‘Periphrastic’ is formed by annexing forms of **sum** to the *future active participle*; the *passive*, by annexing these forms to the *gerundive*.

**498. Active voice.—Amātūrus sum, I am about to love.**

**Present indicative.**

*I am about to love.*

**amātūrus, -a, -um sum**

**es**

**est**

**amātūrī, -ae, -a sumus**  
**estis**  
**sunt**

**Imperfect indicative.**

*I was about to love.*

**amātūrus, -a, -um eram**

**erās [etc.]**

**Future indicative.**

*I shall be about to love.*

**amātūrus, -a, -um erō**

**eris [etc.]**

**Perfect indicative.**

*I have been, was, about to love.*

**amātūrus, -a, -um fuī**

**fuistī [etc.]**

**Pluperfect indicative.**

*I had been about to love.*

**amātūrus, -a, -um fueram**

**fuerās [etc.]**

**Future-perfect indicative.**

*I shall have been about to love.*

**amātūrus, -a, -um fuerō**

**fueris [etc.]**

**Present subjunctive.**

*I may be about to love.*

**amātūrus, -a, -um sim**

**sīs [etc.]**

**Imperfect subjunctive.**

*I might be about to love.*

**amātūrus, -a, -um essem**

**essēs [etc.]**

**Perfect subjunctive.**

*I may have been about to love.*  
amātūrus, -a, -um fuerim

fueris [etc.]

**Pluperfect subjunctive.**

*I might have been about to love.*  
amātūrus, -a, -um fuisse  
fuisse [etc.]

**Infinitive.**

*Present.* amātūrum, -am, -um esse, to be about to love

*Perfect.* amātūrum, -am, -um fuisse, to have been about to love

**499. Passive voice.—Amandus sum, I deserve to be loved.****Present indicative.**

*I am to be, ought to be, loved.*

amandus, -a, -um sum

es

est

amandī, -ae, -a sumus

estis

sunt

**Imperfect indicative.**

*I was to be, deserved to be,  
loved.*

amandus, -a, -um eram

**Future indicative.**

*I shall deserve to be, ought to  
be, loved.*

amandus, -a, -um erō

**Perfect indicative.**

*I was worthy to be, have de-  
served to be, loved.*

amandus, -a, -um fuī

**Pluperfect indicative.**

*I had deserved to be loved.*

amandus, -a, -um fueram

**Future-perfect indicative.**

*I shall have deserved to be loved.*

amandus, -a, -um fuerō

**Present subjunctive.**

*I may be worthy to be loved.*

amandus, -a, -um sim

**Imperfect subjunctive.**

*I might be worthy to be loved.*

amandus, -a, -um essem

**Perfect subjunctive.**

*I may have deserved to be loved.*

amandus, -a, -um fuerim

**Pluperfect subjunctive.**

*I might have deserved to be loved.*

amandus, -a, -um fuisse

**Infinitive.**

*Present.* amandum, -am, -um esse, to deserve to be loved

*Perfect.* amandum, -am, -um fuisse, to have deserved to be loved

## QUANTITY RULES OF LATIN VOWELS AND SYLLABLES.

**500. General rules of quantity.**—1. A vowel before another vowel or **h** is *short*: except in the fifth declension, where **ē** follows a vowel, as **diēī**; **ī** in the genitive singular **īus**, see (286); **ī** in some forms of **fiō**, see (493).

2. Diphthongs and vowels formed by contraction are *long*: as **ae** in **fossae**, and **ō** in the penult of **cōgō** (= **con** + **agō**).

3. A syllable ending in a *short* vowel before a mute followed by **l** or **r** is *common*, i.e., long or short; as, **pātris**.

4. A vowel is *always long* before **ns**, **nf**, **gn**, and often long before **scō**, **scor** in inceptive verbs; as, **regēns**, **īferō**, **rēgnum**, **proficīscor**.

5. Compounds retain their *long* vowels; as, **dē-dūcō**.

6. Vowels are *long* in the nominative singular ending of nouns and adjectives which *increase long* in the genitive: **vōx**, **vōcis**; **ferāx**, **ferācis**.

7. A syllable is long by *nature* when it contains a long vowel or diphthong; long by *position* when it precedes two or more consonants or a double consonant.

**501. Quantity of final syllables ending in a vowel.**—In words of *more than one* syllable, final **a**, **e**, **y** are *short*, final **i**, **o**, **u** are *long*.

1. Final **a** is *short*, as **vālla**: except ablative of first declension, as **tubā**; imperative of first conjugation, as **portā**; most uninflected words, as **posteā**, **intrā**, but not so **ita**.

2. Final **e** is *short*, as **mīlite**: except ablative of fifth declension, as **spē**; imperative of second conjugation, as

dēlē; most adverbs derived from adjectives of second declension, as māximē.

3. Final i is *long*, as flūminī: except nisi, cui; final i is common in mihi, tibi, sibi, ibi, ubi.

4. Final o is *long*, as pōnō: except homo, ego, modo, octo, duo.

5. Final u is always *long*, as adventū.

**502. Quantity of final syllables ending in a consonant.—**

1. All final syllables ending in a *single* consonant *other than s* are *short*, as amātur, reget.

2. Of final syllables in s, as, es, os are *long*, is, us, ys are *short*.

3. Final as is *long*, as tubās, audiās.

4. Final es is *long*, as amēs, diēs: except nominative and vocative singular, third declension, where the genitive ending is -etis, -idis, -itis, as obses, miles; es (from sum) and compounds of sum, as potes.

5. Final os is *long*, as virōs.

6. Final is is *short*, as mīlitis, amātis: except dative and ablative plural, as puerīs, altīs; accusative plural, third declension, as fīnīs (= finēs); second person singular, present indicative active, fourth conjugation, as audīs; vīs (noun and verb from volō), fīs, sīs, velīs, nōlīs, mālis, possīs, and īs (from eō).

7. Final us is *short*, as mūrus, amātus: except genitive singular, and nominative and accusative plural, fourth declension, as exercitūs; nominative third declension, when long u occurs in the genitive, as virtūs, virtūtis.

**503. Quantity of monosyllables.—**1. All monosyllables that end in a *vowel* are *long*, as ā, sī, dē, sē, etc.: except the enclitic que.

2. Declined or conjugated monosyllables that end in a *consonant* follow the rules given.

3. Monosyllabic nouns and adjectives have a *long* vowel in the nominative when they end in a *consonant*, as **mōs**, **sōl**, **pēs**, **pār**: but not so **vir**.

4. Monosyllabic *particles* that end in a consonant are *short*, as **cis**, **in**, **nec**, **per**, etc.: except **nōn**, **quīn**, and adverbs in **c**, as **sīc**.

**504. Quantity of verb stems and endings.**—1. A vowel is always *short* before final **m**, **r**, and **t**.

2. A vowel is always *short* before another vowel (except in certain forms of **fiō**), **nd**, and **nt**.

3. Final **a**, **i**, **o**, and **u** are *long*; final **e** is *short*, except in the imperative active, second person singular, in the second conjugation; as, **monē**.

4. Before final **s**, **a** and **e** are *long*; **i** and **u** are *short*, except that in the present indicative active, second person singular, in the fourth conjugation, **ī** is long; as, **audīs**: see also (502), 6.

## LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

- ā, ab**, prep. + *abl.*, *from, by*; chapt. 7 (last sentence), *away*.
- abdō, abdere**, *abdidī, abditum, hide*.
- absum, abesse, āfūī, be distant.**
- ac** (before consonants only), conj., *and*; chapt. 19 (first sentence), *than*.
- accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, go towards, approach**; chapt. 13 (with *ad* + *acc.*); chapt. 7, *be inspired in* (with *dat.*).
- accidō, -cidere, -cidi, (no supine), happen.**
- acciō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, receive, accept**; chapt. 33, *suffer*.
- acclivis, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), sloping upward.**
- acclivitās, -tātis, fem., slope (upward).**
- accommōdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, adjust, fit, put on.**
- acervus, -i, mas., a pile, a heap.**
- aciēs, -ēi, fem., line of battle, an army.**
- āriter, adv., sharply, desperately.**
- ad, prep. + acc., to, towards, near;** *ad* + gerundive, *for*; chapt. 1, *ad eōs, against them*; chapt. 31, *according to*.
- adaequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, make equal to, equal.**
- addūcō, see dūcō, lead to, bring, lead (with *ad* + *acc.*).**
- adeō, -ire, -īvī .iī, -itum, go to; chapt. 7, reach.**
- adiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw to, hurl.**
- aditus, -ūs, mas., access, approach, admittance.**
- adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvī, -iūtum, aid, help.**
- administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, execute, attend to.**
- adorior, -orīrī, -ortussum, depon., rise up against, attack.**
- Aduatucī, -ōrum, mas., a Belgic tribe living on the west bank of the Meuse.**
- adventus, -ūs, mas., approach, arrival.**
- adversus, -a, -um, adj., opposite; literally, turned to or towards.**
- aedificium, -ī, neut., a building.**
- aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, build**
- Aeduī, -ōrum, mas., a Gallic tribe living between the upper waters of the Saone and Loire**
- Aeduus, -a, -um, adj., Aeduan.**
- aegrē, adv., with difficulty, barely.**
- aequāliter, adv., uniformly, evenly.**
- aestās, -tātis, fem., summer.**
- aestuārium, -i, neut., a sea-marsh;**

- literally, *relating to the tide or sea.*
- aetās, -tātis, fem., *age, old age.*
- afferō, -ferre, attulī, allātum, *bring to, carry to.*
- affinitās, -tātis, fem., *relationship (by marriage).*
- ager, agrī, mas., *a field, land (which is cultivated).*
- agger, aggeris, mas., *a mound, materials for a mound (chapt. 20).*
- aggredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, *depon., approach, attack.*
- agmen, -minis, neut., *the line of march (the marching column).*
- agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, *drive; chapt. 12, 30, bring up; 20, do; 21, carry.*
- aliās . . . aliās, adv., *at one time . . . at another.*
- aliēnus, -a, -um, adj., *another's, of others.*
- aliter, adv., *otherwise.*
- alius, alia, aliud, adj., *other, another, different; alius aliam in partem, one in one direction, another in another.*
- alter, -era, -erum, adj., *the other (of two); other, another.*
- altitūdō, -dinis, fem., *height.*
- altus, -a, -um, adj., *high, tall, deep.*
- Ambiānī, -ōrum, mas., *a Belgic tribe, from whose name is derived the modern Amiens.*
- amicitia, -ae, fem., *friendship.*
- amicus, -i, mas., *a friend.*
- amicus, -a, -um, adj., *friendly.*
- āmittō, see mittō, *lose, let go (away).*
- amplificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *increase.*
- amplius, neut. compar., used adverbially or as noun, *more.*
- Andēs, -ium, mas., *a Gallic tribe north of the Loire.*
- Andocumborius, -i, mas., *a chief man among the Remi.*
- angustus, -a, -um, adj., *narrow, difficult; chapt. 25, in angustō, at a crisis.*
- animus, -i, mas., *mind, courage, feelings; chapt. 1, character.*
- annus, -i, mas., *a year.*
- ante, adv., *formerly; prep. + acc., before (of place and time).*
- antiquitus, adv., *in olden times.*
- apertus, -a, -um, adj., *open; chapt. 23, exposed, unprotected.*
- appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *call (name); chapt. 25, address.*
- appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to draw near, approach.*
- apud, prep. + acc., *near, among.*
- arbitror, -trārī, -trātus sum, *depon., think, suppose.*
- arbor, arboris, fem., *a tree.*
- arcessō, -cessere, -cessivī, -ces- sītum, *summon, invite.*
- arduuus, -a, -um, adj., *high, difficult (of ascent), steep.*
- ariēs, -ietis, mas., *a battering ram*
- arma, -ōrum, neut., *arms, weapons.*
- armātūra, -ae, fem., *equipment.*
- armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *arm equip.*
- ascendō, -cendere, -cendi, -cēn- sum, *climb, ascend.*
- ascēnsus, -ūs, mas., *an ascent;*

- chapt. 33, *the way up, means of ascent.*
- at**, conj., *but.*
- atque**, conj., *and also, and;* chapt. 6, *as.*
- Atrebātēs**, -um, mas., a tribe in Northeastern Gaul.
- attīngō**, -tingere, attīgī, attāctum, *touch upon, reach, border upon.*
- auctōritās**, -tatis, fem., *influence, power, authority* (not military or political).
- audācter**, adv., *boldly.*
- audeō**, audēre, ausus sum, semi-depon., *dare, venture.*
- audiō**, -ire, -ivī, -itum, *listen to;* chapt. 12, *hear; 31, hear of or about.*
- Aulerçī**, -ōrum, mas., a people of Central Gaul, consisting of several tribes.
- Aurunculēius**, -ī, mas., a lieutenant of Caesar.
- aut**, conj., *or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or.*
- autem**, conj., *but, moreover.*
- auxilia**, -ōrum, neut., *auxiliaries* (as opposed to the regular heavy-armed Roman infantry).
- auxilium**, -ī, neut., *help, aid, assistance.*
- āvertō**, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *turn away from.*
- Axona**, -ae, fem., a river of Northern Gaul (now called Aisne) flowing into the Isara.
- Baculus**, -ī, mas., a centurion in Caesar's army.
- Baleāris**, -is, -e, adj., *Balearic;* the Balearic islands, famous for their slingers, lie in the Mediterranean off the coast of Spain.
- barbarus**, -a, -um, adj., *barbarian;* plur., *the barbarians* (used of the Gauls).
- Belgae**, -ārum, mas., *the Belgians,* a warlike people in the northern part of Gaul.
- Bellovacī**, -ōrum, mas., a powerful Belgic tribe, between the Seine and the Oise.
- bellum**, -ī, neut., *war.*
- Bibrax**, -actis, fem., a town of the Remi.
- Boduōgnātūs**, -ī, mas., a leader of the Nervii.
- Bratuspantium**, -ī, neut., a town of the Bellovaci.
- brevitās**, -tatis, fem., *shortness; with temporis, want of time.*
- Britannia**, -ae, fem., *Britain.*
- cadāver**, -eris, neut., *a dead body.*
- cadō**, cadere, cecidī, cāsum, *fall, be killed.*
- Caeroesi**, -ōrum, mas., a tribe in Northern Gaul.
- Caesar**, -aris, mas., *Caesar,* Caius Julius Caesar, conqueror of Gaul.
- calamitās**, -tatis, fem., *calamity, disaster.*
- Caletī**, -ōrum, mas., a tribe in Normandy, on the Seine.
- cālō**, -ōnis, mas., *a camp-servant, groom.*

- captīvus, -a, -um, adj., *taken captive*; mas. as noun, *captive, prisoner*.  
 caput, capitīs, neut., *the head*; less exactly, *person*.  
**Carnutēs**, -um, mas., a tribe in Central Gaul.  
 castellūm, -ī, neut., *a redoubt, stronghold*.  
 castra, -ōrum, neut., *a camp*.  
 cāsus, -ūs, mas., *event; chapt. 21, chance; 31, misfortune*.  
 causa, -ae, fem., *a cause, a reason*; causā, *for the sake of*, used like a prep., following the genitive.  
**cēdō**, cēdere, cessī, cessum, *retreat, give way*.  
 celeritās, -tātis, fem., *swiftness, quickness*.  
 celeriter, adv., *quickly, speedily*.  
**cēlō**, -āre, -āvī, ātum, *conceal, hide*.  
 centum, indeclin. num. adj., *a hundred*.  
 centuriō, -ōnis, mas., *a centurion*; a subordinate officer commanding a century (a hundred men).  
 certus, -a, -um, adj., *certain*; certiōrem (-ēs) facere, *inform* (with acc. + infin.).  
 (cēterus), -a, -um, adj., *the rest of*; usually plur. as noun, *the rest*.  
**Cimbrī**, -ōrum, mas., a German tribe in Jutland, defeated by Marius B.C. 101.  
 circiter, adv., *about, not far from*.  
 circuitus, -ūs, mas., *a circuit, a circumference*.  
 circum, prep. + acc., *around, about*.  
**circumdō**, see dō, *put around; less exactly, surround*.  
**circumiciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *place around, throw around*.  
**circummūniō**, see mūniō, *fortify around, fortify*.  
**circumveniō**, see veniō, *surround, outflank*.  
 cis, prep. + acc., *on this side of*.  
 cīterior, -iōr, -iōs, adj. (comparative — two terminations), *hither, nearer*.  
**citrā**, prep. + acc., *on this side of*.  
 cīvitās, -tātis, fem., *a state*.  
 clāmor, īris, mas., *a shout*.  
**claudō**, claudere, clausī, clausum, *close, bring up*.  
 clēmentia, -ae, fem., *kindness, clemency*.  
**coacervō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *pile up*.  
 coepī, coepisse, coepitus sum, *began*.  
**cōgnōscō**, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitum, *find out, ascertain*.  
**cōgō**, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum, *collect, assemble, force*.  
 cohors, -hortis, fem., *a cohort* (the tenth part of a legion).  
 cohortātiō, -ōnis, fem., *an encouraging, encouragement*.  
 cohortor, -tārī, -tātus sum, *depon., encourage, urge*.  
 collis, -is, mas., *a hill*.  
 comes, comitis, mas., *a comrade*.

- commeātus**, -ūs, mas., *supplies, provisions.*
- commemorō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *remind one of, state, relate.*
- committō**, see **mittō**, *join; with proelium, begin the battle.*
- commodē**, adv., *easily, readily.*
- commoveō**, see **moveō**, *alarm, disturb.*
- commūnis**, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), *common, general.*
- commūtatiō**, -ōnis, fem., *a change.*
- comparō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *prepare, get ready.*
- compellō**, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum, *drive together, drive.*
- compleō**, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *fill.*
- complūrēs**, -rēs, -ria (-ra), adj. (of two terminations), *very many, a great many.*
- concidō**, -cidere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *cut to pieces.*
- concilium**, -ī, neut., *a council (of war), an assembly.*
- concurrō**, -currere, -curri (-curri), -cursum, *run together, rush up.*
- condiciō**, -ōnis, fem., *terms, condition.*
- Condrūsī**, -ōrum, mas., *a Belgic tribe on the Meuse.*
- condūcō**, see **dūcō**, *bring together, hire.*
- cōnferō**, -ferre, -tuli, collātum, *bring together, collect; sē cōnferre, betake one's self.*
- cōnfertus**, -a, -um, adj., *crowded, dense.*
- cōnficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *accomplish; chapt. 4, raise; 23, 25, 27, exhaust.*
- cōfidō**, -fidere, -fisus sum, semi-depon., *believe in, trust.*
- cōfirmō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *establish; chapt. 15, assure; 19, encourage.*
- cōfligō**, -fligere, -fīxi, -fictum, *fight, contend.*
- congredior**, -gredi, -gressus sum, depon., *engage (in battle), fight.*
- cōniciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *throw together; chapt. 6, 27, hurl; 23, drive; 16, 28, place.*
- coniungō**, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūncutum, *join, unite.*
- coniūrō**, -iūrāre, -iūrāvī, -iūrātum, *conspire, swear together.*
- conlocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *place, station (of troops).*
- cōnor**, -nārī, -nātus sum, depon., *attempt, undertake, try.*
- cōnsanguineus**, -a, -um, adj., *akin (by blood); plur. as noun, kinsmen.*
- cōnscribō**, see **scribō**, *enroll, enlist.*
- cōnsensus**, -ūs, mas., *consent, agreement.*
- cōsentīō**, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, *agree, combine, conspire.*
- cōsequor**, see **sequor**, depon., *follow, secure, obtain.*
- cōservō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *spare, save.*
- cōnsidō**, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessum, *settle, encamp.*
- cōsilium**, -ī, neut., *wise counsel, a plan; chapt. 17, a suggestion.*

cōnsimilis, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), *very like, quite similar.*

cōnsistō, -sistere, -stiti, -stitum, *halt, make a stand; chapt. 33, depend upon.*

cōnspectus, -ūs, mas., *sight, view.*  
cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spēxi, -spec-tum, *see, behold.*

cōnspicor, -cāri, -cātus sum, *depon., see, observe.*

cōnstanter, adv., *uniformly, steadily.*

cōnstituō, -tuere, -tuī, -tūtum, *decide; chapt. 12, 30, set up; 8, 19, arrange, station.*

cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvi, -suētum, *become accustomed; in the perf. tenses, be accus-tomed.*

cōnsuētūdō, -dīnis, fem., *custom, habit.*

contemptus, -ūs, mas., *contempt, scorn.*

contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -ten-tum, *struggle, fight, hasten.*

contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -ten-tum, *hold in, keep (within bounds), keep.*

contrā, adv. and prep. + acc., *against, in opposition.*

contrārius, -a, -um, adj., *opposite.*  
contumēlia, -ae, fem., *an insult, an outrage.*

conveniō, see **veniō**, *meet, as-semble; chapt. 19, be agreed upon.*

convertō, -vertere, -verti, -ver-sum, *turn; signa convertere, face about.*

convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *sum-mon, call together.*

cōpia, -ae, fem., *an abundance, plenty; (plur.) forces.*

cornū, -ūs, neut., *a horn, a wing (of an army).*

corpus, -oris, neut., *the body; chapt. 10, 27, a (dead) body.*

cortex, -ticis, mas. and fem., *bark.*

cotidīē, adv., *daily, every day.*

Cotta, -ae, mas., a lieutenant of Caesar.

Crassus, -ī, mas., a son of the Triumvir and a lieutenant in Caesar's army.

crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., *fre-quent, numerous, thick.*

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidi, crē-ditum, *believe, trust.*

Crēs, Crētis, mas., *a Cretan (an inhabitant of Crete).*

cruciātus, -ūs, mas., *torture, suf-fering.*

cum, prep. + abl., *with; conj., when, while, after, since; chapt. 29, second sentence, although; cum prīnum, as soon as.*

cūnctus, -a, -um, adj., *all, all together.*

cupiō, cupere, -pīvī, -pītum, *desire eagerly, be eager.*

Curiosolitēs, -um, mas., *a people of the West of Gaul.*

cursus, -ūs, mas., *a running, speed.*

custodiā, -ae, fem., *protection, guard (the state of being guarded).*

- dē, prep. + *abl.*, *from, with respect to*; chapt. 7, *about, for*; 32, *from*.
- dēbeō, -bēre, -buī, -bitum, *owe, ought, must.*
- decem, indecl. num. adj., *ten.*
- dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum, *decree, decide.*
- dēcertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *contend, fight.*
- decimus, -a, -um, num. adj., *tenth.*
- dēclīvis, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), *sloping down.*
- decumānus, -a, -um, adj., *de-  
cuman (belonging to the tenth):*  
*porta decumāna, the rear gate*  
*of the camp, near which the*  
*tenth legion was posted.*
- dēcurrō, -currere, -currī (-cu-  
currī), *-cursum, run down:*
- dēditīcius, -a, -um, adj., *sur-  
rendered*; chapt. 17, as noun,  
*prisoners; 32, subjects.*
- dēditiō, -ōnis, fem., *surrender.*
- dēdō, dēdere, dēdīdī, dēditum,  
*surrender.*
- dēdūcō, see dūcō, *lead down or*  
*away*; chapt. 10, 31, *bring*;  
33, *take away*; 35, *place.*
- dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēn-  
sum, *defend, protect.*
- dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, fem., *a defence,*  
*a protection.*
- dēfēnsor, -ōris, mas., *a defender.*
- dēferō, see ferō, *carry down,*  
*report*; chapt. 4, *confer, bestow.*
- dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum,  
*fail, fall away*; chapt. 14, *re-  
volt.*
- dēficiō, -icere, -fēcī, -iectum,  
*throw down.*
- dēiectus, -ūs, mas., *a slope, a*  
*declivity.*
- deinde, adv., *then, next.*
- dēleō, -lēre, -lēvī, -lētum,  
*destroy.*
- dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum,  
*choose, select.*
- dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,  
*explain, show, state.*
- dēnique, adv., *at last, finally;*  
chapt. 33, *at any rate.*
- dēnsus, -a, -um, adj., *dense, thick.*
- dēpōnō, see pōnō, *lay down*  
*(aside).*
- dēpopulor, -lārī, -lātus sum,  
*depon., lay waste.*
- dēprecōr, -cārī, -cātus sum,  
*depon., avert by prayer, beseech,*  
*beg.*
- dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum,  
*desert, abandon, give up.*
- dēsistō, -sistere, -stītī, -stītum,  
*stop, desist from, cease.*
- dēspectus, -ūs, mas., *a view*  
*(from above), a prospect.*
- dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *give*  
*up hope*; chapt. 24, *despair*  
*of.*
- dēspoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,  
*despoil, strip, deprive.*
- dēsum, -esse, -fuī, *be lacking, be*  
*wanting.*
- dēterreō, -terrēre, -terrūī, -ter-  
ritum, *frighten off, prevent.*
- dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāc-  
tum, *take, snatch (away).*
- dētrūdō, -trūdere, -trūsī, -trū-  
sum, *remove, slip off.*

dēvēniō, see veniō, *come away, come* (from one place to another).

dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., *right.*

diciō, -ōnis, fem., *control, sway.*

dicō, dicere, dixī, dictum, *say, mention, speak.*

diēs, -ēi, mas. and fem., *a day.*

difficilis, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), *difficult.*

difficultās, -tatis, fem., *difficulty.*

diligenter, adv., *carefully, with care.*

dīmētior, -mētirī, -mēnsus sum, depon., *measure, measure off.*

dīmīcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *fight, contend* (to a finish).

dīmittō, see mittō, *let go away, send out, dismiss.*

dīripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, *plunder, pillage.*

discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -ces-  
sum, *depart.*

discessus, -ūs, mas., *a departure.*

dissipō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *scatter, disperse.*

distineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum,  
*keep apart, separate, divide.*

diū, adv., *for a long time; diū-  
tius, longer.*

diversus, -a, -um, adj., *diverse;*  
chapt. 22, *separated;* 23, *different;* 24, *routed.*

dīvinus, -a, -um, adj., *divine.*

Dīvitiācus, -i, mas., *a leader of  
the Aedui, brother of Dum-  
norix.*

dō, dare, dedi, datum, *give;*  
obsidēs inter sē dare, *exchange  
hostages.*

doceō, -cēre, -cuī, doctum,

*teach; chapt. 5, explain; 20,  
direct.*

domesticus, -a, -um, adj., (*of the  
house*), *domestic, native.*

domicilium, -i, neut., *an abode,  
a dwelling-place.*

dominor, -nārī, -nātus sum,  
depon., *rule.*

domus, -ūs, (-ī), fem., *a home, a  
house; locative domī, at home.*  
dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *have  
doubt; with the infin., hesitate;  
with the subjunc., doubt.*

ducenti, -ae, -a, num. adj., *two  
hundred.*

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum,  
*lead, conduct.*

dum, conj., *while.*

duo, -duae, -duo, num. adj., *two.*  
duodecimus, -a, -um, num. adj.,  
*twelfth.*

duodēviginti, indecl. num. adj.,  
*eighteen.*

duplex, gen. duplicis, adj. of  
one termination, *double, two-  
fold.*

dux, ducis, mas., *a leader, a  
guide, a commander.*

ē, ex, prep. + abl., *from, out of;*  
chapt. 6, *second sent., after.*

Eburōnēs, -um, mas., *a Belgic  
tribe situated between the  
Meuse and the Rhine.*

ēditus, -a, -um, adj., *raised,  
elevated.*

ēdūcō, see dūcō, *lead out, lead  
forth.*

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum,  
*accomplish, bring (it) about.*

- ēgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, depon., go forth, march out.
- ēgregiē, adv., remarkably, excellently.
- ēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, select, choose.
- ēmittō, see mittō, let go, hurl.
- emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptum, buy.
- ēnāscor, -nāscī, -nātus sum, depon., grow out, sprout forth.
- enim, conj., for.
- eō, adv., thither, there.
- eō, īre, īvī (ii), itum, go.
- eques, equitīs, mas., a horseman, plur., cavalry (consisting of Roman troops).
- equester, -trīs, -tre, gen., equestris, adj. (of three terminations), of cavalry, cavalry.
- equitātūs -ūs, mas., cavalry.
- ergō, adv., therefore, then.
- ēruptiō, -ōnis, fem., a sally, a sortie.
- Esuvīi, -ōrum, mas., a Gallic tribe in Normandy.
- et, conj., and; et . . . et, both . . . and.
- etiam, conj., also, even.
- ēventus, -ūs, mas., result, issue.
- ex, see ē.
- exagitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, harass, persecute.
- exanimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, make breathless, exhaust.
- exaudiō, see audiō, hear distinctly.
- excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, withdraw, retire.
- excursiō, -ōnis, fem., a sally.
- excūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum. excuse.
- exeō, -īre, -īvī -īī, -itum, go out, go forth.
- exercitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, train, drill.
- exercitus, -ūs, mas., an army.
- exiguitās, -tātis, fem., scantiness; with temporis, want of time.
- eximius, -a, -um, adj., excellent, remarkable.
- existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, think, suppose, believe.
- expeditus, -a, -um, adj., unincumbered, light-armed.
- expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, drive out.
- experior, -perīrī, -pertus sum, depon., try, risk.
- explōrātor, -tōris, mas., a scout.
- explorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, search, find out.
- expūgnō, see pūgnō, storm.
- exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, await, wait to see (sī, whether, etc.).
- exstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, pile up, build up.
- extrēmus, -a, -um, adj., farthest.
- facile, adv., easily.
- facilis, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), easy.
- faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, make, do.
- facultās, -tātis, fem., opportunity; chapt. 1, means.
- fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsum, fail, deceive, disappoint.
- fastigātūs, -a, -um, adj., sloping, inclined.

**ferāx**, gen., *ferācis*, adj. (of one termination), *fertile*.

**ferē**, adv., *nearly*, *almost*.

**ferō**, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātum*, *carry*, *bear*, *endure*.

**fertilitās**, *-tātis*, fem., *fertility*, *productiveness*.

**ferus**, *-a*, *-um*, adj., *wild*, *fierce*.

**fidēs**, *-eī*, fem., *faith*, *confidence*, *protection*.

**filius**, *-i*, mas., *a son*.

**fīnis**, *-is*, mas., *an end*; (plur.) *boundaries*, *territory*.

**fīnitimus**, *-a*, *-um*, adj., *neigh-bouring*; mas. plur. as noun, *neighbours*.

**fiō**, *fierī*, *factus sum*, *be made*, *happen*, *become*.

**flūmen**, *-minis*, neut., *a river*.

**fors**, *fortis*, fem., *chance*, *fate*.

**forte**, old abl. as adv., *by chance*.

**fortis**, *-is*, *-e*, adj. (of two terminations), *brave*, *courageous*.

**fortiter**, adv., *bravely*.

**fortūna**, *-ae*, fem., *fortune*, *fate*.

**fossa**, *-ae*, fem., *a ditch*, *a trench*.

**frāter**, *frātris*, mas., *a brother*.

**fremitus**, *-ūs*, mas., *a noise*, *an uproar*.

**frōns**, *frontis*, fem., *brow*, *front*; *ā fronte*, *in front*.

**frūmentārius**, *-a*, *-um*, adj., *of grain*; *rēs frūmentāria*, fem., *supply*.

**frūmentum**, *-i*, neut., *corn*, *grain*.

**fuga**, *-ae*, fem., *flight*.

**fugiō**, *fugere*, *fūgī*, *fugitum*, *flee*, *fly*, *escape*.

**fugō**, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātum*, *rout*, *put to flight*.

**fūmus**, *-i*, mas., *smoke*.

**funditor**, *-tōris*, mas., *a slinger*,

**furor**, *-ōris*, mas., *madness*, *frenzy*.

**Galba**, *æ*, mas., *a legatus of Caesar*; chapt. 4, 13, *King of the Suessiones*.

**galea**, *-ae*, fem., *a helmet (of leather, worn by cavalry)*.

**Gallia**, *-ae*, fem., *Gaul (country occupying all Northern Italy)*.

**Gallus**, *-a*, *-um*, adj., *of Gaul*; as noun, *a Gaul*, *the Gauls*.

**gēns**, *gentis*, fem., *a tribe*, *a class*.

**Germānus**, *-a*, *-um*, adj., *German*; plur. as noun, *the Germans*.

**gerō**, *gerere*, *gessī*, *gestum*, *carry on*, *wage (war)*.

**gladius**, *-i*, mas., *a sword*.

**grātia**, *-ae*, fem., *favor*, *influence*, *popularity*.

**gravis**, *-is*, *-e*, adj. (of two terminations), *heavy*, *severe*, *serious*.

**habeō**, *-bēre*, *-bui*, *-bitum*, *have*, *hold*, *possess*.

**hibernācula**, *-ōrum*, neut., *winter-quarters*.

**hibernus**, *-a*, *-um*, adj., *of winter*; neut. plur. (with *castra*), *winter-quarters*.

**hic**, *haec*, *hōc*, demons. pron., *this*, *he*, etc.

**hiemō**, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātum*, *winter*, *pass the winter*.

**homō**, *hominis*, mas., *a man*.

**honor**, *-ōris*, mas., *honor*, *respect*.

**hostis**, -*is*, mas., *an enemy* (of the state), *the enemy*.

**iaceō**, **iacēre**, **iacuī**, **iactum**, *lie, lie dead*; chapt. 27, *iacentibus*, (pres. participle), *the slain*.

**iaciō**, *iacere, iēcī*, **iactum**, *hurl; chapt. 12, throw up.*

**iam**, adv., *now, already*.

**ibi**, adv., *there*.

**Iccius**, -*ī*, mas., a nobleman of the Remi.

**idem**, *eadem, idem*, demons. pron., *the same*.

**identidem**, adv., *again and again*.

**idōneus**, -*a*, -*um*, adj., *suitable, fit*.

**ignis**, -*is*, mas., *fire*; chapt. 7, *camp-fire*; 33, *signal-fire*.

**ille, illa, illud**, demons. pron., *he, that*.

**Illyricum**, -*ī*, neut., *Illyria* (country east of the Adriatic, belonging to Caesar's province).

**impedimentum**, -*ī*, neut., *a hindrance*; plur., *baggage, baggage-train, pack-animals*.

**impediō**, -*dire*, -*dīvī*, -*ditum*, *entangle, hinder*.

**impellō**, -*pellere*, -*puli*, -*pulsum*, *drive on, incite, influence*.

**imperātor**, -*tōris*, mas., *a commander* (in chief), *a general*.

**imperātūm**, -*ī*, neut., *a command, an order*.

**imperium**, -*ī*, neut., *command, control, power*.

**imperō**, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*, *command, require, direct*.

**impetrō**, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*, *obtain*

(a request), *obtain* (anything by a request).

**impetus**, -*ūs*, mas., *an attack, a charge*; chapt. 6, *fury*.

**imprōvīsus**, -*a*, -*um*, adj., *unforeseen*; *dē imprōvīsō*, *unexpectedly*.

**in**, prep. + acc and abl.; with acc., *into, against, upon* (with verbs of motion); with abl., *in, on, among*; chapt. 32, *in the case of*.

**incendō**, -*cendere*, -*cendī*, -*cēnsum*, *burn, set fire to*.

**incidō**, -*cidere*, -*cidi*, -*cāsum*, *fall in with, befall, happen*.

**incidō**, -*cidere*, -*cidi*, -*cīsum*, *notch, cut into*.

**incipiō**, -*cipere*, -*cēpī*, -*ceptum*, *begin*.

**incitō**, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*, *urge on, incitatō cursū*, *at full speed*.

**incolō**, -*colere*, -*colui*, (no supine), *inhabit, live*.

**incrēdibilis**, -*is*, -*e*, adj. (of two terminations), *incredible, marvellous*.

**increpitō**, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*, *taunt, upbraid*.

**incūsō**, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*, *blame, chide*.

**inde**, adv., *thence, after that, then*.

**indignitās**, -*tātis*, fem., *disgrace, outrage*.

**indiligerter**, adv., *carelessly, negligently*.

**indūcō**, see *dūcō*, *draw on, cover*.

**induō**, -*duere*, -*duī*, -*dūtum*, *put on*.

**īneō**, -īre, -īvī (-īi), -ītum, enter upon, undertake, begin.

**īnermis**, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), unarmed.

**īnferior**, -iōr, -ius, adj. (comparative—two terminations), lower; chapt. 8, inferior.

**īferō**, -fērē, -tūlī, illātūm, bring in; chapt. 14, bring upon; 15, import; 25, (signa) īferre, carry forward; 25, (spē) illātā, inspire in; 29, wage; 32, inflict.

**īfimus**, -a, -um, adj., lowest; chapt. 18, at the bottom.

**īflectō**, -flectere, -flēxī, -flexum, bend down.

**īgredior**, -gredī, -gressus sum, depon., enter, march in.

**īnimicus**, -a, -um, adj., unfriendly; as noun, an enemy (personal).

**īnīquitās**, -tātis, fem., unevenness, inequality.

**īnīquus**, -a, -um, adj., unfavourable, unfair.

**īnitium**, -i, neut., a beginning.

**īniūria**, -ae, fem., injustice, wrong.

**īnnītor**, -nītī, -nisus (-nīxus) sum, depon., lean upon.

**īnsequor**, see **sequor**, depon., pursue, follow up.

**īnsidiae**, -ārum, fem., an ambush, a trap.

**īnsīgne**, -is, neut., a badge, a decoration.

**īnsistō**, -sistere, -stītī, (no supine), stand upon.

**īnstār**, neut. indeclin. (an image);

like, in the manner of (with gen.).

**īnstō**, -stārē, -stītī, -stātūm, press forward, press on.

**īnstruō**, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctūm, draw up (of troops); chapt. 30, build.

**īntellegō**, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctūm, know, learn.

**īnter**, prep. + acc., between, among.

**īntercēdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, go between, move between.

**īntercipiō**, -cipere, -cēpī, -cep-tūm, intercept (obstruct in motion).

**īnterclūdō**, -clūdēre, -clūsī, -clūsum, cut off, shut off.

**īntereā**, adv., meanwhile, in the mean time.

**īnterficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectūm, kill, put to death.

**īntericiō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectūm, throw in (between); chapt. 17, place among; 22, intervene.

**īnterim**, adv., meanwhile.

**īnterior**, -iōr, -ius, adj. (comparative—two terminations), interior, inner.

**īntermittō**, see **mittō**, cease, dis-continue.

**īnterneciō**, -ōnis, fem., extermi-nation, annihilation.

**īnterscindō**, -scindere, -scidī, -scissūm, cut down, demolish.

**īntersum**, see **sum**, be between; impers., it concerns (with gen.).

**īntervallūm**, -i, neut., distance (between two things).

- intexō, -texere, -texuī, -textum,** *weave together.*
- intrā, prep. + acc., within.**
- intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, enter,** *penetrate.*
- intrōdūcō, see dūcō, lead in,** *bring in.*
- intrōmittō, see mittō, let go in,** *send in.*
- intrōrsus, adv., within, inside.**
- inūsitātus, -a, -um, adj., un-** *usual, unwonted.*
- inūtilis, -is, -e, adj. (of two** *terminations), useless; chapt.*  
*16, incapable.*
- inveniō, see veniō, come upon,** *find, learn.*
- inveterāscō, -rāscere, -rāvī, (no** *supine), grow old in, gain a*  
*firm footing.*
- invideō, see videō, envy (with** *dut), be jealous of.*
- ipse, -a, -um, intensive pron., he,** *self.*
- irrideō, -ridēre, -risī, -risum,** *laugh at, taunt.*
- is, ea, id, idem, or personal** *pron., he, that.*
- ita, adv., thus, so; chapt. 1, ita** *utī, as, just as.*
- Italia, -ae, fem., Italy.**
- itaque, adv., therefore.**
- item, adv., likewise.**
- iter, itineris, neut., a road, a** *march; iter facere, to*  
*march.*
- iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum,** *order, bid, command.*
- iūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, judge,** *think, decide.*
- iugum, -ī, neut., a yoke; a ridge** *(of a row or chain of hills).*
- iūs, iūris, neut., right, justice, law.**
- iūstitia, -ae, fem., justice, fair** *dealing.*
- iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum, aid,** *help, assist.*
- iūxtā, adv., near by, next.**
- L, initial letter of Lūcius.**
- Labīēnus, -ī, mas., a legatus of** *Caesar in Gaul.*
- lapis, lapidis, mas., a stone.**
- lassitūdō, -dinis, fem., fatigue.**
- lateō, -tēre, -tuī, (no supine), lie** *concealed, be concealed.*
- lātitūdō, -dinis, fem., width,** *breadth.*
- lātus, -a, -um, adj., broad, wide.**
- latus, -eris, neut., the side; ab** *latere, on the flank.*
- laxō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, open out,** *widén, extend.*
- lēgātiō, -ōnis, fem., an embassy,** *a legation.*
- lēgātus, -ī, mas., an ambassador,** *an envoy, a lieutenant.*
- legiō, -ōnis, fem., a legion.**
- legiōnārius, -a, -um, adj., legion-** *ary, of a legion.*
- lēniter, adv., gently.**
- levis, -is, -e, adj. (of two termina-** *tions), light.*
- levitās, -tatis, fem., lightness,** *fickleness, inconstancy.*
- lēx, lēgis, fem., a law, a statute.**
- liberāliter, adv., kindly, gener-** *ously.*
- liberī, -ōrum, mas., children (of** *free parents).*

**littera**, -ae, fem., *a letter* (of the alphabet); plur., *letters*, *letter* (an epistle).

**locus**, -i, mas., *a place*; neut. plur., *loca*, -ōrum; chapt. 26, *condition*.

**longē**, adv., *far, at a distance*.

**longus**, -a, -um, adj., *long*.

**loquor**, *loqui*, *locūtus sum, depon.*, *speak, talk*.

**Lūcius**, -i, mas., *a Roman praenomen* (the first name).

**lūx**, *lūcis*, fem., *light*; *prīmā lūce*, *at early dawn, at day-break*.

**lūxuria**, -ae, fem., *luxury*.

**māchinātiō**, -ōnis, fem., *a machine, an engine, a contrivance*.

**magis**, adv., *more, rather*; *magis . . . quam*, *rather . . . than*.

**magistrātus**, -ūs, mas., *a magistracy, a magistrate*.

**māgnitūdō**, -dinis, fem., *greatness, size*.

**māgnopere**, adv., *very much, very earnestly*; *māgnō opere* (see *opus*).

**māgnus**, -a, -um, adj., *great, large*.

**māior**, *māior*, *māius*, adj., *greater*; *māiōrēs* (*nātū*), *elders*.

**maleficium**, -i, neut., *harm, mischief*.

**mālō**, *mālle*, *māluī*, (no supine), *prefer, wish rather*.

**mandō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *direct, instruct*; chapt. 24, *consign*.

**manipulus**, -i, mas., *a company* (a third of a cohort), *a maniple*.

**mānsuētūdō**, -dinis, fem., *kindness, gentleness*.

**manus**, -ūs, fem., *the hand*; *a band, a company*.

**maritimus**, -a, -um, adj., *marine, of the sea*.

**mātūrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *hasten, make haste*.

**māximē**, adv., *especially, very*.

**medius**, -a, -um, adj., *middle of*.

**memoria**, -ae, fem., *memory, recollection*.

**Menapii**, -ōrum, mas., *a Gallic tribe between the Meuse and the Scheldt*.

**mercātor**, -tōris, mas., *a trader* (who carries his own goods abroad).

**meritum**, -i, neut., *merit, desert*.

**miles**, -itis, mas., *a soldier*.

**militāris**, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), *of the soldiers, military*; see *rēs*.

**mille**, indecl. num. adj., *a thousand*; plur. as noun, **milia**, **mīlium**.

**minimē**, adv., *least, very little*.

**minus**, neuter acc. of the comparative **minor**, used as an adv., *less*; chapt. 9, *not*.

**miser**, -era, -erum, adj., *wretched, miserable*.

**misericordia**, -ae, fem., *pity, clemency, compassion*.

**mittō**, *mittere*, *mīsī*, *missum, send, despatch*.

**mōbilitās**, -tātis, fem., *inconstancy, mobility*.

**modo**, adv., *merely, only*; **nōn modo**, *not only*.

- modus**, -ī, mas., *manner*; ad  
hunc modum, *after this  
fashion*.
- moenia**, -ium, neut., *fortifications,  
walls* (of a city).
- molestē** adv., *heavily*; **molestē  
ferre**, *be vexed or annoyed*.
- moneō**, monēre, monūi, moni-  
tum, *direct, advise, warn*.
- mōns**, montis, mas., *a mountain*.
- mora**, -ae, fem., *delay*.
- Morini**, -ōrum, mas., a Belgic  
tribe on the seacoast opposite  
Kent.
- moror**, -rārī, -rātus sum, depon.,  
*delay, linger, stay*.
- mōs**, mōris, mas., *custom*; plur.,  
*habits, character*.
- moveō**, movēre, mōvī, mōtum,  
*move; castra movēre, break  
camp*.
- mulier**, -eris, fem., *a woman*.
- multitūdō**, -dinis, fem., *a multi-  
tude, a great number*.
- multus**, -a, -um, adj., *much,  
many*.
- mūnīmentum**, -ī, neut., *a defence,  
a fortification*.
- mūniō**, -ire, -īvī, -ītum, *fortify;  
with castra, make*.
- mūnītiō**, -ōnis, fem., *a fortifica-  
tion, works*.
- mūrus**, -ī, mas., *a wall (a city  
wall)*.
- nam**, conj., *for*.
- nāscor**, nāscī, nātus sum, depon.,  
*be born, spring up*.
- nātiō**, -ōnis, fem., *a nation, a  
tribe*.
- nātūra**, -ae, fem., *nature, charac-  
ter*.
- nātus**, -ūs, mas., *birth*; māiōrēs  
(nātū), *elders, old men*.
- nāvō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *do with  
zeal; operam nāvāre, do one's  
best*.
- nē**, conj., *that . . . not; with  
verbs of fearing, that, lest;  
with imperative, not (neg. ne),  
nec, conj., nor*.
- necessārius**, -a, -um, adj., *neces-  
sary, urgent*.
- necessitās**, -tatis, fem., *necessity;*  
chapt. 11, *compulsion*; 22, *ur-  
gency*.
- negōtium**, -ī, neut., *business;*  
chapt. 17, *trouble*; negōtium  
*dare, employ*.
- nēmō**, nēminis, mas. and fem.,  
*no one*.
- neque (nec)**, adv., *and not; neque  
. . . neque, neither . . . nor*.
- nēquīquam**, adv., *in vain*.
- Nervius**, -a, -um, adj., *Nerrian;*  
plur., *the Nerrii, a powerful  
tribe of Belgic Gaul*.
- neuter**, -tra, -trum, gen. neu-  
trius, adj., *neither*; plur. mas.,  
as a noun, *neither party*.
- nēve (neu)**, conj., *and . . . not  
(continuing a negative); chapt.  
21, and that . . . not*.
- nihil**, indecl. neut., *nothing; acc.  
as adv., not at all*.
- nisi**, conj., *unless, if not, except*.
- nōbilitās**, -tatis, fem., *nobility;  
concretely, the nobles*.
- noctū**, abl. used abverbially, *by  
night*.

- nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, (no supine), *be unwilling, not wish.*
- nōmen, -minis, neut., *a name.*
- nōminātim, adv., *by name (individually).*
- nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *name, mention, call by name.*
- nōn, adv., *not; nōn modo, not only.*
- nōndum, adv., *not yet.*
- nōnnūllus, -a, -um, adj., *some; plur., as a noun, some persons.*
- nōnus, -a, -um, num. adj., *ninth.*
- nōs, pers. pron. of the first pers. (plur. of *ego*), *we.*
- noster, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. pron., *our; plur., nostrī, our men (as a noun).*
- novem, indecl. num. adj., *nine.*
- N**oviodūnum, -ī, neut., *a town of the Suessiones on the Aisne.*
- novus, -a -um, adj., *new; chapt. 31, strange, novel.*
- novissimus, -a, -um (superl. of *novus*), *the last, latest; with agmen, the rear; plur. mas. as a noun, novissimī, men or soldiers in the rear.*
- nox, noctis, fem., *night.*
- nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *strip, lay bare; chapt. 23, expose, leave unguarded.*
- nūllus, -a, -um, gen. nūlliūs, adj., *not any, no; as a noun, no one.*
- numerus, -ī, mas., *a number.*
- N**umida, -ae, mas., *a Numidian (employed in the Roman army as cavalry).*
- nunc, adv., *now.*
- nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *announce, report, send news.*
- nūntius, -ī, mas., *message, messenger, news.*
- ob, prep. + acc., *on account of.*
- obdūcō, see dūcō, *lead against; with fossam, dig, construct.*
- obitus, -ūs, mas., *a going to (death), destruction, death.*
- obses, -idis, mas. and fem., *hostage (one under guard).*
- obtineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *hold, occupy, possess.*
- obveniō, see veniō (with dat.), *encounter, fall in with, meet.*
- occāsus, -ūs, mas., *a falling, a setting (of the sun).*
- occidō, -cidere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *slay, kill.*
- occultus, -a, -um, adj., *concealed; in occultō, in secret.*
- occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *seize, occupy (in a military sense); chapt. 19, be engaged.*
- occurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum (with dat.), *meet, come upon, fall in with.*
- O**ceanus, -ī, mas., *the ocean.*
- octāvus, -a, -um, num. adj., *eighth.*
- octō, indecl. num. adj., *eight.*
- offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum, *bring before, offer, carry, bring.*
- omittō, see mittō, *let go by, neglect (with cōnsilium).*
- omnis, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), *all, the whole of.*
- onus, -eris, neut., *a burden, a load.*

- opera**, -ae, fem., *pains, service*; **operam nāvāre**, *do one's best*.
- opiniō**, -ōnis, fem., *notion*; chapt. 3, *expectation*; 8, 24, *reputation*; 35, *impression*.
- oportet**, *oportēre*, *oportuit*, *impers.*, *it behoves, it ought*.
- oppidānus**, -a, -um, adj., *of the town*; plur. mas. as a noun, *the townsmen*.
- oppidum**, -i, neut., *a town* (usually fortified).
- opportūnus**, -a, -um, adj., *convenient, opportune, suitable*.
- oppūgnātiō**, -ōnis, fem., *a siege, an attack* (in a formal manner against a fortified place).
- oppūgnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *attack* (a defended position).
- (**ops**), **opis**, fem., *help*; chapt. 14, *resources*; 31, *aid*.
- optimus**, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of *bonus*), *best*.
- opus**, -eris, neut., *work*; **māgnō** *opere* (**māgnopere**), *very much*; **quantō opere** (**quantopere**), *how greatly*.
- opus**, *indecl. neut.*, *need*; **opus est**, *there is need*.
- ōrātiō**, -ōnis, fem., *a speech, a talk, an address*.
- ōrdō**, *dinis*, mas., *a row, an order, a company, a rank* (of soldiers).
- orior**, *orīrī*, *ortus sum*, *depon.*, *arise*; chapt. 4, *be descended from*.
- Osismī**, -ōrum, mas., *a Gallic tribe in Brittany*.
- P.**, initial letter of **Pūblīus**.
- pābulum**, -i, neut., *fodder* (for animals).
- pācō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *subdue, pacify*.
- Paemānī**, -ōrum, mas., *a tribe of the Belgians*.
- paene**, adv., *almost, nearly*.
- palūs**, -ūdis, fem., *a swamp, a marsh*.
- pandō**, *pandere*, *pandi*, *passum, spread out*; perf. particip., *passus, outstretched* (as an adj.).
- pār**, *paris*, adj. (of one termination), *equal*.
- parātus**, -a, -um, adj., *prepared, ready*.
- pars**, *partis*, fem., *part, side*; less exactly, *direction*.
- partim**, acc. as adv., *partly, in part*.
- parvulus**, -a, -um, adj., *slight, small, unimportant*.
- passus**, -a, -um, see *pandō*.
- passus**, -ūs, mas., *a pace* (five Roman feet); *milia passuum, a mile*.
- patefaciō**, see *faciō*, *open, lay open*.
- pateō**, -tēre, -tuī, (no supine), *extend, be open, spread*.
- pater**, *patris*, mas., *a father*; plur., *ancestors*.
- patiōr**, *patī*, *passus sum, depon, endure, permit*; chapt. 15, *allow*; 31, *suffer*.
- patrius**, -a, -um, adj., *ancestral, of one's fathers*.
- paucus**, -a, -um, adj. (mostly in the plur.), *few; a few*.

- paulātim**, adv., *gradually, little by little.*
- paulisper**, adv., *a short while.*
- paulō**, abl. as adv., (by) *a little, just a little.*
- paululum**, adv., *slightly, a very little.*
- paulum**, adv., *a little, somewhat.*
- pāx, pācis**, fem., *peace.*
- pedes**, -itis, mas., *a footman; plur. collectively, the infantry.*
- pedester**, -tris, -tre, adj. (of three terminations), *of infantry, infantry.*
- Pedius**, -i, mas., *a nephew and legatus of Caesar.*
- pellis**, -is, fem., *a skin, a hide (of an animal).*
- pellō**, *pellere, pepuli, pulsum, drive, defeat, rout.*
- per**, prep. + acc., *through, by means of;* chapt. 10, *over.*
- perfērō**, see **ferō**, *carry through;* chapt. 14, *endure;* 35, *spread among.*
- perīclitor**, -tārī, -tātus sum, *depon., test, try, make a trial.*
- perīculum**, -i, neut., *a trial, an attempt; hence, danger, peril.*
- permittō**, see **mittō**, *give up (over), entrust.*
- permoveō**, see **moveō**, *alarm, (move thoroughly).*
- perspiciō**, -spicere, -spēxī, -spectum, *see through, learn, find, see.*
- persuādeō**, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, *persuade (with dat.), induce.*
- perterreō**, -terrēre, -terrūl, -territum, *terrify, frighten greatly.*
- pertineō**, -tinēre, -tinuī, (no supine), *extend, reach (out), tend.*
- perturbō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *throw into disorder, alarm.*
- perveniō**, see **veniō**, *reach, arrive at.*
- pēs**, *pedis, mas., a foot.*
- petō**, *petere, petivī or petiī, petitum, seek, ask for, beg.*
- pilum**, -i, neut., *a javelin.*
- plānitiēs**, -ēi, fem., *a plain.*
- plērumque**, acc. sing. neut. as adv., *generally, usually.*
- plērusque**, -aque, -umque, adj. (only in the plur.), *most of, very many.*
- plūrimus**, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of multus), *most; acc. sing. neut. as adv. (plūrimūm), most, very much; plūrimūm valēre, have very great influence; plūrimūm posse, be very powerful.*
- pollicēor**, -licērī, -licitus sum, *depon., promise, offer.*
- pondus**, -eris, neut., *weight.*
- pōnō**, *pōnere, posuī, positum, place, put, pitch.*
- pōns**, *pontis, mas., a bridge.*
- populor**, -lārī, -lātus sum, *depon., lay waste, plunder.*
- populus**, -i, mas., *a people.*
- porrēctus**, -a, -um, adj., *stretched forth, extensive, long.*
- porta**, -ae, fem., *a gate.*
- portō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *carry, bring.*

- poscō, poscere, poposcī, (no su-**pine), *demand, claim.*
- possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -ses-**sum, *possess, occupy (in a mili-tary sense).*
- possum, posse, potuī, can, be**able; **plūrimum posse,** *be very powerful.*
- post,** prep. + acc., *after, behind.*
- posteā, adv., afterwards.**
- postquam,** adverbial conj., *after, after that, when.*
- postrēmō, adv., finally, lastly, at**last.
- postridiē, adv., the next day.**
- postridiē, adv., the next day;** **postridiē ēius diēi,** adv. phrase, *the next day after that.*
- postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, de-**mand, *claim, ask.*
- potēns, potentis, adj. (of one**termination), *powerful, mighty.*
- potestās, -tātis, fem., power,**control; chapt. 6, *ability.*
- potior, potirī, potitus sum,**depon., *capture (with abl.), get control of.*
- potius, adv., rather; potius . . .**quam, *rather . . . than.*
- prae,** prep. + abl., *in comparison with.*
- praeacūtus, -a, -um, adj., sharp-**ened (to a point), *pointed.*
- praebeō, -bēre, -buī, -bitum,**furnish, *offer.*
- praeceps, -cipitis, adj. (of one**termination), *headlong, in haste.*
- praedor, -dārī, -dātus sum,**depon., *plunder, raid, take booty.*
- praefectus, -ī, mas., a general,**an officer, *a commander.*
- praeferō, see ferō, place before;**with sē, *outdo (show one's self better than).*
- praeſiciō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum,**place in command of.
- praemittō, see mittō, send for-**ward, *send ahead.*
- praeſcribō, see scribō, give di-**rections, *order, direct.*
- praeſertim, adv., especially.**
- praeſidium, -ī, neut., defence,**guard, *protection.*
- praeſtō, -stāre, -stītī, -stitum,**stand before; chapt. 15, excel; 27, *display; 31, impers., it is better.*
- praeſum, see ſum, be in com-**mand of (with the dat.).
- praetereā, adv., besides, further-**more.
- premō, premere, pressī, pres-**ſum, *press hard, attack fiercely.*
- prīmipilus, -ī, mas., the chief or**first centurion.
- prīmō, adv., at first.**
- prīmum, adv., first, in the first**place; **cum prīmum,** as soon as.
- prīmus, -a, -um, adj., first; plur.**mas., **prīmī,** the foremost men, the chief or leading men.
- prīnceps, -ipis, mas. (adj. of one**termination used as a noun), chief man, *chief, leader.*
- prior, -iōr, -ius, adj. (compara-**tive—two terminations), former; plur. mas. as a noun, **pri-**orēs, *men (soldiers) in front.*

- priſtinus**, -a, -um, adj., *former, old, old time.*
- priuſquam**, conj., adv., *before;*  
prius and quam are often separated by intervening words.
- prō**, prep. + abl., *in front of;* chapt. 14, *in behalf of;* 25, *in proportion to;* 31, *according to.*
- prōcēdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *go forward, advance, proceed.*
- procūl**, adv., *afar off, at a distance.*
- prōcumbō**, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitum, *lean forward, fall, sink down (to the ground).*
- proelior**, -ārī, -ātus sum, depon., *figū (in war).*
- proelium**, -i neut., *a battle, contest, engagement.*
- profectiō**, -ōnis. fem., *a departure, a setting out.*
- proficiscor**, proficisci, *profectus sum, depon., set out, go.*
- prōfligō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *rout, put to flight, defeat.*
- profugiō**, see *fugiō, flee, escape.*
- prōgnātus**, -a, -um, adj., *descended from, sprung from.*
- prōgredior**, -gredi, -gressus sum, depon., *advance, march forward, go forward.*
- prohibeō**, -hibēre, -hibui, -hibitum, *prevent, cut off, keep from.*
- prōiciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *throw away, abandon, give up.*
- prōmoveō**, see *moveō, move forward, push forward.*
- prope**, adv., *almost, nearly.*
- properō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *hasten.*
- propinquātās**, -tātis, fem., *nearness, relation (by blood), kinship.*
- propinquus**, -a, -um, adj., *near, close, related (by blood).*
- prōpōnō**, see *pōnō, place before;* chapt. 2, *display, raise.*
- propter**, prep. + acc., *on account of.*
- proptereā**, adv., *on this account; with quod, because.*
- prōpūgnō**, see *pūgnō, fight (rush out fighting), fight in defence.*
- prōsequor**, see *sequor, pursue;* chapt. 5, *address.*
- prōspectus**, -ūs, mas., *view, outlook.*
- prōtinus**, adv., *immediately, instantly.*
- prōturbō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *rout, drive off (in confusion).*
- prōvideō**, see *videō, foresee, provide, arrange beforehand.*
- prōvincia**, -ae, fem., *a province (governed by a Roman magistrate).*
- prōvolō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *fly (rush) forth, hurry forward.*
- proximē**, adv., *recently, last, lately.*
- proximus**, -a, -um, adj., *next, nearest (last).*
- prūdentia**, -ae, fem., *discretion, wisdom, foresight.*
- pūblicus**, -a, -um, adj., *public;* rēs pūblica, fem., *the state.*
- Pūblius**, -i, mas., *a Roman praenomen (the first name).*
- puer**, puerī, mas., *boy; plur., children.*

pūgna, -ae, fem., *a fight, a battle.*  
 pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūm, *fight,*  
*engage, contend.*

**Q**, initial letter of **Quīntus**.  
 quā, adv., *where* (chapt. 33).  
 qua, indefinite pron., see **quis**.  
 quadrīngentī, -ae, -a, num. adj.,

*four hundred.*

quaerō, *quaerere, quaesīvī,*  
*quaesītūm, ask, inquire.*

quam, adv., *than, as* (after comparatives and comparative expressions); chapt. 32, 2d sent., and chapt. 33, indef. pron., *any.*

quamvis, indef. pron. from  
 quīvis, *quaevīs*, etc. (which  
 see); chapt. 31, *any you please.*

quantopere, adv., *how greatly,*

*how very much; see opus.*

quantus, -a, -um, adj., *how great?,*  
*how much (many)?*

quartus, -a, -um, num. adj.,  
*fourth.*

quattuor, indecl. num. adj., *four.*

que, enclitic conj., *and* (always  
 appended to the word or to  
 some part of the phrase or  
 sentence which it connects).

qui, quae, quod, rel. pron., *who,*  
*which, what, that.*

quīdam, *quaedam, quoddam,*  
 indef. pron., *a certain, certain.*

quidem, adv., *indeed, certainly;*  
 nē . . . quidem, *not . . . even*  
 (emphasizing the word placed  
 between them).

quīn, conj., *but that, that, from*  
 (after negative verbs of *preventing, hindering, doubting, etc.*).

quīnam, *quaenam, quodnam,*  
 interrog. pron., *who?, what?*  
 quīndecim, indecl. num. adj.,  
*fifteen.*

quīngentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., *five*  
*hundred.*

quīnquāgintā, indecl. num. adj.,  
*fifty.*

quīnque, indecl. num. adj., *five.*

Quīntus, -ī, mas., *a Roman*  
*praenomen (the first name).*

quis, quae, quid, interrog. pron.,  
*who?, which?, what?; indef.*  
*pron., any, any one, anything*  
 (after sī, nisi, nē, num).

quisquam, (no fem.), quidquam  
 (quicquam), indef. pron., *any*  
*one, anything* (in negative  
 clauses).

quisque, *quaeque, quidque,*  
 indef. pron., *each, each one.*

quisquis, *quaequae, quicquid*  
 (quidquid), indef. pron., *who-*  
*ever, whatever.*

quīvis, *quaevīs, quidvis*, indef.  
 pron., *who you please, any*  
*one.*

quō, adv., *whither, where;* chapt.  
 25, = ut eō, *so that thereby*  
 (*so that by it.*)

quod, conj., *because;* chapt. 17,  
*the fact that.*

quoque, conj., *also* (emphasizing  
 the word which it follows).

rāmus, -ī, mas., *a branch, abough.*  
 ratiō, -ōnis, fem., *a reckoning, a*  
*plan, a reason.*

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum,  
*take back, receive; sē recipere,*

- betake one's self; chapt. 12, sē recipere, recover.*
- reddō**, *reddere, reddidī, redditum, give back, render.*
- redeō**, -ire, -ivī (ii), -itum, *go back, return; less exactly, decline (slope).*
- redigō**, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, *reduce; chapt. 27, render.*
- redintegrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *renew, restore.*
- Redonēs**, -um, mas., *a Gallic people in Brittany.*
- redūcō**, see **dūcō**, *lead back, bring back.*
- referō**, -ferre, *rettulī, relātum, bring back; report, announce.*
- refringō**, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum, *break in, break open.*
- regiō**, -ōnis, fem., *a region, a district, a part (of the country).*
- regō**, *regere, rēxī, rēctum, to rule, have control of.*
- rēgnūm**, -ī, neut., *kingdom, power; plur., sovereignty.*
- rēiciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *drive back, hurl back, drive off.*
- relanguēscō**, -languēscere, -languī, *(no supine), be weakened, languish away.*
- relinquō**, -linquere, -līquī, -līctum, *leave behind, leave.*
- reliquus**, -a, -um, adj., *remaining, the rest of; as a noun (usually plur.), the rest.*
- Rēmī**, -ōrum, *a leading tribe of the Belgae.*
- remittō**, see **mittō**, *send or hurl back; chapt. 15, relax, give up.*
- Rēmus**, -ī, mas., *one of the Remi.*
- renūntiō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *bring back word, report, announce.*
- repellō**, -pellere, *reppuli, repulsum, drive back, repulse.*
- repentinus**, -a, -um, adj., *sudden; abl. repentinō (as adv.), suddenly.*
- reperiō**, -perīre, *repperī or reperī, repertum, find out, ascertain, find.*
- rēs**, **reī**, fem., *a thing, a fact;*  
**rēs frūmentāria**, *a grain supply;*  
**rēs pūblica**, *the state.*
- resistō**, *sistere, stiti, (nosupine), resist (with dat.), withstand.*
- respiciō**, -spicere, -spēxī, -spectum, *look back, look behind one.*
- respondeō**, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, *answer, reply.*
- retineō**, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *hold back, restrain; chapt. 21, with memoriam, preserve.*
- revertor**, -vertī, -versus sum, *depon., go back, return; active forms in the perfect system,*  
*revertī, reverteram, etc.*
- revocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *call back, call away, recall.*
- rēx**, **rēgis**, mas., *a king.*
- Rhēnus**, -ī, mas., *the Rhine.*
- rīpa**, -ae, fem., *a bank, a river-bank.*
- rogō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *ask, ask for.*
- Rōmānus**, -a, -um, adj., *Roman;*  
*as a noun, a Roman.*
- rubus**, -ī, mas., *a bramble-bush, a bramble.*
- rūmor**, -ōris, mas., *a report, a rumour.*
- rūpēs**, -is, fem., *a cliff, a rock.*

**rūrsus**, adv., *again, in turn, back again.*

**rūs, rūris**, neut., *country; locative, rūrī, in the country.*

**Sabinus**, -ī, mas., a lieutenant of Caesar.

**Sabis**, -is, mas., (now) *the Sambre*, a river in Gaul flowing into the Meuse.

**saepēs**, -is, fem., *a hedge.*

**sagittārius**, -ī, mas., *a Bowman, an archer.*

**salūs**, -ūtis, fem., *safety, welfare.*

**sarcina**, -ae, fem., *a package, a pack; plur., baggage* (the load carried on the back of each soldier).

**saxum**, -ī, neut., *a rock.*

**scientia**, -ae, fem., *skill, knowledge.*

**scribō**, *scribere, scripsi, scriptum, write;* chapt. 29, *give an account* (in writing).

**scūtum**, -ī, neut., *a shield* (of the Roman legion) made of wood, covered with leather, convex and oblong ( $2\frac{1}{2}$  by 4 ft.).

**sectiō**, -ōnis, fem., *a cutting; hence, from dividing in lots, booty.*

**secundum**, prep. + acc., *along; chapt. 18, next to.*

**secundus**, -a, -um, num. adj., *second;* chapt. 9, *favourable.*

**sed**, conj., *but.*

**senātor**, -tōris, mas., (*an elder*), *a senator.*

**senātus**, -ūs, mas., *a senate*

(council of old men), especially the Roman senate.

**Senonēs**, -um, mas., a powerful Gallic tribe west of the Seine.

**sententia**, -ae, fem., *an opinion, a view.*

**sentis**, -is, mas., *a briar, a thorn-bush* (mostly plur.).

**septimus**, -a, -um, num. adj., *seventh.*

**Sequanus**, -a, -um, adj., *of the Sequani;* mas. plur., *the Sequani*, a Gallic tribe on the Rhone.

**sequor**, *sequi, secūtus sum, depon., follow;* chapt. 22, with *ēventus, ensue.*

**servitūs**, -tūtis, fem., *slavery, subjection.*

**servō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *watch;* chapt. 33, with *praesidia, maintain.*

**sēsē**, see *sui.*

**sex**, indecl. num. adj., *six.*

**sexāgintā**, indecl. num. adj., *sixty.*

**sexcenti**, -ae, -a, num. adj., *six hundred.*

**sī**, conj., *if;* chapt. 9, *whether.*

**sīc**, adv., *so, thus, as follows.*

**signifer**, -ferī, mas., *a standard-bearer.*

**significatiō**, -ōnis, fem., *signal, warning.*

**significō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *show, indicate, announce.*

**signum**, -ī, neut., *sign, standard;* *signa convertere, face about;*

*signa inferre, advance (to the attack).*

- silva**, -ae, fem., *a forest, woods.*  
**silvester** (-tris), -tris, -tre, adj.  
 (of three terminations), *woody, wooded.*
- simul**, adv., *at the same time.*
- sine**, prep. + abl., *without.*
- singulāris**, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), *remarkable, unique.*
- singulī**, -ae, -a, adj., *single, several, each, one at a time.*
- sinister**, -tra, -trum, adj., *left.*
- sōl, sōlis**, mas., *the sun.*
- sollicitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *in-cite, stir up, instigate.*
- sōlum**, acc. neut. as adv., *only; nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also.*
- sōlus**, -a, -um, adj., gen. sōlius, *only, alone.*
- spatiūm**, -i, neut., *space, distance; less exactly, time.*
- speciēs**, -iēi, fem., *an appearance, a sight, a show.*
- speculātor**, -tōris, mas., *a spy, a scout.*
- spēs, spei**, fem., *hope, expectation.*
- spīritus**, -ūs, mas., *breath; plur., pride, arrogance.*
- statim**, adv., *at once, immediately.*
- statiō**, -ōnis, mas., *a post, a picket; in statiōne, on guard.*
- statuō**, -tuere, -tuī, -tūtum, *dicide, determine.*
- statūra**, -ae, fem., *stature, height, size.*
- strepitus**, -ūs, mas., *noise, din.*
- studeō**, -dēre, -duī, (no supine), (with dat.), *desire; chapt. 17, pay attention to.*
- studium**, -i, neut., *eagerness, desire, fondness (for a thing).*
- sub**, prep. + abl. and acc., *under; chapt. 13, 33, towards, near to.*
- subeō**, see eō, *undergo, approach, enter.*
- subitō**, adv., *suddenly, hastily.*
- submittō**, see mittō, *send up, send, despatch (with dat.).*
- subruō**, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum, *under-mine, dig under.*
- subsequor**, see sequor, *follow up, pursue, follow on.*
- subsidiūm**, -i, neut., *relief, assistance, help.*
- succēdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *come up, approach, draw near.*
- successus**, -ūs, mas., *a coming up, an advance, a close approach.*
- Suessiōnēs**, -um, mas., *a tribe of the Belgae between the Marpe and the Isère.*
- suī, sibi, sē (sēsē)**, reflex. pron., *himself, themselves, etc.*
- sum**, esse, fuī, *be, am.*
- summa**, -ae, fem., *the sum, the total; chapt. 4, control; chapt. 23, with imperiī, chief command.*
- summus**, -a, -um, adj., *highest, top of.*
- sūmō**, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmp-tum, *take, assume, claim.*
- superior**, -iōr, -ius, adj. (comparative — two terminations), *higher, former, preceding.*
- superō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *over-come, defeat, conquer.*

**supersedeō**, -*sedēre*, -*sēdī*, -*ses-*  
sum, *refrain from*.

**supersum**, see **sum**, *survive, re-*  
*main*.

**supplex**, -*plicis*, adj. (of one  
termination), *humble; used as*  
*a noun, mas. and fem., a sup-*  
*pliant*.

**supplicātiō**, -*ōnis*, fem., *a*  
*thanksgiving (a supplication)*.

**suprā**, adv., *above, before*.

**sustentō**, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*, *hold*  
*out*.

**sustineō**, -*tinēre*, -*tinūi*, -*ten-*  
*tum, withstand; chapt. 6, with*  
*sēsē, hold out; chapt. 25, with*  
*sē, stand up*.

**suus**, -a, -um, possess. adj. pron.,  
*his (own), their (own), (reflex.)*.

**T.**, initial letter of Titus.

**tam**, adv., *so*.

**tamen**, adv., *however, nevertheless, still*.

**tantulus**, -a, -um, adj., *so small,*  
*so little*.

**tantus**, -a, -um, adj., *so great, so*  
*much*.

**tardō**, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*, *check,*  
*retard*.

**tardus**, -a, -um, adj., *slow, sluggish;* chapt. 25, *exhausted*.

**tegimentum**, -i, neut., *a covering,*  
*a cover*.

**tēlum**, -i, neut., *a weapon, a mis-*  
*sile, a javelin*.

**tempus**, -*oris*, neut., *time; chapt.*  
22, *occasion; ūnō tempore, at*  
*one and the same time; eōdem*  
*tempore, at the same time*.

**tendō**, *tendere, tetendī, tēnsum*  
*and tentum, extend, stretch out*.

**teneō**, *tenēre, tenuī, tentum,*  
*hold, keep*.

**tener**, -era, -erum, adj., *tender,*  
*young, delicate*.

**terror**, -ōris, mas., *fright, terror,*  
*alarm*.

**tertius**, -a, -um, num. adj., *third*.

**testūdō**, -*dinis*, fem., *testudo (a*  
*covering of shields)*.

**Teutonī**, -ōrum, (-ēs, -um), mas.,  
a German people in Jutland,  
defeated by Marius in B.C.  
102.

**timeō**, *timēre, timūi*, (no supine),  
*fear, be afraid*.

**Titūrius**, -i, mas., *Quintus Titu-*  
*rius Sabinus; see Sabinus*.

**Titus**, -i, mas., a Roman praeno-  
men (the first name).

**tormentum**, -i, neut., *an engine*  
*of war (for throwing missiles)*.

**totidem**, indecl. adj., *just as*  
*many, as many*.

**tōtus**, -a, -um, gen. *tōtius*, adj.,  
*entire, the whole of*.

**trabs**, *trabis*, fem., *a timber, a*  
*beam; (nom. sing. sometimes,*  
*trabēs)*.

**trādō**, *trādere, trādidī, trāditum*,  
*hand over, give ^p.*

**trādūcō**, see **dūcō**, *lead across,*  
*bring over*.

**trāns**, prep. with *acc.*, *across,*  
*over, beyond*.

**trānseō**, see **eō**, *cross over, go*  
*across, cross*.

**trānsgredior**, -*gredi*, -*gressus*  
sum, depon., *go across, cross*.

- trānsversus, -a, -um, adj., *across*; with fossa, *a cross-ditch*.
- trēs, trēs, tria, gen. trium, num. adj., *three*.
- Trēverī**, -ōrum, mas., a powerful tribe of the Belgians on the Moselle.
- tribūnus, -ī, mas., *a tribune*; with militum, *a military tribune*.
- trīdūm, -ī, neut., *three days' time, three days*.
- triplex, gen. triplicis, adj. (of one termination), *triple, three-fold*.
- tuba, -ae, fem., *a trumpet* (a straight instrument for infantry).
- tum, adv., *then*; chapt. 4, cum . . . tum, *both . . . and*.
- tumultus, -ūs, mas., *an uproar, confusion, a commotion*.
- tumulus, -ī, mas., *a hill, a mound*.
- Turonēs, -um (-ī, -ōrum), mas., a Gallic tribe on the Loire.
- turpitūdō, -dīnis, fem., *disgrace, baseness, dishonour*.
- turris, -is, fem., *a tower*.
- tūtus, -a, -um, adj., *safe, secure*.
- tuus, -a, -um, poss. pron., *your*.
- ubi, adv., *when, where*.
- ūllus, -a, -um, gen. ūlliūs, adj., *any one, any*.
- ūnā, adv. (*ūnā cum*). *together with, along with* (them).
- ūndecimus, -a, -um, num. adj., *eleventh*.
- undique, adv., *from (on) all parts, on all sides*.
- ūniversus, -a, -um, adj., *whole, all*.
- ūnus, -a, -um, gen. ūniūs, num. adj., *one, only, alone*.
- urgeō, urgēre, ursī, (no supine), *press hard*.
- ūsus, -ūs, mas., *use, practice, advantage*.
- ut (utī), conj., with indic. *as, when*; with subjunc., *so that, in order that*.
- uterque, -traque, -trumque, gen. utriusque, adj., *each of two, both*.
- ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum, depon., *use, employ, enjoy* (with abl.).
- vacuus, -a, -um, adj., *empty, free*; chapt. 12, with ab + abl., *destitute of*.
- vadum, -ī, neut., *a ford, shallows*.
- valeō, valēre, valuī, valitum, *be strong; plūrimum valēre, have very great influence*.
- vāllum, -ī, neut., *a rampart, a palisade*.
- varius, -a, -um, adj., *diverse, different, various*.
- vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *lay waste, ravage*.
- Veliocassēs**, -ium, (-ī, -ōrum). mas., a Gallic tribe on the right bank of the Seine.
- vēndō, vēndere, vēndidī, vēnditum, *sell*.
- Venellī** (Unelli), -ōrum, mas., a tribe along the west coast of Gaul.
- Veneti**, -ōrum, mas., a Gallic tribe on the west coast.

- veniō, venire, vēnī, ventum,** come, approach, go.
- verbum, -i. neut., a word, a discourse.**
- vereor, verērī, veritus sum,** depon., fear, be afraid.
- vergō, vergere, (no perfect, no supine), incline, slope, lie towards.**
- vērō, adv., in fact, in truth.**
- versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, turn,** deal with; frequently as a depon., be (remain); chapt. 24, be engaged.
- vesper, -erī, mas., the evening.**
- vetō, vetāre, vetūi, vetitum,** forbid.
- vēxillum, -i, neut., a flag.**
- vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, harass,** annoy.
- victor, -tōris, mas., a conqueror;** chapt. 24 (as adj.), victorious.
- vicus, -i, mas., a village.**
- videō, vidēre, vidi, visum,** see; as depon. in the present system of the passive, seem.
- vigilia, -ae, fem., a watch** (one of the four divisions of the night).
- vīmen, -minis, neut., a pliant twig.**
- vincō, vincere, vīci, victum,** conquer, defeat.
- vīnea, -ae, fem., vinea** (a movable shed covering a besieging party).
- vīnum, -i, neut., wine.**
- vir, virī, mas., a man.**
- Viromanduī, -ōrum, mas., a tribe of the Belgians north of the Oise.**
- virtūs, -tūtis, fem., courage,** valour (manliness).
- vis, (vīs), (plur. virēs), vigour,** strength, force.
- vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, avoid,** escape.
- vix, adv., scarcely, with difficulty.**
- volō, velle, volūi, (no supine),** wish, be willing.
- voluntās, -tātis, fem., desire, will** (good will), approval.
- vōx, vōcis, fem., voice;** plur., words, shouts
- vulgō, adv. (abl. of vulgus),** generally, everywhere.
- vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, wound,** injure, hurt.
- vulnus, -eris, neut., a wound.**

## ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

about, <i>circiter</i> , adv.; <i>dē</i> , prep. + <i>abl.</i>	army, <i>exercitus</i> , -ūs, mas.; <i>aciēs</i> , <i>aciēi</i> , fem.
about midnight, <i>dē mediā nocte</i> .	arrival, <i>adventus</i> , -ūs, mas.
above, <i>suprā</i> , adv.	arrive, <i>pervenīō</i> , (4).
abundance, <i>cōpia</i> , -ae, fem.	arrogance, <i>spiritus</i> , -ūs, mas. (in the plur.).
access, <i>aditus</i> , -ūs, mas.	as, <i>ut</i> , conj. + indic.
across, <i>trāns</i> , prep. + <i>acc.</i>	as soon as, <i>cum prīmum</i> , conj.
address, <i>prōsequor</i> ; (3).	ask, <i>rogō</i> , (1); <i>quaerō</i> , (3).
advance, <i>prōgredior</i> , (3).	ask for, <i>petō</i> , (3).
after, <i>cum</i> , conj. + pluperf. sub- junc.; <i>post</i> , prep. + <i>acc.</i>	assemble, <i>convenīō</i> , (4); <i>cōgō</i> , (3).
afterwards, <i>postea</i> , adv.	attack, <i>impetus</i> , -ūs, mas.; <i>op- pūgnō</i> , (1); <i>aggredior</i> , (3).
again, <i>rūrsus</i> , adv.	attempt, <i>cōnor</i> , (1).
against, <i>contrā</i> , prep. + <i>acc.</i>	at early dawn, <i>prīmā lūce</i> .
aid, <i>auxilium</i> , -i, neut.; <i>iuvō</i> , <i>adiuvō</i> , (1).	at first, <i>prīmō</i> , adv.
alarm, <i>commoveō</i> , (2).	at one and the same time, <i>ūnō tempore</i> .
all; <i>omnis</i> , -is, -e, adj.	at once, <i>statim</i> , adv.
almost, <i>paene</i> , adv.	at the foot of the mountain, <i>sub monte</i> .
alone, <i>sōlus</i> , -a, -um, adj.	at the same time, <i>eōdem tempore</i> .
ambassador, <i>lēgātus</i> , -i, mas.	auxiliaries, <i>auxilia</i> , -ōrum, neut.
ambush, <i>īnsidiae</i> , -ārum, fem.	avoid, <i>vītō</i> , (1).
among, <i>inter</i> , prep. + <i>acc.</i>	await, <i>exspectō</i> , (1).
and, <i>et</i> , <i>que</i> , <i>ac</i> , <i>atque</i> , conj.	
announce, <i>nūntiō</i> , <i>renūntiō</i> , (1).	
another (other), <i>alter</i> , -era, -erum, adj.	
any, <i>ūllus</i> , -a, -um, adj.	badge, <i>īnsigne</i> , -is, neut.
approach, <i>adventus</i> , -ūs, mas.	baggage, <i>impedimenta</i> , -ōrum, neut.
archer, <i>sagittārius</i> , -i, mas.	band, <i>manus</i> , -ūs, fem.
arms, <i>arma</i> , -ōrum, neut.	bank, <i>ripa</i> , -ae, fem.

- battle, *proelium*, -i, neut.  
 be, *sum*; be able, *possum*.  
 be in command of, *praesum*  
     + *dat.*  
 be very powerful, *plūrimum  
     posse*; *plūrimum valēre*.  
 be unwilling, *nōlō*.  
 bear, *ferō*.  
 beginning, *initium*, -i, neut.  
 begin battle, *proelium commit-  
     tere*.  
 behind, *post*, prep. + *acc.*.  
 beloved, *amātus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 betake one's self, *sē recipere*; *sē  
     conferre*.  
 between, *inter*, prep. + *acc.*.  
 blame, *incūsō*, (1).  
 body, *corpus*, -oris, neut.  
 boldly, *audācter*, adv.  
 borders, *fīnis*, -is, mas. (in the  
     *plur.*).  
 both . . . and, *et . . . et*, conj.  
 boundary, *fīnis*, -is, mas. (in the  
     *plur.*).  
 bowman, *sagittārius*, -i, mas.  
 boy, *puer*, pueri, mas.  
 bravely, *fortiter*, adv.  
 break camp, *castra movēre*  
 bridge, *vōns*, *pontis*, mas.  
 bring, *ferō*.  
 bring to, *addūcō*, (3).  
 bring up, *agō*, (3).  
 broad, *lātus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 brother, *frāter*, -tris, mas.  
 build, *aedificō*, (1).  
 building, *aedificiūm*, -i, neut.  
 burn, *incendō*, (3).  
 business, *negōtiūm*, -i, neut.; with  
     *dare*, to employ.  
 but, *sed*, conj.  
 but also, *sed etiām*, conj.  
 by, *ā*, *ab*, prep. + *abl.* (with  
     passive verb).  
 by night, *noctū* (as adv.).  
 calamity, *calamitās*, -tātis, fem.  
 call, *appellō*, (1).  
 camp, *castra*, -ōrum, neut.  
 captive, *captīvus*, -i, mas.  
 carry, *portō*, (1).  
 cavalry, *equēs*, *equitīs*, mas.;  
     *equitātus*, -ūs, mas.  
 cause, *causa*, -ae, fem.  
 centurion, *centuriō*, -ōnis, mas.  
 certain, *certus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 chief, *prīnceps*, -cipis, mas.  
 children, *liberi*, -ōrum, mas.  
 choose, *dēligō*, (3).  
 cohort, *cohōrs*, -hortīs, fem.  
 collect, *cōgō*, (3).  
 command, *imperium*, -i, neut.;  
     *imperō*, (1).  
 commander, *imperātor*, -tōris,  
     mas.  
 come, *veniō*, (4).  
 common, *commūnis*, -is, -e, adj.  
 conceal, *cēlō*, (1).  
 concerning, *dē*, prep. + *abl.*  
 confidence, *fīlīs*, *fideī*, fem.  
 conquer, *pellō*, *vincō*, (3); *superō*,  
     (1).  
 conspire, *coniūrō*, (1); *cōsentīō*,  
     (4).  
 contend, *dīcertō*, (1); *contendō*,  
     (3).  
 convenient, *opportūnus*, -a, -um,  
     adj.  
 corn, *frūmentum*, -i, neut.  
 council of war, *concilium*, -i,  
     neut.

- courage, *virtūs*, -*tūtis*, fem.  
 covering, *tegimentum*, -*i*, neut.  
 covering (of shields), *testūdō*, -*dinis*, fem.  
 cross, *trānseō*.  
 custom, *mōs*, *mōris*, mas.; *cōn-*  
*suētūdō*, -*dinis*, fem.  
 cut down, *interscindō*, (3).  
 cut off, *interclūdō*, (3); *prohibeō*, (2).  
 danger, *periculum*, -*i*, neut.  
 dare, *audeō*, (2).  
 dart, *tēlum*, -*i*, neut.  
 day, *diēs*, *diēi*, mas. and fem.  
 decide, *cōstituō*, (3).  
 deep, *altus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.  
 defeat, *pellō*, *vincō*, (3); *superō*, (1).  
 defence, *praesidium*, -*i*, neut.;  
*mūnimentum*, -*i*, neut.  
 defend, *dēfendō*, (3).  
 defender, *dēfensor*, -*sōris*, mas.  
 delay, *mora*, -*ae*, fem.; *moror*, (1).  
 demand, *poseō*, (3); *postulō*, (1).  
 depart, *ēgredior*, *proficīscor*, (3);  
*discēdō*, (3).  
 departure, *profectiō*, -*ōnis*, fem.  
 deprive, *dēspoliō*, (1).  
 descend (be descended) *orior*, (4).  
 desire, *studeō*, (3); *studium*, -*i*, neut. (fondness).  
 deter, *dēterreō*, (2).  
 different, *dīversus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.  
 dig (extend), *obdūcō* (with *fos-*  
*sam*), (3).  
 direct, *mandō*, (1).  
 ditch, *fossa*, -*ae*, fem.  
 divide, *distineō*, (2).  
 do, *faciō*, (3).  
 draw near to, *appropīnguō*, (1);  
for construction with verb, see  
 chapt. 10, next to last sent.;  
 19, second sent.; 31, first sent.  
draw up, *instruō*, (3).  
drive, *compellō*, (3).  
drive back, *repellō*, (3).  
drive out, *expellō*, (3).  
each (of the two), *uterque*, adj.  
easily, *facile*, adv.  
easy, *facilis*, -*is*, -*e*, adj.  
eight, *octō*, indecl. num. adj.  
either . . . or, *aut . . . aut*, conj.  
employ, *negōtium dare*.  
empty, *vacuus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.  
encourage, *cohortor*, (1); with *ut*  
+ subjunc.  
end, *finis*, -*is*, mas.  
ends of the ditches, *extrēmae*  
*fossae*.  
enemy, *hostis*, -*is*, mas. (usually  
 plur.).  
engine of war, *tormentum*, -*i*,  
neut.  
enroll, *cōscrībō*, (3).  
enter, *intrō*, (1).  
enter upon, *ineō*.  
entire, *tōtus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.  
entrust, *permittō*, (3).  
envoy, *lēgātus*, -*i*, mas.  
equal, *adacquō*, (1); for construc-  
tion with verb, see chapt. 32,  
last sent.  
erect, *cōnstituō*, (3).  
especially, *māximē*, adv.  
establish, *cōfirmō*, (1).  
even, *etiam*, conj.  
evening, *vesper*, -*erī*, mas.  
exchange hostages, *obsidēs inter*  
*sē dare*.

- execute, *administrō*, (1).  
 expect, *exspectō*, (1).
- face about, *sīgna convertō*, (3).  
 fail, *fallō*, (3).  
 farthest, *extrēmus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 father, *pater*, -tris, mas.  
 fear, *vereor*, *timeō*, (2).  
 fertility, *fertilitās*, -tatis, fem.  
 few, *paucus*, -a, -um, adj.; plur. only.  
 fickleness, *levitās*, -tatis, fem.  
 field, *ager*, *agri*, mas.  
 fierce, *ferus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 fight, *pāgna*, -ae, fem.; *pūgnō*, *dēcertō*, *dīmicō*, (1); *contendō*, *cōnfligō*, (3).  
 fill, *complēō*, (2).  
 find, *reperiō*, *inveniō*, (4).  
 find out, *cōgnōscō*, (3); *explōrō*, (1).  
 fire, *īgnis*, -is, mas.  
 first, *prīmus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 five, *quīnque*, indecl. num. adj.  
 flee, *fugiō*, (3).  
 flight, *fuga*, -ae, fem.  
 fodder, *pābulum*, -i, neut.  
 follow after, *subsequor*, (3).  
 foot, *pēs*, *pedis*, mas.  
 for, *nam*, conj.  
 for the sake of, *causē* (as a prep., following a gen.).  
 force (vigor), *vīs*, *vīs*, fem.; (plur. *vīrēs*).  
 forces, *cōpiae*, -arum, fem.  
 ford, *vadum*, -i, neut.  
 foremost (men), *prīmī*, -ōrum, (mas. plur. of *primus*).  
 forest, *silva*, -ae, fem.  
 former, *prīstinus*, -a, -um, adj.
- fortification, *mūnītiō*, -ōnis, fem.  
 fortify, *mūniō*, (4).  
 free, *vacuus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 frequent, *crēber*, -bra, -brum, adj.  
 fresh, *integer*, -gra, -grum, adj.  
 friend, *amicus*, -i, mas.  
 friendly, *amicus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 friendship, *amicitia*, -ae, fem.  
 frighten, *perterreō*, (2).  
 from, *ā*, *ab*, prep. + abl.  
 from (on) all sides, *undique*, adv.
- gate, *porta*, -ae, fem.  
 Gaul, (country), *Gallia*, -ae, fem.; (person), *Gallus*, -i, mas.  
 general, *praefectus*, -i, mas.  
 general (common), *commūnis*, -is, -e, adj.  
 give, *dō*, (1).  
 give hostages to one another, *obsidēs inter sē dare*.  
 give up, *permittō*, *trādō*, (3).  
 great, *māgnus*, -a, -um, adj.
- halt, *cōsis'ō*, (3).  
 hand over, *trādō*, (3).  
 hasten, *mātūrō*, (1); *contendō*, (3).  
 have, *habeō*, (2).  
 have very great power or influence, *plūrimū posse*, *plūrimū valēre*.  
 he, self, *ipse*, -a, -um, intensive pron.  
 he, she, it, *is*, *ea*, *id*, (used as pers. pron., third person).  
 hedge, *saepēs*, -is, fem.  
 height, *altitūdō*, -dīnis, fem.  
 helmet, *galca*, -ae, fem.  
 help, *auxiliū*, -i, neut.; *invō*, (1).

- hesitate, *dubitō*, (1).  
 high, *altus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 hill, *collis*, -is, mas.  
 hinder, *impediō*, (4).  
 hire, *condūcō*, (3).  
 his, *ēius* (not reflex.); *suus*, -a,  
     -um (reflex.), possess. pronouns.  
 hither, *citerior*, -ior, -ius, adj.  
 hold, *obtineō*, (2).  
 hold out, *sustentō*, (1).  
 home, *domus*, -ūs (-i), fem.  
 hope, *spēs*, *speī*, fem.  
 horse, *equus*, -i, mas.  
 hostage, *obses*, -idis, mas.  
 how great, *quantus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 hurl, *cōnicō*, (3).  
  
 immediately, *prōtinus*, *statim*,  
     adv.  
 in, on, upon, *in*, prep. + abl.  
 incite, *sollicitō*, (1).  
 infantry, *pedes*, -itis, mas. (usu-  
     ally plur.).  
 influence, *addūcō*, (3).  
 inform, *certiōrem* (-ēs) *facere*.  
 in front of, *prō*, prep. + abl.  
 inhabit, *incolō*, (3).  
 injury, *iniūria*, -ae, fem.  
 inquire, *quaerō*, (3).  
 instruct, *mandō*, (1).  
 into, *in*, prep. + acc.  
 investigate, *cōgnoscō*, (3).  
  
 javelin, *pīlum*, -i, neut.  
 join, *coniungō*, (3).  
 just as, as, *ita . . . ut*.  
  
 keep, *contineō*, (2).  
 keep apart, *distineō*, (2).  
 keep back, *retineō*, (2).  
 kill, *interficiō*, (3).  
  
 kindly, *liberāliter*, adv.  
 king, *rēx*, *rēgis*, mas.  
 kingdom, *rēgnum*, -i, neut.;  
     (plur. sovereignty).  
 kinsmen, *cōsanguinei*, -ōrum,  
     mas.  
  
 large, *māgnus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 last, lately, *proximē*, adv.  
 lay waste, *vāstō*, *populor*, (1).  
 lead, *dūcō*, (3).  
 lead across, *trādūcō*, (3).  
 leader, *dux*, *ducis*, mas.  
 lead out, *ēdūcō*, (3).  
 leave, *relinquō*, (3).  
 legion, *legiō*, -ōnis, fem.  
 left, *sinister*, -tra, -trum, adj.  
 less, *minus*, adv.  
 less easily, *minus facile*, *minus*  
     *commodē*, adv.  
 letter, *littera*, -ae, fem.; (usually  
     plur.).  
 lieutenant, *lēgātus*, -i, mas.  
 light, *lūx*, *lūcis*, fem.  
 light-armed, *expeditus*, -a, -um,  
     adj.  
 likewise, *item*, adv.  
 line of battle, (army), *aciēs*, *aciēi*,  
     fem.  
 line of march, *agmen*, -minis, neut.  
 long, a long time, *diū*, adv.  
 longer, *diūtius*, adv.  
 love, *amō*, (1).  
  
 make, *faciō*, (3).  
 make (take) a stand, *cōsistō*, (3).  
 make an attack upon, *fucere im-*  
     *petum in* + acc.  
 make more certain (see 'inform'),  
     *certiōrem* (-ēs) *facere*.

- man, *homō*, *hominis*, mas.; *vir*,  
*virī*, mas.
- march, *iter*, *itineris*, neut.; *iter*  
*facere*.
- marsh, *aestuārium*, -ī, neut.
- meanwhile, *interim*, adv.
- memory, *memoria*, -ae, fem.
- (men) in the front, *priōrēs*, -um,  
mas. (compar. adj. as noun).
- (men) in the rear, *novissimī*, -ōrum,  
mas. (superl. adj. as noun).
- merchant, *mercātor*, -ōris, mas.
- message, messenger, *nūntius*, -ī,  
mas.
- middle of, *medius*, -a, -um, adj.
- mind, *animus*, -ī, mas.
- most of, *plērusque*, -aque, -umque,  
adj. (in the plur. only).
- mountain, *mōns*, *montis*, mas.
- move, *moveō*, (2).
- movable shed, *vīnea*, -ae, fem.
- multitude, *multitūdō*, -ōnis, fem.
- much, many, *multus*, -a, -um,  
adj.
- name, *nōmen*, -ōnis, neut.
- nature, *nātūra*, -ae, fem.
- near by, *iūxtā*, adv.
- nearness, *propīnquitās*, -tatis,  
fem.
- neighbouring, *fīnitimus*, -a, -um,  
adj.; in the mas. plur., noun,  
neighbours.
- neither, *neuter*, -tra, -trum, adj.
- neither . . . nor, *neque* (*nec*) . . .  
*neque* (*nec*).
- new, *novus*, -a, -um, adj.
- next, *proximus*, -a, -um, adj.
- night, *nox*, *noctis*, fem.
- no, none, *nūllus*, -a, -um, adj.
- not, *nōn*, adv.; *nē* (regular negative of the *imperative*).
- not only, *nōn modo*.
- not yet, *nōndum*.
- number, *numerus*, -ī, mas.
- obtain, *impetrō*, (1).
- of cavalry, *equester*, -tris, -tre,  
adj. (of three terminations).
- of corn, *frūmentārius*, -a, -um,  
adj.
- officer, *magistrātus*, -ūs, mas.
- on, *see* in, upon.
- one (alone), *ūnus*, -a, -um, num.  
adj.
- only, alone, *sōlus*, -a, -um, adj.;  
*ūnus*, -a, -um, adj.
- on all sides, *undique*, adv.
- on account of, *propter*, prep. +  
acc.
- on the flank, *ab latere* (from  
*latus*, the noun).
- on the left side, *ab sinistrā parte*.
- on the right wing, *ā dextrō  
cornū*.
- on the top of the hill, *in summō  
colle*.
- on this side of, *cis*, prep. + acc.
- opportunity, *facultās*, -tatis, fem.
- opposite, *adversus*, -a, -um, adj.
- order, *imperātum*, -ī, neut.; *im-  
perō*, (1); *iubeō*, (2).
- other (another), *alter*, -era, -erum;  
*alius*, -a, -ud, adj.
- our, *nōster*, -tra, -trum, adj.;  
mas. plur. as noun, our men.
- out of, *ē*, *ex*, prep. + abl.
- outstretched, *passus*, -a, -um,  
adj.
- overcome, *superō*, (1).

- pace, *passus*, -ūs, mas.  
 part, *pars*, *partis*, fem.  
 peace, *pax*, *pacis*, fem.  
 people, *populus*, -ī, mas.  
 pitch (place), *pōnō*, (3).  
 place, *locus*, -ī, mas.; neut. plur.,  
     *loca*; *conlocō*, (1); *pōnō*, (3).  
 place in command of, *praeficiō*,  
     (3), (with dat.).  
 plain, *plānitīs*, *plānitīi*, fem.  
 power, *imperium*, *rēgnūm*, -ī,  
     neut.; *potestās*, -tātis, fem.  
 powerful, *potēns*, gen. *potentis*,  
     adj. (of one termination).  
 prepare, *parō*, (1); prepared,  
     *parātus*, -a, -um (particip. as  
     adj.)  
 prevent, *prohibeō*, *dēterreō*, (2);  
     *impediō*, (4).  
 promise, *pollicor*, (2).  
 protection, *fidēs*, *fidei*, fem.  
 province, *prōvinciā*, -ae, fem.  
 pursue, *prōsequor*, (3).  
 put on, *induō*, (3).  
 quickly, *celeriter*, adv.  
 rampart, *vallum*, -ī, neut.  
 ready, *parātus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 rear, *novissimum agmen*, *novis-*  
     *simī agminis*, neut.  
 receive, *accipiō*, (3).  
 recently, *proximē*, adv.  
 redoubt, *castellum*, -ī, neut.  
 reduce, *redigō*, (3).  
 refrain from, *supersedeō*, (2).  
 region, *regiō*, -ōnis, fem.  
 relief, *subsidiūm*, -ī, neut.  
 remaining, *reliquo*, -a, -um, adj.  
 Remian (a), *Rēmus*, -ī, mas.;  
     plur., the Remi.
- renew, *reintegrō*, (1).  
 report, *rūmor*, -ōris, mas.; *nūntiō*,  
     *renūntiō*, (1).  
 rest, the rest, *cīterus*, -a, -um,  
     adj.; usually mas. plur. as a  
     noun.  
 restrain, *retineō*, (2).  
 resist, *resistō*, (3), (with dat.).  
 return, *revertor*, (3).  
 revolution, *rēs nova*, *reī novae*,  
     fem.  
 right, *dexter*, -tra, -trum, adj.  
 river, *flūmen*, -minis, neut.  
 Roman, *Rōmānus* (adj. or noun).  
 rout, *fugō*, *prōflīgō*, (1); *pellō*, (3).  
 rumor, *rūmor*, -ōris, mas.  
 run down, *decurrō*, (3).  
 rush forth, *prōvolō*, (1).
- safety, *salūs*, -ūtis, fem.  
 sally, *excursiō*, -ōnis, fem.  
 say, *dicō*, (3).  
 scout, *explōrātor*, -tōris, mas.  
 second, *secundus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 see, *videō*, (2).  
 seek, *petō*, (3).  
 seem, *videor*, (2).  
 seize, *occupō*, (1).  
 senate, *senātūs*, -ūs, mas.  
 send, *mittō*, (3).  
 send forward, *praemittō*, (3).  
 separate, *distineō*, (2).  
 servant, *servus*, -ī, mas.  
 settle, *cōnsidō*, (3).  
 set out, *proficīscor*, (3).  
 set up (arrange), *cōstituō*, (3).  
 seventh, *septimus*, -a, -um, num.  
     adj.  
 shield, *scūtūm*, -ī, neut.  
 side, *latus*, -erīs, neut.

- sight, *cōspectus*, -ūs, mas.  
 signal, *signum*, -ī, neut.  
 since, *cum* + subjunc.  
 shortness, *brevitās*, *exiguitās*,  
     -tātis, fem.  
 slave, *servus*, -ī, mas.  
 slavery, *servitās*, -tūtis, fem.  
 slay, *occidō*, (3).  
 slight, *parvulus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 slinger, *funditor*, -tōris, mas.  
 so (thus), *tam*, *ita*, adv.  
 so great, *tantus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 some, *nōnnūllus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 so that, *ut* + subjunc.  
 so that . . . not, *nē* + subjunc.  
 sovereignty, *rēgnūm*, -ī, neut.,  
     (in the plur.).  
 speech, *ōrātiō*, -ōnis, fem.  
 speed, *cursus*, -ūs, mas.  
 state, *civitās*, -tātis, fem.  
 stone, *lapis*, -idis, mas.  
 stop (cease), *dēsistō*, (3).  
 storm, *expūgnō*, (1).  
 strength, *vīs*, (vīs), fem.  
 strip, *nūdō*, (1).  
 strong (to be), *valeō*, (2); to have  
     very great influence, *plūrimū  
         valēre*.  
 subdue, *superō*, (1); *vincō*, *pellō*,  
     (3).  
 subjection, *servitūs*, -tūtis, fem.  
 suddenly, *subitō*, adv.  
 suitable, *idōneus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 summer, *aestūs*, -tātis, fem.  
 summon, *convocō*, (1).  
 supply (plenty), *cōpia*, ae  
     fem.; (in the plur.) forces.  
 supply of corn, *rēs frūmentāria*,  
     *reī frūmentāriæ*, fem.  
 supplies, *commeātus*, -ūs, mas.  
 surrender, *dēditō*, -ōnis, fem.;  
     -dēdō, *trādō*, (3).  
 surround, *circumdō*, (1); *circum-*  
     *veniō*, (4).  
 swamp, *palūs*, -ūdis, fem.  
 sword, *gladius*, -ī, mas.  
 tall, *altus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 tenth, *decimus*, -a, -um, num. adj.  
 terms, *condicō*, -ōnis, fem.  
 territory, *fīnis*, -īs, mas. (in the  
     plur.).  
 testudo, *testūdō*, -dīnis, fem.  
 that, *is*, *ea*, *id*, demons. pron., or  
     adj.  
 their, *eōrum*, (not reflex.), possess.  
     pron.; *suis*, -a, -um, (reflex.),  
     possess. pron.  
 there, *ibi*, adv.; *eō* (in sense of  
       
 thing, *rēs*, *reī*, fem.  
 this, *hīc*, *haec*, *hōc*, demons. pron.  
 this side of, *cis*, prep. + acc.  
 thither, *eō*, adv.  
 (those) in the front, *priōrēs*, -um,  
     mas. (compar. adj. as noun).  
 thousand, *mīlle*; declined only in  
     plur., *mīlia*, -ium, neut.  
 three, *trēs*, *trēs*, *tria*, num. adj.  
 through, *per*, prep. + acc.  
 throw, *cōniciō*, (3).  
 time, *tempus*, -oris, neut.  
 to (towards), *ad*, prep. + acc.  
 tower, *turrīs*, -īs, fem.  
 town, *oppidum*, -ī, neut.  
 townsmen, *oppidānī*, -ōrum, mas.  
 top of, *summus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 tribe, *gēns*, *gentīs*, fem.  
 triple, *triplex*, gen. *triplicis*, adj.  
     (of one termination).

- trumpet, *tuba*, -ae, fem.  
try, *cōnor*, (1); *expēriōr*, (4).  
two, *duo*, *duae*, *duo*, num. adj.
- undermine, *subruō*, (3).  
unexpectedly, *dē imprōvisō*.  
unfavorable, *inīquus*, -a, -um,  
    adj.  
unfriendly, *inimīcus*, -a, -um,  
    adj.  
unite (conspire), *cōsentīō*, (4).  
unless, *nisi*, conj.  
upon, *in* + acc., with verbs of  
    *motion*; *in* + abl., with verbs  
    of *rest*.  
uproar, *tumultus*, -ūs, mas.  
urge, *cohōrōr*, (1).  
use, *ūsus*, -ūs, mas.; *ūtor*, (3).  
very greatly, *mārimē*, adv.  
very like, *cōsimilis*, -is, -e, adj.  
    (of two terminations).  
very many, *plūrimus*, -a, -um,  
    adj. (in the plur.).  
village, *vīcūs*, -i, mas.  
vinea, *vīnea*, -ae, fem.
- wait for, *exspectō*, (1).  
wall, *mārus*, -i, mas.  
war, *bēlūm*, -i, neut.  
watch, *vigīlia*, -ae, fem.  
weapon, *tēlūm*, -i, neut.  
when, where, *ubi* (denoting *time*  
    or *place*).  
while, *cum* + imperf. subjunc.  
who, *qui*, (rel. pron.) ; *quis*,  
    (interrog. pron.).  
width, *lātitūdō*, -dīnis, fem.  
wing, *cornū*, -ūs, neut.  
winter, *hiemō*, (1).  
winter-quarters, *hīberna*, *hībernā-*  
    *cula*, -ōrum, neut.  
wish, *volō*, *velle*, *volū*.  
with, *cum*, prep. + abl.; *post-*  
    *positive* with the *personal, relative*  
    *and reflexive pronouns*.  
within, *intrā*, prep. + acc.  
without, *sine*, prep. + abl.  
with respect to, *dē*, prep. + abl.  
withstand, *sustīneō*, (2).  
work, *opus*, -eris, neut.  
wound, *vulnus*, -eris, neut.; *vul-*  
    *nerō*, (1).

# INDEX.

References are to paragraphs.

**A, ab:** use of, 240

**Ablative:** separation, 221; quality, 376; time when or within which, 65; means or instrument, 43; attendance or accompaniment, 43; cause and manner, 210; place in which (place where), 47; place from which (whence), 386; with **ā** or **ab** and passive verb to denote personal agent, 237; **causā** with the *gen.*, 7; **quōd** with the comparative, 384; with **opus** and **ūsus**, 379; with depon. verbs, 353; with comparative adj., 369; abl. absolute, 287; abl. absol. analyzed, 288; abl. absol. written in four ways, 364; abl. absol. distinguished from the p. p. p. modifying subj. or obj., 323

**Accusative:** direct object, 16, *c*; extent in space, 342; duration of time, 342; adverbial acc., 374; end or limit of motion (place towards which), 386; subj. of infinitive, 301, 302

**Ad:** with verbs of motion, 59; with *gerundive* in affirm. purpose, 355

**Adapted and Simplified Caesar:** 408–447

**Adjectives:** agreement of, 4, 115; stem, how found, 188, 298; used as substantives, 258; in the predicate, 95, 97; governing the *dat.*, 126; with *gen.* in **īus**, **dat.** in **ī**, 286; of 1st and 2d declens. declined, 466; of 3d declens. declined, 467; numeral adjs. declined, 468; comparison of regular adjs., 298, 469; comparison of, ending in **er**, 308, 470; comparison of, ending in **ilis**, 314, 471, comparison of irregular, 472

**Adverb:** translated like adj., 216

**Adverbial accusative:** 374

**Adverbial phrase:** use of, 34

**Adverbs compared:** 473

**Affirmative purpose:** how expressed, 320; expressed in four ways, 355

**Affirmative result:** 321

**Ager:** declined, 454

**Agmen:** declined, 122

**Altior:** declined, 467

**Altus:** declined, 466

**Amō:** complete paradigms, 474, 475

**Analysis of a complex sentence:** 204

**Apposition:** 54

**Capiō:** complete paradigms, 480, 481

**Cāsus:** declined, 182

**Causal clauses:** 104, 276

**Causal cum :** 350, 359

**Certior factus:** 338

**Certiōrem (-ēs) facere:** 333

**Civitās:** declined, 122

**Cohortor:** use of, 347

**Collis:** declined, 130

**Commands and exhortations:** 389

**Commands, etc., in O. O.:** 390

**Comparative adjective declined:** 467

**Comparison of adjectives:** see 'Adjectives.'

**Comparison of adverbs:** 473

**Complex sentence:** 204 [337]

**Compound verbs with dative:**

**Concessive cum.** 350, 359

**Conditions.** more vivid future, 223, *a*, *b*; less vivid future, 335; conditions in O. O., 396

**Conjugations:**

*1st conjugation:* list of 92 verbs, 448; complete paradigms (**amō**), 474, 475; synopses, by stems (**portō**): (*a*) active—pres. syst., 75, perf. syst., 120, sup. syst. 133; (*b*) passive — pres. and perf. syst., 255

*2d conjugation:* list of 42 verbs, 449; complete paradigms (**mo-neō**), 476, 477; synopses, by stems (**dēleō**): (*a*) active—pres.

syst., 158, perf. syst., 163, sup. syst., 169; (*b*) passive—pres. and perf. syst., 270

*3d conjugation:* list of 157 verbs, 450; complete paradigms (**pōnō**), 478, 479; **capiō** (the 'iō' verb) complete, 480, 481; synopses, by stems (**pōnō**): (*a*) active—pres. syst., 192, perf. syst., 196, sup. syst., 197; (*b*) passive—pres. syst., 281, perf. syst., 284

*4th conjugation:* list of 19 verbs, 451; complete paradigms (**mū-niō**), 482, 483; synopses, by stems (**mūniō**): (*a*) active—pres. syst., 225, perf. syst., 230, sup. syst., 231; (*b*) passive—pres. syst., 295, perf. syst., 296

**Cornū:** declined, 461

**Corpus:** declined, 458

**Crēber:** declined, 466

**Cum clauses:** historical **cum**, *when* (= while or after), 128, 203, 263, 359; temporal **cum**, *when*, 359; causal **cum**, *since*, 350, 359; concessive **cum**, *although*, 350, 359

**Dative:** indirect obj., 15; with adjs., 126; with **imperō** and **mandō**, 134, 145; with **negō**; **tium dare**, 330; with **compound verbs**, 337; with **special verbs**, 348; with **persuādeō** (in the *active*), 345; with **persuādeō** (in the *passive*), 380; double dat. (purpose, end, service), 352; possession, 357; personal agent, 362

**Declension of adjectives:** 1st and 2d declensions, 466; 3d declension, including pres. particip. and comparative, 467; numerals, 468

**Declension of nouns:**

    1st *declension*: stem, gender, paradigms, 453

    2d *declension*: stem, gender, paradigms, 454

    3d *declension*: stems, kinds of, 455; nom., how formed in consonant stems, 456, A, B, C; nom., how formed in vowel stems, 457; *nom. sing.* ending (all genders) of vowel stems in *i*, 457; *nom. plur.* (neut.) ending of vowel stems in *i*, 457; *gen. plur.* ending of vowel stems in *i*, 457; *acc. plur.* (mas. and fem.) endings in *is* or *es*, 457 *gen. plur.* endings *um* and *ium*, all 3d-declension nouns, 460; general rules of gender, 458; paradigms: *miles*, 112; *civitās*, *agmen*, *lapis*, *miles ferus*, 122; *pater*, *rūmor*, *latus*, *corpus*, *legiō*, 124; *collis*, *rēx*, *flūmen lātum*, 130; *multitudō*, *vis*, *iter*, 138; *frāter*, *hostis*, *pēs*, *facultās*, *virtūs*, *lēx*, *flūmen*, *īnsigne*, 458; *mīlia* (plur. of *mille*), 459. Third - declension paradigms (nouns) may be found in 112, 122, 124, 130, 138, 458, 459

    4th *declension*: stem, gender, paradigms, 461

    5th *declension*: stem, gender, paradigms, 462

**Declension of pronouns:** personal pron., 1st person, 463; demonst. and intensive, 464; rel., interrog., and indef., 465

**Dēleō:** for synopses by stems, both voices, see 'Conjugations,' 2d.

**Demonstrative pronouns**, 464

**Deponent verbs**: use of, 325

    1st *conjuga.*: complete paradigms (*populor*), 494; for *active* forms and synopses, *by stems*, see 326, 327

    2d *conjuga.*: complete paradigms (*vereor*), 495

    3d *conjuga.*: complete paradigms (*ūtor*), 496

    4th *conjuga.*: complete paradigms (*potior*), 497

**Diēs**: declined, 462

**Direct discourse** (*Ōrātiō Rēcta*), 301

**Direct object**: 15, 16, c

**Direct question**: 313

**Duo**: declined, 468

**Duplex**: declined, 467

**Duration of time**: 342

**Ego**: declined, 463

**Eō**: complete paradigms, 486

**Equester**: declined, 467

**Extent in space**: 343

**Faciō**: active paradigms, 492

**Facultās**: declined, 458

**Fearing**: verbs of, with *ut* or *nē* + subjunctive, 343

**Ferō**: complete paradigms, 490, 491

**Fiō**: passive of *faciō*; passive paradigms, 493

- Flūmen:** declined, 458  
**Flūmen lātum:** declined, 130  
**Fortis:** declined, 188  
**Fossa:** declined, 1, 6  
**Frāter:** declined, 458  
**Future participle, Future infinitive:** how formed, 170; fut. infin. in O. O., 318, examples 3 and 4 with note; fut. infin. of depon. verb, 328
- Galea:** declined, 453  
**Gender:** 1st declension, 453; 2d declension, 454; 3d declension, 458, I, II, III; 4th declension, 461; 5th declension, 462  
**Genitive:** use of and meaning, 7; with the abl. causā, 7; partitive and exceptions, 378; ending in um and ium, 460  
**Gerund:** defined and declined, 73  
**Gerundive construction:** in agreement with noun, 253; with ad to represent affirmative purpose, 355  
**Gladius:** declined, 454  
**Hic:** declined, 464  
**Hinder:** verbs of, with quīn or nē + subjunctive, 370  
**Historical cum:** 128, 203, 263  
**Hortatory subjunctive:** 395  
**Hostis:** declined, 458  
**How to express 'ought' or 'must':** pres. and past action, 385, 1, 2, 3  
**How words are combined:** order and dependence, 92, 161, 176  
**Idem:** declined, 434  
**Ille:** declined, 464  
**Imperō:** with dat. and subjunctive clause, 145, 228  
**Impersonal verbs:** 365  
**Impetum facere:** with in + acc., 216  
**In:** uses of, 35  
**Indefinite pronoun, quis:** declined, 465  
**Indirect Discourse (Ōrātiō Ōeliqua):** defined, 301; mood in 392; pres. infin. (statement clauses), 302; perf. infin. (statement clauses), 305; fut. infin. (statement clauses), 318; subord. clauses in, 306, 397; substitute for fut. infin. in, 382; conditions in, 396; commands and exhortations in, 390; certiōrem (-ēs) facere, used as a verb of saying, 333; specimens of, 400-407  
**Indirect object:** 15, 16, d  
**Indirect question:** mood of, 313  
**Insigne:** declined, 458  
**Integer:** declined, 56  
**Intensive pronoun (ipse):** declined, 464  
**Intermediate clauses:** 276  
**Intermediate (subordinate) clauses in O. O.:** 306  
**Interrogative pronoun (quis):** declined, 465  
**Ipse:** declined, 464  
**Irregular verbs:** list of 26 verbs, 452  
  ēō, complete paradigms, 486  
  faciō, " " " 492  
  ferō, " " " 490, 491  
  fiō, " " " 493  
  mālō, " " " 489

**Irregular verbs :**

nōlō,	complete paradigms,	488
possum,	" "	485
sum,	" "	484
volō,	" "	487

**Is, ea, id:** declined, 464**Iter:** declined, 459**Iubeō:** use of, 155**-ius:** gen. ending of adjs., 286**Lapis:** declined, 458**Latus:** (noun) declined, 458**Legiō:** declined, 458**Less vivid future condition:** 335**Less vivid future condition in O.O.:** 396, 2 and examples.**Lēx:** declined, 458**-limus:** adj. superl. ending, 471**Mālō:** complete paradigms, 489**Mandō:** with *dat.* and subjunctive clause, 145, 228**Manus:** declined, 461**Miles:** declined, 458**Miles ferus:** declined, 122**Milia:** declined, 459**Moleō:** complete paradigms, 476, 477**Mood in O. O.:** 392**More vivid future condition:** 223, *a, b***More vivid future condition in O. O.:** 396, 1 and examples.**Motion, end or limit of:** 386**Multitūdō:** declined, 458**Mūniō:** complete paradigms, 482, 483; for synopses, by stems, both voices, see 'Conjugations,' 4th.**'Must' or 'ought':** how expressed, 385, 1, 2, 3**Nē:** with subjunctive, neg. purpose, 211, 320; with subjunctive after **imperō** and **mandō**, 228; with imperative, neg. commands and exhortations, 389; **nē** + imperative (neg. commands, etc.) changed to **O.** **O.**, 390; after verbs of fearing, 343; after verbs of hindering, etc., 370**Negative purpose:** 211, 320**Negative result:** 321**Negōtium dare:** with *dat.* and subjunctive clause, 330**Nisi:** in conditions, 223, 335**Nōlō:** complete paradigms, 488**Object:** direct, indirect, 15, 16**Oppidum:** declined, 37**Opus and ūsus:** with *abl.*, 379**Orātiō Obliqua:** see 'Indirect Discourse.'**Orātiō Rēcta:** see 'Direct Discourse.'**Order of words:** 16, 77, 92, 161, 176**'Ought' or 'must':** how expressed, 385, 1, 2, 3,**Participles:** pres. particip. declined, 467; substitutions for perf. act., 340, 372; formation of perf. pass., 257; use and agree. of perf. pass., 316; perf. pass. in *abl.* *absol.*, 287, 364; perf. pass., when mod. the subj. or obj., distinguished from *abl.* *absol.*, 323; perf. pass. of depon., its use instead of perf. act., 340; perf. pass.

- translated as finite or coordinate verb, 381; perf. pass. with *habeō* or *teneō*, 375
- Partitive genitive:** and exceptions, 378
- Pater:** declined, 124
- Periphrastic conjugation:** formation and meaning, 361; complete paradigms, 498, 499
- Personal agent:** with regular passive verb, 237; with gerundive (periphrast. pass.), 362
- Personal pronoun (ego):** declined, 463
- Persuādeō:** in the active, 345; passive, 380
- Pēs:** declined, 458
- Place from—towards—which:** 386
- Place in which:** 47
- Pōnō:** complete paradigms, 478, 479; for synopses, by stems, both voices, see ‘Conjugations,’ 3d
- Populor:** complete paradigms, 494
- Possession:** dat. of, 357
- Possum:** complete paradigms, 485
- Postquam:** in temporal clauses, 358
- Potior:** complete paradigms, 497
- Predicate nominative:** 95, 97
- Pronouns:** *ego*, 463; *hic, idem, ille, ipse, is*, 464; *qui, quis*, 465; *sē*, 214
- Puer:** declined, 41
- Pūgnāns:** declined, 467
- Purpose:** relative clause of, 311; affirm. and neg. purpose, 320; affirm. purpose expressed in four ways, 355
- Quantity:** general rules of, 500-504
- Que:** position, 215
- Questions:** direct, indirect, 313
- Quī:** declined, 465
- Quis:** declined, 465
- Quod clauses:** mood of; when *indic.*, 276; when *subjunc.*, 276, 306
- Reflexive pronoun:** *personal sūi*, etc., declined, 214; *possessive suus*, etc., 189
- Relative:** *qui*, declined, 465; agreement of, with antecedent, 83; with *castra*, etc., 84, 85; agreement of, with pred. word, 373; rel. clause of purpose, 311; of cause or concession, 368; of result, 387; rel. as a connective at the beginning of a sent. 367
- Rēs:** declined, 462
- Result clauses:** 321
- Rēx:** declined, 130
- rimus:** adj. superl. ending, 470
- Rūmor:** declined, 124
- Scūtum:** declined, 454
- Sē:** declined, 214
- Sequence of tenses:** rule of, 135; table of, 136; application of rule of, 137; use of, in O. O.. 397
- Servus:** declined, 18, 25
- Silva:** declined, 453
- Special verbs with dative:** 348
- Subordinate clauses:** use and

- dependence of, 110, 161, 166, 276; use of, in O. O., 306, 397
- Substitution for future infinitive:** in supineless and passive verbs, 382
- Substitution for perfect active participle:** by using depon. particip., abl. absol., or subord. clause, 340, 372
- Suī:** declined, 214
- Sum:** complete paradigms, 484; synopsis, pres. syst., 117; perf. syst., 127
- Suus:** use and meaning of, 189
- Temporal clauses:** *postquam, ubi, etc. + indic.*, 358
- Tōtus:** declined, 286
- Trēs:** declined, 468
- Ubi:** use of, 203, 358
- Ut:** in purpose clauses, 53, 320, 355; with verbs of command, 145, 228; clauses of command in O. O., 389, 392, 2, *a, b, c*; in temporal clauses, 358
- Ut and ut non in result clauses,** 321
- Ütor:** complete paradigms, 496
- Vir:** declined, 454
- Virtūs:** declined, 458
- Vis:** declined, 459
- Volō:** complete paradigms, 487
- Vowel stems in i:** (*a*) *nouns*: *collis*, declined, 130; *hostis*, declined, 458; gender, stem, and special endings of, 131, 457; (*b*) *adjectives*: *fortis*, declined, 467; stem and special endings of, 188







U

Date Due

No 3523-22

Demco 293-5

BOSTON UNIVERSITY



1 1719 02753 7531

